This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES
3 3433 07592205 8

PRINCIPIA LATINA.—Part I.

A

FIRST LATIN COURSE.

COMPREHENDING

GRAMMAR, DELECTUS, AND EXERCISE-BOOK.

WITH VOCABULARIES.

BY WILLIAM SMITH, LL.D.,

AUTHOR OF "A HISTORY OF GREECE," "A DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES," "A CLASSICAL DICTIONARY," ETC., ETC.

REVISED BY

H. DRISLER, LL.D.,

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN COLUMBIA COLLEGE, NEW YORK; EDITOR OF "LIDDELL AND SCOTT'S GREEK LEXICON," ETC.

NEW YORK:

HARPER & BROTHERS, PUBLISHERS,

FRANKLIN SQUARE.

1883.

347451

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year one thousand eight hundred and sixty-three, by

HARPER & BROTHERS,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the Southern District of New York.

☆ Hon. Joseph H. Choate,
Mar. 1906

EDITOR'S PREFACE.

THE present volume is the first of a series of elementary Latin books in preparation by Dr. W. Smith, Editor of the Dictionary of Biography and Mythology, of Greek and Roman Antiquities, etc. The plan, object, and sources of the work are fully set forth in the Author's Preface subjoined. It has one great merit of a school-book designed for beginners—brevity. The essentials of Grammar are given without unnecessary detail or minute exceptions. At the age at which Latin is usually begun the memory is much more active and developed than the reasoning faculties; the Author has therefore judiciously preferred the synthetic to the analytic method. Exercises in double translation are given after each Declension and Conjugation, to impress the forms thus learned more firmly on the memory.

In revising the work the Editor has made a few alterations and additions, which he trusts may be found to be improvements. As it is essential for an accurate knowledge of Latin to know the quantities of syllables, whatever system of pronunciation may be preferred by the teacher, the Editor has introduced, from the first lesson, the simpler and more comprehensive rules of Prosody. He has added also paradigms of the more frequently-recurring Greek nouns of the First, Second, and Third Declensions, and a few pages of continuous narrative taken from Woodford's Epitome of Cæsar, in the exact words of the author, but with the complex sentences broken up, and the difficult parenthetic clauses omitted. The selec

tion extends from the beginning of Cæsar to the end of the Helvetian Campaign.

In the original work the Vocabularies were thrown together at the end of the Second Part, but in this edition they have been placed before the Exercises to which they respectively belong; there is great convenience in this arrangement, and, as the pupil is expected to learn the Vocabulary by heart, it can not afford him any improper assistance, especially as words once given are not repeated in subsequent Vocabularies.

A Second Part, containing the remainder of Woodford's simplified Cæsar, and L'Homond's "Viri Romæ" is in preparation as a Supplement to the present volume, furnishing, it is believed, sufficient reading matter to enable the pupil to enter, with a competent supply of words and experience in translation, upon the profitable study of Cæsar or Virgil.

PREFACE.

THE following work is the first of a short series which the writer has undertaken with the view of facilitating the study of the Latin language. It is the result of many years' practical teaching, and seeks to combine the advantages of the older and more modern methods of instruction. While boys are sometimes compelled to commit to memory all the grammatical forms and syntactical rules without having their knowledge tested by any practical application in the construction of sentences, so that they frequently forget the former part of the Grammar by the time they have finished the latter, they are in other cases burdened by a large number of explanations and cautions, and by complicated rules for the formation of cases and other inflectional forms. The latter error is almost as grave as the former in the case of young boys, as they are thus taught analytically what ought to be first learned synthetically.

The main object of this work is to enable a beginner to fix the Declensions and Conjugations thoroughly in his memory, to learn their usage by constructing simple sentences as soon as he commences the study of the language, and to accumulate gradually a stock of useful words. It is divided into two parts:

I. The first part contains the Grammatical Forms, with Exercises upon all the inflections, in which the simple rules of syntax are introduced, as they are required for the formation of sentences.

II. The second part contains an explanation of some of

the more important idioms of the language, such as the construction of the Accusative Case and the Infinitive Mood, of the Ablative Absolute, of the Gerund and Gerundive, etc., exemplified by Exercises upon each construction. The Vocabulary relating to each Exercise is [prefixed to the Exercise], and Alphabetical Indices of the Latin and English words in the Vocabularies are [given at the end of the volume].

The work thus contains Grammar, Delectus, and Exercise-book, with Vocabularies, and consequently presents in one book all that the pupil will require for some time in his study of the language. It is confidently believed that a boy who has gone carefully through the work will have acquired a sound knowledge of the chief grammatical forms, and of the most important syntactical rules, and will thus be prepared to enter upon the systematic study of a larger Grammar with advantage and profit.

In the Grammar the writer has deviated as little as possible from the usual arrangement of the Declensions and Conjugations, and only when some clear and positive advantage was to be gained. Thus, in the Third Declension, he has introduced a simpler and easier classification, according to the final letter of the stem,* instead of the one in the ordinary grammars, which occasions boys so much difficulty and perplexity.

In using the book, it is suggested that the pupil should be required to learn by heart the Vocabulary belonging to each Exercise; that he should then read over the Exercise *vivâ voce* in the class, the master giving such explanations as he may deem necessary; and that then, but not till then, the pupil should write down what he has pre-

* The *Stem* must be distinguished from the *Root*. The Root is that part of the word which remains after taking away the Suffix; the Stem is that part of the word which remains after taking away the Inflections; thus, in agilis, *agili* is the Stem of the Adjective, but AG is the Root.

viously read in class. It should be the aim of the master to prevent the pupil, as far as possible, from committing mistakes to writing, as experience has shown that the original mistake, when fixed in the memory by means of writing, is often remembered long after the correction has been forgotten.

In drawing up the Exercises, the writer has derived assistance from the following books, all of which are used in the public schools of Germany:

Kühner, *Lateinische Vorschule*, Hannover, 1858.

Spiess, *Uebungsbuch zum Uebersetzen aus dem Lateinischen in's Deutsche und aus dem Deutschen in's Lateinische*, Essen, 1858.

Jacobs and Döring, *Lateinisches Elementarbuch*, Jena, 1856.

Bleske, *Elementarbuch der Lateinischen Sprache*, Hannover, 1858.

Bonnell, *Uebungstücke zum Uebersetzen aus dem Lateinischen in's Deutsche für die ersten Anfänger*, Berlin, 1854.

Ellendt, *Lateinisches Lesebuch für die untersten Klassen der Gymnasien*, Königsberg, 1857.

Gedike, *Lateinisches Lesebuch*, Berlin, 1857.

He has also to acknowledge his obligations to Mr. T. D. Hall, M.A., for the correction of the proofs and for many valuable suggestions.

It is right to state that the whole of this work was written and the greater part of it printed before the publication of Mr. Hutton's "Introduction to the Study of Greek," the plan of which is very similar to that of the present book. W. S.

London, November, 1859.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

		Page
I.	THE ALPHABET, QUANTITY, GENDERS, PARTS OF SPEECH, SUBSTANTIVES	1
II.	THE FIRST DECLENSION	3
III.	THE SECOND DECLENSION	5
IV.	ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS	9
V.	THE THIRD DECLENSION	11
VI.	ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION	21
VII.	THE FOURTH DECLENSION	23
VIII.	THE FIFTH DECLENSION	24
IX.	SOME IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES	26
X.	SOME GREEK NOUNS	28
XI.	SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES	29
XII.	COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	30
XIII.	THE NUMERALS	33
XIV.	THE VERB SUM	36
XV.	COMPOUNDS OF SUM	39
XVI.	THE PRONOUNS	41
XVII.	THE VERB	46
XVIII.	FIRST CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE	48
XIX.	SECOND " " "	50
XX.	THIRD " " "	52
XXI.	FOURTH " " "	54
	EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE VOICE	56
XXII.	FIRST CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE	69
XXIII.	SECOND " " "	71
XXIV.	THIRD " " "	73
XXV.	FOURTH " " "	75
	EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE	77
XXVI.	THIRD CONJUGATION MIXED WITH THE FOURTH	82
XXVII.	DEPONENT VERBS	86
XXVIII.	PREPOSITIONS	92
XXIX.	ADVERBS	95

		Page
XXX.	Irregular Verbs:	
	1. Possum	97
	2. Volo	99
	3. Nolo	99
	4. Malo	99
	5. Fero	102
	6. Eo	105
	7. Fio	107
	8. Neuter Passive Verbs	108
XXXI.	Impersonal Verbs	109
XXXII.	Defective Verbs (Coepi, Memini, Odi, Aio, Inquam, Fari)	111
XXXIII.	The Genders of Substantives	112

Part II.

SOME SYNTACTICAL RULES.

XXXIV.	The Ablative after the Comparative	115
XXXV.	Ablative Absolute	116
XXXVI.	The Accusative expressing Duration or Extent of Time, Distance, and Dimension	118
XXXVII.	Construction of the Names of Towns	120
XXXVIII.	The Accusative Case and Infinitive Mood	123
XXXIX.	Direct Questions	125
XL.	Indirect Questions	127
XLI.	Additional Exercises on the Subjunctive Mood	129
XLII.	Use of the Supines	133
XLIII.	Use of the Gerund	135
XLIV.	Use of the Gerundive	136
	Extracts from Cæsar	141
	Words having a different Signification in the Singular and Plural	157
	Present-Perfects and Supines	158
Index I.—	Latin Words	169
Index II.—	English Words	176

Rules of Quantity 3, 7, 12, 15, 25, 28, 38, 56, 114, 140, 156

PART I.

GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

I.—The Alphabet. Quantity. Genders. Parts of Speech. Substantives.

1. *Alphabet.*—The Latin Alphabet consists of 25 letters, the same as the English without *W*.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J. K, L, M, N, O, P,
a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p,
Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.
q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

Of these *y* and *z* were used only in words introduced from Greek; *k* is found only before *a*, and *q* only before *u*.

The letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

The Vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y*. The remaining letters are Consonants; of these

l, *m*, *n*, *r*, are called liquids,
s is called a sibilant,
x and *z* are double letters, and the rest are called mutes.

A syllable consists of one or more letters pronounced in one breath.

Two vowels joined in one syllable make a Diphthong; the Diphthongs are *ae*, *oe*, *au*, which are in common use, and *eu*, *ei*, *ui*, which occur in only a few words.

2. *Quantity.*—Quantity is used to denote the quicker or slower pronunciation of a syllable.

A syllable is considered *short* or *long* as its vowel is short or long.

A Long Syllable has the mark (¯) over the vowel. A Short Syllable has the mark (˘) over the vowel. A syllable marked thus (˘̄) is sometimes long, sometimes short.

A vowel may be
- Short by nature; as *ămŏr*.
- Long by nature; as *vērus*.
- Short by position (before another vowel); as *pĭus*.
- Long by position (before two consonants or a double consonant); as *pērdix*.

3. *Genders.*—There are three Genders:

Masculine, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

Substantives which are either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common*.

[See general Rules for Gender on page 112.]

4. *Parts of Speech.*—There are eight parts of speech in the Latin language:

1. Substantive, or Noun.
2. Adjective.
3. Pronoun.
4. Verb.
5. Adverb.
6. Preposition.
7. Conjunction.
8. Interjection.

Of these the first four admit of inflection, the last four do not. Inflection is the mode of changing the termination of words to show their relation to other words.

The Inflection of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns is called Declension, that of Verbs is called Conjugation.

There is no article in the Latin language: hence the Latin **mensa** means not only *table*, but also *a table* and *the table*.

5. *Substantives.*—The Substantive is declined by *Number* and *Case*.

There are two Numbers: *Singular* and *Plural*.

There are six Cases: *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, *Ablative*.

There are five Declensions distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Case Singular: thus,

The genitive of the first declension ends in *ae*.
" " " second " " *i*.
" " " third " " *is*.
" " " fourth " " *ūs*.
" " " fifth " " *ēi*.

II.—The First Declension.

The Nominative Singular of Latin Substantives of the First Declension ends in **ă**, and the Genitive in **ae**.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Mens-ă,**	*a table.*	**Mens-ae,**	*tables.*
Gen.	**Mens-ae,**	*of a table.*	**Mens-ārum,**	*of tables.*
Dat.	**Mens-ae,**	*to* or *for a table.*	**Mens-īs,**	*to* or *for tables.*
Acc.	**Mens-am,**	*a table.*	**Mens-ās,**	*tables.*
Voc.	**Mens-ă,**	*O table.* [*table.*	**Mens-ae,**	*O tables.* [*bles.*
Abl.	**Mens-ā,**	*by, with,* or *from a*	**Mens-īs,**	*by, with,* or *from ta*

All Substantives of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they designate males; as, nauta, *a sailor*.

[The Declension of Greek Nouns is given on page 28].

*Some General Rules of Quantity.**

1. A diphthong is always long.

2. A vowel is long before a double consonant, or before two single consonants (not a mute and liquid), or *j*.

3. A vowel is short before another vowel.

4. In declinable words final *a* is short, except in the ablative of the first declension, where *a* is always long.

H is not a consonant in Prosody; it does not, with a consonant, lengthen the preceding vowel, nor does it, between two vowels, prevent the shortening of the former.

Rule 1.—A personal verb agrees with its Nominative case in number and person: as, pŭella currĭt, *the girl runs;* puellae currunt, *the girls run.*

* Except where these Rules apply, the quantity will be marked in the vocabularies until other Rules are given; and the student is expected to accustom himself from the start to marking carefully in pronunciation the quantity of every syllable.

RULE 2.—Transitive verbs govern an Accusative case (of the direct object): as, ăquĭla ālās hăbĕt, *the eagle has wings.*

VOCABULARY 1.

f = *Feminine.*

āla, *f.*	*a wing.*	**mensa**, *f.*	*a table.*
ăquĭla, *f.*	*an eagle.*	**ōra**, *f.*	*a coast.*
cŏlōnia, *f.*	*a colony.*	**pĕcūnia**, *f.*	*money.*
cŏlumba, *f.*	*a dove.*	**porta**, *f.*	*a gate.*
cŏrōna, *f.*	*a crown.*	**puella**, *f.*	*a girl.*
fēmĭna, *f.*	*a woman.*	**rēgīna**, *f.*	*a queen.*
fĭlia, *f.*	*a daughter.*	**Rōma**, *f.*	*Rome* (the city).
insŭla, *f.*	*an island.*	**rŏsa**, *f.*	*a rose.*

[Give the Rules for the quantity in the above where the marks are omitted.]

Currĭt, *runs.*	**Currunt**, *run.*
Hăbĕt, *has.*	**Hăbent**, *have.*

EXERCISE I.

[The vocabulary should in every case be committed to memory and recited by the pupil before he begins to translate.]

1. Filia currit. 2. Filiae currunt. 3. Regina coronam habet. 4. Puella coronam habet. 5. Filia pecuniam habet. 6. Femina pecuniam habet. 7. Roma portas habet. 8. Coloniae portas habent. 9. Puellae rosas habent. 10. Feminae rosas habent. 11. Columbae alas habent. 12. Insulae oras habent.

1. The woman runs. 2. The women run. 3. The dove has wings. 4. The eagles have wings. 5. The colony has gates. 6. The island has coasts. 7. The girls have money. 8. The women have money. 9. The colony has women. 10. The island has colonies. 11. The woman has a crown. 12. The islands have roses.

RULE 3.—When two Nouns in Latin are connected by the verb "To Be," they are put in the same case: as, Brĭtannia est insŭla, *Britain is an island.*

RULE 4.—Of two Substantives, signifying different things, the limiting one is put in the Genitive case: as, Brĭtannia est insŭla Eurōpae, *Britain is an island of Europe.*

In this example the words "*of Europe*" indicate a more *limited* use of the word *island* than in the example under the previous rule. This *limiting* noun is put (in Latin) in the genitive case, whether it stands before or after the other noun.

VOCABULARY 2.

m = *Masculine.*

agrĭcŏla, *m.*	*a husbandman.*	**incŏla**, *m.*	*an inhabitant.*
ămīcĭtia, *f.*	*friendship.*	**inimīcĭtia**, *f.*	*enmity.*
Brĭtannia, *f.*	*Britain.*	**Ĭtălia**, *f.*	*Italy.*
causa, *f.*	*a cause.*	**nauta**, *m.*	*a sailor.*
Eurōpa, *f.*	*Europe.*	**patria**, *f.*	*a native-land, country*
Gallia, *f.*	*Gaul* (now France).	**pŏēta**, *m.*	*a poet.*
glōria, *f.*	*glory.*	**pugna**, *f.*	*a battle.*
Graecia, *f.*	*Greece.*	**Sicĭlia**, *f.*	*Sicily.*
		vīta, *f.*	*life.*

Est, *is.* **Sunt**, *are.*

EXERCISE II.

1. Sicilia est insula. 2. Sicilia est insula Europae. 3. Roma est regina Italiae. 4. Incolae Italiae sunt poetae. 5. Incolae insularum sunt nautae. 6. Incolae Britanniae sunt agricolae. 7. Insula est patria nautarum. 8. Graecia est patria poetarum. 9. Amicitia est gloria vitae. 10. Inimicitia incolarum est causa pugnae.

1. Britain is an island of Europe. 2. Britain is the native-land of sailors. 3. Italy is the native-land of poets. 4. The inhabitants of Britain are sailors. 5. The inhabitants of Sicily are sailors. 6. The inhabitants of Gaul are husbandmen. 7. An island is the native-land of sailors. 8. Friendship is the crown of life. 9. The battle is the cause of glory. 10. The enmity of the sailors is the cause of the battle.

III.—THE SECOND DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine Substantives of the Second Declension ends in **ŭs**, **ĕr**, and **ĭr** (in *vir* and compounds), and of Neuter Substantives in **um**. The Genitive Singular ends in **ī**.

A. *Masculine.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Dŏmĭn-ŭs,**	*a lord.*	**Dŏmĭn-ī,**	*lords.*
Gen.	**Dŏmĭn-ī,**	*of a lord.*	**Dŏmĭn-ōrum,**	*of lords.*
Dat.	**Dŏmĭn-ō,**	*to* or *for a lord.*	**Dŏmĭn-īs,**	*to* or *for lords.*
Acc.	**Dŏmĭn-um,**	*a lord.*	**Dŏmĭn-ōs,**	*lords.*
Voc.	**Dŏmĭn-ĕ,**	*O lord.* [*a lord.*	**Dŏmĭn-ī,**	*O lords.* [*lords*
Abl.	**Dŏmĭn-ō,**	*by, with,* or *from*	**Dŏmĭn-īs,**	*by, with,* or *from*

	Sing.		2. Plur.	
Nom.	**Glădi-ŭs,**	*a sword.*	**Glădi-ī,**	*swords.*
Gen.	**Glădi-ī,**	*of a sword.*	**Glădi-ōrum,**	*of swords.*
Dat.	**Glădi-ō,**	*to* or *for a sword.*	**Glădi-īs,**	*to* or *for swords.*
Acc.	**Glădi-um,**	*a sword.*	**Glădi-ōs,**	*swords.*
Voc.	**Glădi-ē,**	*O sword.* [*sword.*	**Glădi-ī,**	*O swords.* [*swords.*
Abl.	**Glădi-ō,**	*by, with,* or *from a*	**Glădi-īs,**	*by, with,* or *from*

REMARK.—Proper names in *ius*, and also *filius* and *genius*, are declined like *gladius*, but make the vocative in *i* instead of *ie* (by contraction): as, Virgĭlī (from Virgilius), *O Virgil;* fīlī (from filius), *O son.*

	Sing.		3. Plur.	
Nom.	**Măgistĕr,**	*a master.*	**Măgistr-ī,**	*masters.*
Gen.	**Măgistr-ī,**	*of a master.*	**Măgistr-ōrum,**	*of masters.*
Dat.	**Măgistr-ō,**	*to* or *for a master.*	**Măgistr-is,**	*to* or *for masters.*
Acc.	**Măgistr-um,**	*a master.*	**Măgistr-ōs,**	*masters.*
Voc.	**Măgistĕr,**	*O master.*	**Măgistr-ī,**	*O masters.*
Abl.	**Măgistr-ō,**	*by, with,* or *from a master.*	**Măgistr-īs,**	*by, with,* or *from masters.*

			4.	
Nom.	**Puĕr,**	*a boy.*	**Puĕr-i,**	*boys.*
Gen.	**Puĕr-ī,**	*of a boy.*	**Puĕr-ōrum,**	*of boys.*
Dat.	**Puĕr-ō,**	*to* or *for a boy.*	**Puĕr-īs,**	*to* or *for boys.*
Acc.	**Puĕr-um,**	*a boy.*	**Puĕr-ōs,**	*boys.*
Voc.	**Puĕr,**	*O boy.* [*boy.*	**Puĕr-ī,**	*O boys.*
Abl.	**Puĕr-ō,**	*by, with,* or *from a*	**Puĕr-īs,**	*by, with,* or *from boys.*

			5.	
Nom.	**Vĭr,**	*a man.*	**Vĭr-ī,**	*men.*
Gen.	**Vĭr-i,**	*of a man.*	**Vĭr-ōrum,**	*of men.*
Dat.	**Vĭr-ō,**	*to* or *for a man.*	**Vĭr-īs,**	*to* or *for men.*
Acc.	**Vĭr-um,**	*a man.*	**Vĭr-ōs,**	*men.*
Voc.	**Vĭr,**	*O man.* [*man.*	**Vĭr-ī,**	*O men.*
Abl.	**Vĭr-ō,**	*by, with,* or *from a*	**Vĭr-īs,**	*by, with,* or *from men.*

B. *Neuter.*

Nom.	**Regn-um,**	*a kingdom.*	**Regn-ă,**	*kingdoms.*
Gen.	**Regn-ī,**	*of a kingdom.*	**Regn-ōrum,**	*of kingdoms.*
Dat.	**Regn-ō,**	*to* or *for a kingdom.*	**Regn-īs,**	*to* or *for kingdoms.*
Acc.	**Regn-um,**	*a kingdom.*	**Regn-ă,**	*kingdoms.*
Voc.	**Regn-um,**	*O kingdom.*	**Regn-ă,**	*O kingdoms.*
Abl.	**Regn-ō,**	*by, with,* or *from a kingdom.*	**Regn-īs,**	*by, with,* or *from kingdoms.*

In all Neuter Substantives, the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative are the same in the Singular and Plural respectively.

[For declension of *Deus* and Greek nouns, see page 26 and 28.]

Additional Rules of Quantity (see p. 140).

1. *I* final is long.
2. *O* final is long.
3. *U* final is long.
4. *As*, *es*, and *os* final are long.
5. *Is* and *us* final are short; but *is* in plural cases long.

EXCEPTION.—*Us* is long in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. and Gen. Sing. of the 4th Declension, and in the Nominative of Nouns of the 3d Declension, which increase long in the Genitive; as, *virtūs*, *ūtis*, etc.

EXERCISE III.

Masculine Substantives in ŭs.

VOCABULARY 3.

ămīcus, *m.*	*a friend.*	**hortus**, *m.*	*a garden.*
ăvus, *m.*	*a grandfather.*	**ĭnīmīcus**, *m.*	*an enemy.*
dŏmĭnus, *m.*	*a lord, master.*	**Rhēnus**, *m.*	*the Rhine.*
ĕquus, *m.*	*a horse.*	**Rhŏdănus**, *m.*	*the Rhone.*
fīlius, *m.*	*a son.*	**rīpa**, *f.*	*a bank.*
flŭvius, *m.*	*a river.*	**servus**, *m.*	*a slave.*
glădius, *m.*	*a sword.*	**taurus**, *m.*	*a bull.*

REMARK.—When two or more nominatives singular are connected by a conjunction, the verb is put in the plural; as, Rhēnus et Rhŏdănus sunt fluvii, *the Rhine and the Rhone are rivers.*

1. Filius currit. 2. Servi currunt. 3. Dominus servos habet. 4. Filius domini servos habet. 5. Dominus servos et equos habet. 6. Filii dominorum equos et tauros habent. 7. Avus servos et equos habet. 8. Filius amici hortum habet. 9. Filii inimicorum gladios habent. 10. Rhodanus est fluvius Galliae. 11. Rhodanus et Rhenus sunt fluvii Galliae. 12. Hortus rosas habet.

1. The slave runs. 2. The sons run. 3. The grandfather has a slave. 4. The son of the grandfather has slaves. 5. The sons of the grandfather have slaves. 6. The sons of the lords are sailors. 7. The sons of the slaves are husbandmen. 8. The lord has slaves and horses. 9. The Rhone and the Rhine are rivers of Europe. 10. The friends of the grandfather are poets. 11. The enemies of the lord have swords. 12. The rivers of the island have banks.

RULE 5.—The Dative Case indicates the person (or thing) who gains or receives any thing: as, Măgister cŏlumbam pŭĕro dat, *the master gives a dove to the boy.*

Dăt. *gives.* **Dant.** *give*

Exercise IV.

Masculine Substantives in ĕr *and* ĭr.

Vocabulary 4.

ăger, *m.*	*a field, territory.*	**mĭnister**, *m.*	*a servant.*
gĕner, *m.*	*a son-in-law.*	**puer**, *m.*	*a boy.*
lĭber, *m.*	*a book.*	**sŏcer**, *m.*	*a father-in-law.*
măgister, *m.*	*a master, teacher.*	**vir**, *m.*	*a man.*

Mĭnister, lĭber, ăger, are declined like măgister. Sŏcer, gĕner, are declined like puer.

1. Puer librum habet. 2. Magister librum puero dat. 3. Filius viri libros habet. 4. Dominus servos et ministros habet. 5. Dominus agrum ministro dat. 6. Socer agros et ministros habet. 7. Socer agrum genero dat. 8. Magistri libros virōrum pueris dant. 9. Gener servum puero dat. 10. Puer librum viri ministro dat.

1. The boys have books. 2. The lord gives a field to the boys. 3. The fathers-in-law and the sons-in-law have fields. 4. The father-in-law gives servants to the son-in-law. 5. The friends of the boy have the books of the man. 6. The enemies have servants and fields. 7. The masters give gardens to the boys. 8. The master gives doves to the boys. 9. The grandfather gives fields to the master. 10. The fathers-in-law give fields and bulls to the sons-in-law. 11. The man and the boy have fields and books. 12. The boy is the son of the man.

Exercise V.

Neuter Substantives.

Vocabulary 5.

n=Neuter.

argentum, *n.*	*silver.*	**praemium**, *n.*	*a reward.*
aurum, *n.*	*gold.*	**regnum**, *n.*	*a kingdom.*
bellum, *n.*	*war.*	**scūtum**, *n.*	*a shield.*
coelum, *n.*	*heaven.*	**templum**, *n.*	*a temple.*
dīligentia, *f.*	*diligence.*	**discĭpŭlus**, *m.*	*a pupil, scholar.*
dōnum, *n.*	*a gift.*	**morbus**, *m.*	*a disease.*
gaudium, *n.*	*joy.*	**mūrus**, *m.*	*a wall.*
mĕtallum, *n.*	*a metal.*	**Rōmānus**, *m.*	*a Roman.*
oppĭdum, *n.*	*a town.*		

1. Amici sunt donum coeli. 2. Amicitia est donum coeli 3. Dona avi sunt praemia diligentiae. 4. Aurum et argentum sunt metalla. 5. Magister argentum puero dat. 6. Discipuli sunt gaudium magistrorum. 7. Bellum est causa mor-

borum. 8. Oppidum muros et portas habet. 9. Templa sunt gloria Graeciae. 10. Romani gladios et scuta habent.

1. The books are the gift of a friend. 2. The boys and girls are the joy of the grandfather. 3. The grandfather gives gold and silver to the boys. 4. Greece and Sicily have temples. 5. The temples of Greece have gifts. 6. The father-in-law gives gold and silver to the temples. 7. The metals are the cause of war. 8. The queen has lands and towns. 9. The queen gives rewards to the inhabitants. 10. The lord gives shields and swords to the servants.

IV.—Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

Adjectives in *ŭs, ă, um,* or *ĕr, ă, um,* are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Substantives of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Substantives of the First Declension: as, bŏnŭs, bŏnă, bŏnum, *good;* nĭgĕr, nigră, nigrum, *black;* tĕnĕr, tĕnĕră, tĕnĕrum, *tender.*

1.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Bŏn-ŭs	bŏn-ă	bŏn-um	Bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ă
Gen.	Bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ī	Bŏn-ōrum	bŏn-ārum	bŏn-ōrum
Dat.	Bŏn-ō	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ō	Bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs
Acc.	Bŏn-um	bŏn-am	bŏn-um	Bŏn-ōs	bŏn-ās	bŏn-ă
Voc.	Bŏn-ĕ	bŏn-ă	bŏn-um	Bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ă
Abl.	Bŏn-ō	bŏn-ā	bŏn-ō	Bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs

2.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Nĭgĕr	nigr-ă	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ă
Gen.	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī	Nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
Dat.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
Acc.	Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	Nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ă
Voc.	Nig-ĕr	nigr-ă	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ă
Abl.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs

3.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-ă	tĕnĕr-um	Tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ă
Gen.	Tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ī	Tĕnĕr-ōrum	tĕnĕr-ārum	tĕnĕr-ōrum
Dat.	Tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ō	Tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs
Acc.	Tĕnĕr-um	tĕnĕr-am	tĕnĕr-um	Tĕnĕr-ōs	tĕnĕr-ās	tĕnĕr-ă
Voc.	Tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-ă	tĕnĕr-um	Tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ă
Abl.	Tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-ā	tĕnĕr-ō	Tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs

RULE 6.—Adjectives agree with their Substantives in gender, number, and case.

EXERCISE VI.

VOCABULARY 6.

ăcūtus, a, um,	*sharp.*	**splendĭdus, a, um,**	*splendid, bright.*
albus, a, um,	*white.*	**tĭmĭdus, a, um,**	*timid.*
altus, a, um,	*high, deep.*	**aeger, gra, grum,**	*sick.*
bellĭcōsus, a, um,	*warlike.*	**mĭser, ĕra, ĕrum,**	*wretched.*
bŏnus, a, um,	*good.*	**nĭger, gra, grum,**	*black.*
grātus, a, um,	*pleasing.*	**pulcher, chra, chrum,**	*beautiful.*
lātus, a, um,	*wide, broad.*	**săcer, cra, crum,**	*sacred.*
longus, a, um,	*long.*	**tĕner, ĕra, ĕrum,**	*tender.*
magnus, a, um,	*great.*	**exemplum,** *n.*	*an example.*
mălus, a, um,	*bad, wicked.*	**hasta,** *f.*	*a spear.*
mŏlestus, a, um,	*troublesome.*	**terra,** *f.*	*the earth, land.*
multus, a, um,	*much, many.*		
noxius, a, um,	*hurtful, injurious.*	**numĕrus,** *m.*	*a number.*
ignāvus, a, um,	*lazy.*	**perīcŭlum,** *n.*	*danger.*
parvus, a, um,	*small, little.*		
răpĭdus, a, um,	*rapid.*		

Grātus, mŏlestus, noxius, are constructed with the Dative Case; as, *pleasing to a friend*, gratus amico.

A.—1. Servus est timidus. 2. Columba est timida. 3. Gaudium est timidum. 4. Servi sunt mali. 5. Insulae sunt magnae. 6. Oppida sunt parva. 7. Muri sunt alti. 8. Puellae sunt bonae. 9. Horti sunt lati. 10. Alae sunt albae.

1. The sword is long. 2. The island is long. 3. The shields are long. 4. The slaves are timid. 5. The doves are timid. 6. The towns are great. 7. The temples are small. 8. The shields are wide. 9. The kingdom is great. 10. The friends are good.

B.—1. Columba albas alas habet. 2. Multae columbae albas alas habent. 3. Graecia multa templa habet. 4. Splendida templa sunt gloria Graeciae. 5. Bellicosa regina multas terras habet. 6. Insula parva incolas habet. 7. Oppidum magnum multas portas habet. 8. Magister librum bono puero dat. 9. Avus praemium bonae puellae dat. 10. Pericula nautarum sunt magna. 11. Dominus acutos gladios habet.

1. The queen has many islands. 2. The queen gives swords to the inhabitants. 3. Gaul has many towns. 4. The temples are great and splendid. 5. The daughters of the women are good. 6. The son of the warlike queen has a sharp sword.

7. The high banks have many roses. 8. The Rhone is a great and broad river. 9. The roses of the high banks are white. 10. The Rhine is a rapid river of Gaul.

C.—1. Puer est aeger. 2. Puella est aegra. 3. Aurum templi est sacrum. 4. Regina est pulchra. 5. Filiae sunt tenerae. 6. Filii sunt miseri. 7. Morbus tenero filio est molestus. 8. Exemplum servi noxium puero est. 9. Praemia diligentiae sunt grata discipulis. 10. Magnus est numerus puerorum.

1. The pupils of the master are sick. 2. The master gives a book to the sick boy. 3. The black horses are troublesome to the man. 4. Great is the number of black slaves. 5. The splendid gifts of the temple are sacred. 6. Great is the diligence of the beautiful girl. 7. The diligence of the girl is pleasing to the grandfather. 8. The example of a lazy boy is injurious to the pupils. 9. The disease is troublesome to the wretched girl. 10. The master gives rewards to the beautiful girl.

V.—The Third Declension.

The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the Third Declension ends in various letters. The Genitive Singular always ends in **is**.

A. *Masculine and Feminine Substantives.*

1. Substantives the stems* of which end in the labial (lip) letters *p*, *b*, *m*.

	Sing.		1. Plur.	
Nom.	**Urb-s** (*f.*),	*a city.*	**Urb-ēs,**	*cities.*
Gen.	**Urb-is,**	*of a city.*	**Urb-ium,**	*of cities.*
Dat.	**Urb-ī,**	*to* or *for a city.*	**Urb-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for cities.*
Acc.	**Urb-em,**	*a city.*	**Urb-ēs,**	*cities.*
Voc.	**Urb-s,**	*O city.* [*city.*	**Urb-ēs,**	*O cities.*
Abl.	**Urb-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a*	**Urb-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from cities.*

			2.	
Nom.	**Princep-s** (*c.*),	*a chief.*	**Princĭp-ēs,**	*chiefs.*
Gen.	**Princĭp-is,**	*of a chief.*	**Princĭp-um,**	*of chiefs.*
Dat.	**Princĭp-ī,**	*to* or *for a chief.*	**Princĭp-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for chiefs.*
Acc.	**Princĭp-em,**	*a chief.*	**Princĭp-ēs,**	*chiefs.*
Voc.	**Princep-s,**	*O chief.* [*a chief.*	**Princĭp-ēs,**	*O chiefs.* [*chiefs.*
Abl.	**Princĭp-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from*	**Princĭp-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from*

* The *Stem* is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away, as *urb*, *hiem*, *duc*.

	Sing.		3. Plur.	
Nom.	**Hiem-s** (*f.*),	*winter.*	**Hiĕm-ēs**,	*winters.*
Gen.	**Hiĕm-is**,	*of winter.*	**Hiĕm-um**,	*of winters.*
Dat.	**Hiĕm-ī**,	*to* or *for winter.*	**Hiĕm-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for winters.*
Acc.	**Hiĕm-em**,	*winter.*	**Hiĕm-ēs**,	*winters.*
Voc.	**Hiem-s**,	*O winter.* [*winter.*	**Hiĕm-ēs**,	*O winters.* [*ters.*
Abl.	**Hiĕm-ĕ**,	*by, with,* or *from*	**Hiĕm-ĭbŭs**,	*by, with,* or *from win-*

2. Substantives the stems of which end in the guttural (throat) letters, *c*, *g*. NOTE.—In the Nominative Singular *cs*, *gs* are contracted into *x*.

	Sing.		1. Plur.	
Nom.	**Dux** (*c.*),	*a leader.*	**Dŭc-ōs**,	*leaders.*
Gen.	**Dŭc-is**,	*of a leader.*	**Dŭc-um**,	*of leaders.*
Dat.	**Dŭc-ī**,	*to* or *for a leader.*	**Dŭc-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for leaders.*
Acc.	**Dŭc-em**,	*a leader.*	**Dŭc-ēs**,	*leaders.*
Voc.	**Dux**,	*O leader.* [*leader.*	**Dŭc-ō**,	*O leaders.*
Abl.	**Dŭc-ĕ**,	*by, with,* or *from a*	**Dŭc-ĭbŭs**,	*by, with,* or *from leaders.*

			2.	
Nom.	**Lex** (*f.*),	*a law.*	**Lĕg-ēs**,	*laws.*
Gen.	**Lĕg-is**,	*of a law.*	**Lĕg-um**,	*of laws.*
Dat.	**Lĕg-ī**,	*to* or *for a law.*	**Lĕg-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for laws.*
Acc.	**Lĕg-em**,	*a law.*	**Lĕg-ēs**,	*laws.*
Voc.	**Lex**,	*O law.* [*law.*	**Lĕg-ēs**,	*O laws.*
Abl.	**Lĕg-ĕ**,	*by, with,* or *from a*	**Lĕg-ĭbŭs**,	*by, with,* or *from laws.*

			3.	
Nom.	**Jūdex** (*c.*),	*a judge.*	**Jūdĭc-ēs**,	*judges.*
Gen.	**Jūdĭc-is**,	*of a judge.*	**Jūdĭc-um**,	*of judges.*
Dat.	**Jūdĭc-ī**,	*to* or *for a judge.*	**Jūdĭc-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for judges.*
Acc.	**Jūdĭc-em**,	*a judge.*	**Jūdĭc-ēs**,	*judges.*
Voc.	**Jūdex**,	*O judge.* [*a judge.*	**Jūdĭc-ēs**,	*O judges.*
Abl.	**Jūdĭc-ĕ**,	*by, with,* or *from*	**Jūdĭc-ĭbŭs**,	*by, with,* or *from judges.*

Additional Rules of Quantity.

1. In the singular increment of nouns *a* and *o* are usually long; *e*, *i*, *u*, and *y* are short.

2. In the plural increment of nouns *a*, *e*, and *o* are long; *i* and *u* are short.

[By *increment* is meant the syllable (or syllables) which an oblique case has more than the nominative; as *aetas*, genitive *aetātis*, in which *āt* is the (singular) increment; *pueri* (nominative plural), *puerōrum* (genitive plural), in which *ōr* is the (plural) increment; and so *duces*, *ducĭbus*.]

There are several exceptions to the rule for the singular increment; these will be marked for the present in the vocabularies, and will be specified more fully in subsequent pages: see exceptions on p. 156.

VOCABULARY 7.

c=*Common Gender.*

hiems, hiĕmis, *f.*	*winter.*	**rex, rēgis,*** *m.*	*a king.*
trabs, trăbis, *f.*	*a beam.*	**bĕnignŭs, ă, um,**	*kind.*
urbs, urbis, *f.*	*a city.*	**firmus, ă, um,**	*strong.*
arx, arcis, *f.*	*a citadel.*	**jūcundŭs, ă, um,**	*pleasant.*
dux, dūcis, *c.*	*a leader, general.*	**justŭs, ă, um,**	*just.*
pax, pācis, *f.*	*peace.*	**Rōmŭlŭs, ī,** *m.*	*Romulus.*
jūdex, jūdĭcis, *m.*	*a judge.*	**sĕvērŭs, ă, um,**	*severe.*
lex, lēgis,* *f.*	*a law.*		

Erăt, *was.* **Erant,** *were.*

EXERCISE VII.

1. Trabes sunt longae. 2. Romulus Romanorum rex erat. 3. Pax regi jucunda erat. 4. Judices erant justi. 5. Duces erant benigni. 6. Leges Romanorum severae erant. 7. Reges arces firmas habent. 8. Firma est arx urbis. 9. Hiems agricolis molesta erat. 10. Oppida regis firma erant.

1. The beams were long. 2. Rome is a city of Italy. 3. The leader of the Romans was warlike. 4. Peace was pleasant to the leaders. 5. The king gives the city to the leader. 6. The judges were kind and just. 7. The king gives a book to the severe judge. 8. The disease is troublesome to the king. 9. The example is injurious to the judges. 10. The sons of the judges are severe.

3. Substantives the stems of which end in the dental (teeth) letters *t*, *d*.

1.

Sing.		Plur.	
Nom. **Aetā-s** (*f.*),	*an age.*	**Aetāt-ēs,**	*ages.*
Gen. **Aetāt-is,**	*of an age.*	**Aetāt-um,**	*of ages.*
Dat. **Aetāt-ī,**	*to* or *for an age.*	**Aetāt-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for ages.*
Acc. **Aetāt-em,**	*an age.*	**Aetāt-ēs,**	*ages.*
Voc. **Aetā-s,**	*O age.* [*an age.*	**Aetāt-ēs,**	*O ages.*
Abl. **Aetāt-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from*	**Aetāt-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from ages.*

2.

Nom. **Lăp-ĭs** (*m.*),	*a stone.*	**Lăpĭd-ēs,**	*stones.*
Gen. **Lăpĭd-is,**	*of a stone.*	**Lăpĭd-um,**	*of stones.*
Dat. **Lăpĭd-ī,**	*to* or *for a stone.*	**Lăpĭd-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for stones.*
Acc. **Lăpĭd-em,**	*a stone.*	**Lăpĭd-ēs,**	*stones.*
Voc. **Lăpi-s,**	*O stone.* [*stone.*	**Lăpĭd-ēs,**	*O stones.*
Abl. **Lăpĭd-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a*	**Lăpĭd-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from stones.*

* *Lex, rex, plebs,* and *ver* always increase long (see p. 156).

3.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	**Mīlĕ-s** (*m.*), *a soldier.*	**Mīlĭt-ēs,**	*soldiers.*
Gen.	**Mīlĭt-is,** *of a soldier.*	**Mīlĭt-um,**	*of soldiers.*
Dat.	**Mīlĭt-ī,** *to* or *for a soldier.*	**Mīlĭt-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for soldiers.*
Acc.	**Mīlĭt-em,** *a soldier.*	**Mīlĭt-ēs,**	*soldiers.*
Voc.	**Mīlĕ-s,** *O soldier.* [*soldier.*	**Mīlĭt-ēs,**	*O soldiers.*
Abl.	**Mīlĭt-ĕ,** *by, with,* or *from a*	**Mīlĭt-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from soldiers.*

RULE 7.—The Ablative case indicates—(1.) The instrument or means by which something is done; as, dŏmĭnus hastā servum occīdit, *the lord kills the slave with a spear.*

(2.) The time when something is done or takes place; as, noctes hĭĕmĕ longae sunt, *the nights are long in winter.*

VOCABULARY 8.

cŏmĕs, cŏmĭtis, *c. a companion.*	**aestās, aestātis,** *f. summer.*
custōs, custōdis, *m. a guardian.*	**cīvĭtās, tātis,** *f. state.*
ĕquĕs, ĕquĭtis, *m. a horseman.*	**tempestās, tātis,** *f. tempest.*
lăpis, lăpĭdis, *m. a stone.*	**voluntās, tātis,** *f. wish.*
mīlĕs, mīlĭtis, *m. a soldier.*	**nox, noctis,** *f. night.*
mors, mortis, *f. death.*	**auctumnus, i,** *m. autumn.*
obses, obsĭdis, *c. a hostage.*	**nātūra, ae,** *f. nature.*
pĕdes, pĕdĭtis, *m. a foot-soldier.*	**clārŭs, ă, um,** *clear, renowned.*

Occīdit, *kills.* **Occīdunt,** *kill.*

EXERCISE VIII.

1. Miles gladio obsidem occidit. 2. Miles lapide comitem occidit. 3. Pedites custodes gladiis occidunt. 4. Tempestates auctumno magnae sunt. 5. Equites et pedites timidi erant. 6. Custodes auri erant timidi. 7. Mors est lex naturae. 8. Civitas Romanorum clara erat. 9. Voluntas judicis justa est. 10. Milites judices hastis occidunt.

1. Tempests in the winter are great. 2. A tempest in the summer is troublesome. 3. A long night in the winter is pleasant. 4. The inhabitants kill the soldiers with stones. 5. The hostages kill the foot-soldiers with spears. 6. The wish of the companion is just. 7. The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers have swords. 8. The guardian of the silver was timid. 9. The boy has many stones. 10. The king has many soldiers and companions.

4. Substantives the stems of which end in the liquids *l, r,* and the sibilant *s.*

1.

Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	Consŭl (*m.*), *a consul.*	Consŭl-ēs,	*consuls.*
Gen.	Consŭl-is, *of a consul.*	Consŭl-um,	*of consuls.*
Dat.	Consŭl-ī, *to or for a consul.*	Consŭl-ĭbŭs,	*to or for consuls.*
Acc.	Consŭl-em, *a consul.*	Consŭl-ēs,	*consuls.*
Voc.	Consŭl, *O consul.*	Consŭl-ēs,	*O consuls.*
Abl.	Consŭl-ĕ, *by, with, or from a consul.*	Consŭl-ĭbŭs,	*by, with, or from consuls.*

2.

Nom.	Clāmŏr (*m.*), *a shout.*	Clāmōr-ēs,	*shouts.*
Gen.	Clāmōr-is, *of a shout.*	Clāmōr-um,	*of shouts.*
Dat.	Clāmōr-ī, *to or for a shout.*	Clāmōr-ĭbŭs,	*to or for shouts.*
Acc.	Clāmōr-em, *a shout.*	Clāmōr-ēs,	*shouts.*
Voc.	Clāmŏr, *O shout.* [*a shout.*	Clāmōr-ēs,	*O shouts.*
Abl.	Clāmōr-ĕ, *by, with, or from*	Clāmōr-ĭbŭs,	*by, with, or from shouts.*

3.

Nom.	Ansĕr (*m.*), *a goose.*	Ansĕr-ēs,	*geese.*
Gen.	Ansĕr-is, *of a goose.*	Ansĕr-um,	*of geese.*
Dat.	Ansĕr-ī, *to or for a goose.*	Ansĕr-ĭbŭs,	*to or for geese.*
Acc.	Ansĕr-em, *a goose.*	Ansĕr-ēs,	*geese.*
Voc.	Ansĕr, *O goose.* [*a goose.*	Ansĕr-ēs,	*O geese.*
Abl.	Ansĕr-ĕ, *by, with, or from*	Ansĕr-ĭbŭs,	*by, with, or from geese.*

4.

Nom.	Pătĕr, *a father.*	Patr-ēs,	*fathers.*
Gen.	Patr-is, *of a father.*	Patr-um,	*of fathers.*
Dat.	Patr-ī, *to or for a father.*	Patr-ĭbŭs,	*to or for fathers.*
Acc.	Patr-em, *a father.*	Patr-ēs,	*fathers.*
Voc.	Pătĕr, *O father.* [*father.*	Patr-ēs,	*O fathers.*
Abl.	Patr-ĕ, *by, with, or from a*	Patr-ĭbŭs,	*by, with, or from fathers.*

5.

Nom.	Flōs (*m.*), *a flower.*	Flōr-ēs,	*flowers.*
Gen.	Flōr-is, *of a flower.*	Flōr-um,	*of flowers.*
Dat.	Flōr-ī, *to or for a flower.*	Flōr-ĭbŭs,	*to or for flowers.*
Acc.	Flōr-em, *a flower.*	Flōr-ēs,	*flowers.*
Voc.	Flōs, *O flower.* [*flower.*	Flōr-ēs,	*O flowers.*
Abl.	Flōr-ĕ, *by, with, or from a*	Flōr-ĭbŭs,	*by, with, or from flowers.*

Rules of Quantity (Monosyllables).

1. Words of one syllable, ending in *b*, *d*, *l*, and *t*, have their vowel short, except *nīl*, *sāl*, and *sōl*.

2. Words of one syllable in *c*, *n*, *r*, and *s*, have their vowel long, except *nĕc*, *hĭc* (pron., common), *ăn*, *ĭn*, *cŏr*, *vĭr*, *pĕr*, *tĕr*, *bĭs*, *cĭs*, *ĕs* (from *sum*,) *ĭs*, *ŏs* (gen. *ossis*), and *quĭs*.

VOCABULARY 9.

frātĕr, tris, *m.*	*a brother.*	victŏr, ōris, *m.*	*a conqueror.*
mātĕr, tris, *f.*	*a mother.*	flōs, ōris, *m.*	*a flower.*
pătĕr, tris, *m.*	*a father.*	sōl, sōlis, *m.*	*the sun.*
aggĕr, ĕris, *m.*	*a mound.*	castră, ōrum, *n. pl.*	*a camp.*
călŏr, ōris, *m.*	*heat.*	tōtŭs, ă, um,	*whole.*
clāmŏr, ōris, *m.*	*a shout.*	fossa, ae, *f.*	*a ditch.*
cŏlŏr, ōris, *m.*	*color.*	mūnīmentum, i, *n.*	*a fortification.*
lăbŏr, ōris, *m.*	*labor, hardship.*	praeda, ae, *f.*	*booty.*
ŏdŏr, ōris, *m.*	*smell, scent.*	vărius, a, um,	*different, various.*
sŏrŏr, ōris, *f.*	*a sister.*		

EXERCISE IX.

1. Puer patrem et matrem habet. 2. Puellae fratres et sorores habent. 3. Varii sunt odores florum. 4. Color floris est jucundus. 5. Labor aestate molestus est. 6. Calor solis molestus est. 7. Tota urbs est praeda victoris. 8. Aggeres et fossae sunt munimenta castrorum. 9. Clamor militum molestus est.

1. The father of the judge is just. 2. The mother of the soldier is sick. 3. The hostage has a brother and a sister. 4. Various are the colors of the flowers. 5. The brother gives a flower to his sister. 6. The shout of the soldiers was great. 7. The heat of the sun is great. 8. The heat is troublesome in the summer. 9. The mounds of the camp are high. 10. The cities are the booty of the soldiers.

5. Substantives of which the stem ends in *ŏn* or *ŏn* (*ĭn*).

1.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Leo (*m.*), *a lion.*	Leōn-ēs, *lions.*
Gen.	Leōn-is, *of a lion.*	Leōn-um, *of lions.*
Dat.	Leōn-ī, *to* or *for a lion.*	Leōn-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for lions.*
Acc.	Leōn-em, *a lion.*	Leōn-ēs, *lions.*
Voc.	Leo, *O lion.*	Leōn-ēs, *O lions.*
Abl.	Leōn-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from a lion.*	Leōn-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from lions.*

2.

Nom.	Virgo, *a maiden.*	Virgĭn-ēs, *maidens.*
Gen.	Virgĭn-is, *of a maiden.*	Virgĭn-um, *of maidens.*
Dat.	Virgĭn-ī, *to* or *for a maiden.*	Virgĭn-ĭbŭs, *to* or *for maidens.*
Acc.	Virgĭn-em, *a maiden.*	Virgĭn-ēs, *maidens.*
Voc.	Virgo, *O maiden.*	Virgĭn-ēs, *O maidens.*
Abl.	Virgĭn-ĕ, *by, with,* or *from a maiden.*	Virgĭn-ĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from maidens.*

VOCABULARY 10.

leo, ōnis, *m.*	*a lion.*	alter,* ĕra, ĕrum,	*(the other), second.*
Jūno, ōnis, *f.*	*Juno.*	certus, a, um,	*certain.*
pāvo, ōnis, *m.*	*a peacock.*	dĕa, ae, *f.*	*a goddess.*
sermo, ōnis, *m.*	*a discourse.*	doctus, a, um,	*learned.*
consuētūdo, ĭnis, *f.*	*habit.*	infīnītus, a, um,	*unbounded, infinite.*
hŏmo, ĭnis, *c.*	*a man, a woman.*		
multĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*	*multitude.*		
virgo, ĭnis, *f.*	*a virgin, maiden.*	Mĭnerva, ae, *f.*	*Minerva.*
ōrātor, ōris, *m.*	*an orator.*	vălĭdus, a, um,	*strong.*

EXERCISE X.

1. Leones sunt validi. 2. Virgo est timida. 3. Calor molestus est multis hominibus. 4. Consuetudo altera natura est. 5. Sermo oratoris est doctus. 6. Pavones agricolae sunt pulchri. 7. Mors hominibus certa est. 8. Multitudo morborum est infinita. 9. Juno erat dea Romanorum. 10. Vita hominibus grata est.

1. The lion is strong. 2. The maidens are timid. 3. The multitude of men is infinite. 4. The soldier kills the lion with a sword. 5. The father gives a peacock to the maiden. 6. The heat is troublesome. 7. The heat in autumn is injurious to men. 8. The discourses of the orators were learned. 9. Juno and Minerva were goddesses of the Romans. 10. The peacock was sacred to Juno.

6. Substantives of which the stem ends in *i*.

1.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Host-ĭs (*c.*), *an enemy.*	Host-ēs, *enemies.*
Gen.	Host-ĭs, *of an enemy.*	Host-ĭum, *of enemies.*
Dat.	Host-ī, *to or for an enemy.*	Host-ĭbŭs, *to or for enemies.*
Acc.	Host-em, *an enemy.*	Host-ēs, *enemies.*
Voc.	Host-ĭs, *O enemy.*	Host-ēs, *O enemies.*
Abl.	Host-ĕ, *by, with, or from an enemy.*	Host-ĭbŭs, *by, with, or from enemies.*

Some stems in *i* have also a form in *e*, and are thus declined:

2.

Nom.	Nūb-ēs (*f.*), *a cloud.*	Nūb-ēs, *clouds.*
Gen.	Nūb-ĭs, *of a cloud.*	Nūb-ĭum, *of clouds.*
Dat.	Nūb-ī, *to or for a cloud.*	Nūb-ĭbŭs, *to or for clouds.*
Acc.	Nūb-em, *a cloud.*	Nūb-ēs, *clouds.*
Voc.	Nūb-ēs, *O cloud.* [*a cloud.*	Nūb-ēs, *O clouds.*
Abl.	Nūb-ĕ, *by, with, or from*	Nūb-ĭbŭs, *by, with, or from clouds.*

* The Genitive Singular of *alter* is *alterius*, dative *alteri*; see page 29

VOCABULARY 11.

cīvis, is, *c.*	*a citizen.*	**rūpes, is,** *f.*	*a rock.*
classis, is, *f.*	*a fleet.*	**angustus, a, um,**	*narrow.*
hostis, is, *c.*	*an enemy (public).*	**āter, ātra, ātrum,**	*black.*
turris, is, *f.*	*a tower.*	**dūrus, a, um,**	*hard.*
vallis, is, *f.*	*a valley.*	**nix, nĭvis,** *f.*	*snow.*
vestis, is, *f.*	*a garment.*	**nōtus, a, um,**	*known.*
clādes, is, *f.*	*slaughter.*	**pĕrītus, a, um,**	*skillful.*
nūbes, is, *f.*	*a cloud.*	**Rōmānus, a, um,**	*Roman.*

EXERCISE XI.

1. Cives agros et hortos habent. 2. Rex civibus praemia dat. 3. Nubes atrae sunt causa tempestatum. 4. Rupes sunt durae. 5. Urbs turres altas habet. 6. Clades hostium magna erat. 7. Classis Romana duces peritos habet. 8. Valles hostibus notae erant. 9. Graecia valles angustas habet. 10. Virgo pulchram vestem habet.

1. The citizens were timid. 2. The valleys are known to the citizens. 3. The mother gives a garment to the maiden. 4. The citizens kill the enemies with swords. 5. The rocks are known to the citizens. 6. The valleys of Greece are narrow. 7. The Roman fleet has a skillful leader. 8. The maidens have beautiful garments. 9. The slaughter of the soldiers was great. 10. The leaders of the enemies were skillful.

B. *Neuter Substantives.*

1. Substantives the stems of which end in *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*.

1.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	**Nōmĕn,** *a name.*	**Nōmĭn-ă,** *names.*
Gen.	**Nōmĭn-ĭs,** *of a name.*	**Nōmĭn-um,** *of names.*
Dat.	**Nōmĭn-ī,** *to* or *for a name.*	**Nōmĭn-ĭbŭs,** *to* or *for names.*
Acc.	**Nōmĕn,** *a name.*	**Nōmĭn-ă,** *names.*
Voc.	**Nōmĕn,** *O name.*	**Nōmĭn-ă,** *O names.*
Abl.	**Nōmĭn-ĕ,** *by, with,* or *from a name.*	**Nōmĭn-ĭbŭs,** *by, with,* or *from names.*

2.

Nom.	**Fulgŭr,** *lightning.*	**Fulgŭr-ă,** *lightnings.*
Gen.	**Fulgŭr-ĭs,*** *of lightning.*	**Fulgŭr-um,** *of lightnings.*
Dat.	**Fulgŭr-ī,** *to* or *for lightning.*	**Fulgŭr-ĭbŭs,** *to* or *for lightnings.*
Acc.	**Fulgŭr,** *lightning.*	**Fulgŭr-ă,** *lightnings.*
Voc.	**Fulgŭr,** *O lightning.*	**Fulgŭr-ă,** *O lightnings.*
Abl.	**Fulgŭr-ĕ,** *by, with,* or *from lightning.*	**Fulgŭr-ĭbŭs,** *by, with,* or *from lightnings.*

* But **udis, uris, utis,** from nominatives in **us.** have *u* long.

3.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	**Crūs,** *a leg.*		**Crūr-ā,** *legs.*
Gen.	**Crūr-is,** *of a leg.*		**Crūr-um,** *of legs.*
Dat.	**Crūr-ī,** *to* or *for a leg.*		**Crūr-ĭbŭs,** *to* or *for legs.*
Acc.	**Crūs,** *a leg.*		**Crūr-ā,** *legs.*
Voc.	**Crūs,** *O leg.*	[*leg.*	**Crūr-ā,** *O legs.*
Abl.	**Crūr-ĕ,** *by, with,* or *from a*		**Crūr-ĭbŭs,** *by, with,* or *from legs.*

4.

Nom.	**Ŏpŭs,** *a work.*		**Ŏpĕr-ă,** *works.*
Gen.	**Ŏpĕr-is,** *of a work.*		**Ŏpĕr-um,** *of works.*
Dat.	**Ŏpĕr-ī,** *to* or *for a work.*		**Ŏpĕr-ĭbŭs,** *to* or *for works.*
Acc.	**Ŏpŭs,** *a work.*		**Ŏpĕr-ă,** *works.*
Voc.	**Ŏpŭs,** *O work.*	[*work.*	**Ŏpĕr-ă,** *O works.*
Abl.	**Ŏpĕr-ĕ,** *by, with,* or *from a*		**Ŏpĕr-ĭbŭs,** *by, with,* or *from works.*

5.

Nom.	**Corpŭs,** *a body.*		**Corpŏr-ă,** *bodies.*
Gen.	**Corpŏr-is,*** *of a body.*		**Corpŏr-um,** *of bodies.*
Dat.	**Corpŏr-ī,** *to* or *for a body.*		**Corpŏr-ĭbŭs,** *to* or *for bodies.*
Acc.	**Corpŭs,** *a body.*		**Corpŏr-ă,** *bodies.*
Voc.	**Corpŭs,** *O body.*	[*body.*	**Corpŏr-ă,** *O bodies.*
Abl.	**Corpŏr-ĕ,** *by, with,* or *from a*		**Corpŏr-ĭbŭs,** *by, with,* or *from bodies*

6.

Nom.	**Căpŭt,** *a head.*		**Căpĭt-ă,** *heads.*
Gen.	**Căpĭt-is,** *of a head.*		**Căpĭt-um,** *of heads.*
Dat.	**Căpĭt-ī,** *to* or *for a head.*		**Căpĭt-ĭbŭs,** *to* or *for heads.*
Acc.	**Căpŭt,** *a head.*		**Căpĭt-ă,** *heads.*
Voc.	**Căpŭt,** *O head.*	[*head.*	**Căpĭt-ă,** *O heads.*
Abl.	**Căpĭt-ĕ,** *by, with,* or *from a*		**Căpĭt-ĭbŭs,** *by, with,* or *from heads.*

2. Substantives the stems of which end in *i* (the *Nom.* in *e*, *al*, *ar*).

1.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	**Măr-ĕ,** *the sea.*		**Măr-ĭă,** *seas.*
Gen.	**Măr-is,** *of the sea.*		**Măr-ĭum,** *of seas.*
Dat.	**Măr-ī,** *to* or *for the sea.*		**Măr-ĭbŭs,** *to* or *for seas.*
Acc.	**Măr-ĕ,** *the sea.*		**Măr-ĭă,** *seas.*
Voc.	**Măr-ĕ,** *O sea.*	[*sea.*	**Măr-ĭă,** *O seas.*
Abl.	**Măr-ī,** *by, with,* or *from the*		**Măr-ĭbŭs,** *by, with,* or *from seas.*

2.

Nom.	**Ănĭmăl,** *an animal.*		**Ănĭmăl-ĭă,** *animals.*
Gen.	**Ănĭmăl-is,** *of an animal.*		**Ănĭmăl-ĭum,** *of animals.*
Dat.	**Ănĭmăl-ī,** *to* or *for an animal.*		**Ănĭmăl-ĭbŭs,** *to* or *for animals.*
Acc.	**Ănĭmăl,** *an animal.*		**Ănĭmăl-ĭă,** *animals.*
Voc.	**Ănĭmăl,** *O animal.*		**Ănĭmăl-ĭă,** *O animals.*
Abl.	**Ănĭmăl-ī,** *by, with,* or *from an animal.*		**Ănĭmăl-ĭbŭs,** *by, with,* or *from animals.*

* *O* in the increment of neuter nouns (of the third declension) is short.

3.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	**Calcăr,**	*a spur.*	**Calcăr-ĭă,** *spurs.*
Gen.	**Calcăr-ĭs,**	*of a spur.*	**Calcăr-ĭum,** *of spurs.*
Dat.	**Calcăr-ī,**	*to* or *for a spur.*	**Calcăr-ĭbŭs,** *to* or *for spurs.*
Acc.	**Calcăr,**	*a spur.*	**Calcăr-ĭă,** *spurs.*
Voc.	**Calcăr,**	*O spur.*	**Calcăr-ĭă,** *O spurs.*
Abl.	**Calcăr-ī,**	*by, with,* or *from a spur.*	**Calcăr-ĭbŭs,** *by, with,* or *from spurs.*

Exercise XII.

Vocabulary 12.

grāmĕn, ĭnis, *n.*	*grass.*	**ănĭmăl, ālis,** *n.*	*an animal.*
nōmĕn, ĭnis, *n.*	*a name.*	**calcăr, āris,** *n.*	*a spur.*
gĕnŭs, ĕris, *n.*	*a race, a class.*	**vectīgăl, ālis,** *n.*	*a tax.*
ŏpŭs, ĕris, *n.*	*a work.*	**annus, i,** *m.*	*a year.*
sīdŭs, ĕris, *n.*	*a star, constellation.*	**antīquus, a, um,**	*ancient.*
scĕlŭs, ĕris, *n.*	*a crime.*	**aureus, a, um,**	*golden.*
dĕcŭs, ŏris, *n.*	*an ornament.*	**bālaena, ae,** *f.*	*a whale.*
corpŭs, ŏris, *n.*	*a body.*	**Carthāgo, ĭnis,** *f.*	*Carthage (a city of Africa).*
frīgŭs, ŏris, *n.*	*cold.*	**Cĭcĕro, ōnis,** *m.*	*Cicero (a celebrated Roman orator).*
lĭtŭs, ŏris, *n.*	*a shore.*		
tempŭs, ŏris, *n.*	*time.*		
căpŭt, ĭtis, *n.*	*a head.*	**dŏmicilium, i,** *n.*	*abode.*
crūs, crūrĭs, *n.*	*a leg.*	**ĕlĕphantus, i,** *m.*	*an elephant.*
fulgŭr, ŭrĭs, *n.*	*lightning.*	**nŏvus, a, um,**	*new.*
ōs, ōrĭs, *n.*	*a mouth.*	**ŏcŭlus, i,** *m.*	*an eye.*
rētĕ, is, *n.*	*a net.*	**piscis, is,** *m.*	*a fish.*
mărĕ, is, *n.*	*the sea.*	**prŏfundus, a, um,**	*deep.*

A.—1. Nomen Carthaginis clarum erat. 2. Litora erant angusta. 3. Elephanti magna capita et parva crura habent. 4. Balaenae parva ora habent. 5. Fulgur est rapidum. 6. Opus est durum et molestum. 7. Ira causa multorum scelerum est. 8. Juno antiquis temporibus erat dea. 9. Sidera nautis grata sunt. 10. Frigus hieme est molestum.

1. The name of Cicero is renowned. 2. The works of Cicero are renowned. 3. Elephants have a strong body. 4. The legs of elephants are strong. 5. The mouths of whales are small. 6. Elephants have great heads and small eyes. 7. The crimes are known to the judge. 8. The cold is troublesome to the maiden. 9. The time of the year is pleasant. 10. The shore is wide.

B.—1. Maria sunt domicilia piscium. 2. Calcaria sunt decus equitis. 3. Litora maris sunt magna. 4. Nautae retia habent. 5. Vectigalia sunt magna. 6. Gramen animalibus gratum erat. 7. Calcaria equitis sunt nova. 8. Maria sunt

profunda. 9. Genera animalium sunt varia. 10. Equites aurea calcaria habent.

1. The sea is deep. 2. The shores of the seas are high. 3. The deep sea is the abode of fishes. 4. The nets of the sailors are golden. 5. The king gives golden nets to the sailors. 6. The spurs of the horse-soldier are golden. 7. The king gives a golden spur to the horse-soldier. 8. The animal is strong. 9. Many animals are strong. 10. The tax is troublesome.

VI.—Adjectives of the Third Declension.

1. Adjectives of Three Terminations end in *er*, *ris*, *re*, and are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension. They have three terminations only in the Nominative and Vocative Singular; as, ācĕr, ācrĭs, ācrĕ, *keen, sharp.*

	Sing.			Plur.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Ācĕr	ācrĭs	ācrĕ	Ācrēs	ācrĭă
Gen.	Ācrĭs*			Ācrĭum	
Dat.	Ācrī			Ācrĭbŭs	
Acc.	Ācrem		ācrĕ	Ācrēs	ācrĭă
Voc.	Ācĕr	ācrĭs	ācrĕ	Ācrēs	ācrĭă
Abl.	Ācrī			Ācrĭbŭs	

2. Adjectives of Two Terminations are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension; as, tristĭs, tristĕ, *sad.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Trist-ĭs	trist-ĕ	Trist-ēs	trist-ĭă
Gen.	Trist-ĭs		Trist-ĭum	
Dat.	Trist-ī		Trist-ĭbŭs	
Acc.	Trist-em	trist-ĕ	Trist-ēs	trist-ĭă
Voc.	Trist-ĭs	trist-ĕ	Trist-ēs	trist-ĭă
Abl.	Trist-ī		Trist-ĭbŭs	

3. Adjectives of One Termination are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension; as, fēlix, *fortunate;* prūdens, *prudent.*

* Where the forms are not given for feminine and neuter, they are the same as the masculine form

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	**Fēlix**		**Fēlīc-ēs**	**fēlīc-ĭă**
Gen.	**Fēlīc-ĭs**		**Fēlīc-ĭum**	
Dat.	**Fēlīc-ī**		**Fēlīc-ĭbŭs**	
Acc.	**Fēlīc-em**	**fēlix**	**Fēlīc-ēs**	**fēlīc-ĭă**
Voc.	**Fēl-ix**		**Fēlīc-ēs**	**fēlīc-ĭă**
Abl.	**Fēlīc-ī** *or* **ĕ**		**Fēlīc-ĭbŭs**	

2.

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	**Prūdens**		**Prūdent-ēs**	**prūdent-ĭă**
Gen.	**Prūdent-ĭs**		**Prūdent-ĭum**	
Dat.	**Prūdent-ī**		**Prūdent-ĭbŭs**	
Acc.	**Prūdent-em**	**prūdens**	**Prūdent-ēs**	**prūdent-ĭă**
Voc.	**Prūdens**		**Prūdent-ēs**	**prūdent-ĭă**
Abl.	**Prūdent-ī** *or* **ĕ**		**Prūdent-ĭbŭs**	

Vocabulary 13.

ācer, ācris, ācre,	*keen, sharp.*	**praestans, antis,**	*excellent.*
cĕler, ĕris, ĕre,	*swift.*	**pŏtens, entis,**	*powerful.*
brĕvis, e,	*short.*	**prūdens, entis,**	*prudent.*
dulcis, e,	*sweet.*	**arma, orum,** *n. pl.*	*arms.*
difficĭlis, e,	*difficult.*	**carmĕn, ĭnis,** *n.*	*a song.*
făcĭlis, e,	*easy.*	**consilium, i,** *n.*	*plan, counsel.*
fīdēlis, e,	*faithful.*	**fŭror, ōris,** *m.*	*madness.*
lĕvis, e,	*light.*	**hūmānus, a, um,**	*human.*
omnis, e,	*all, every.*	**ĭnĭtium, i,** *n.*	*a beginning.*
ūtilis, e,	*useful.*	**īra, ae,** *f.*	*anger.*
audax, ācis,	*bold.*	**nāvis, is,** *f.*	*a ship.*
răpax, ācis,	*rapacious.*	**Persa, ae,** *m.*	*a Persian.*
fēlix, īcis,	*fortunate, successful.*	**sāgitta, ae,** *f.*	*an arrow.*
		via, ae, *f.*	*a way.*
vēlox, ōcis,	*swift.*	**vĕtus, vĕtĕris,**	*old.*
ingens, entis,	*immense.*	**vīnum, i,** *n.*	*wine.*
praesens, entis,	*present.*	**vulnŭs, ĕris,** *n.*	*a wound.*

Exercise XIII.

A.—1. Ira furor brevis est. 2. Ira militum erat acris. 3. Via est facilis. 4. Omne initium est difficile. 5. Leges hominibus utiles sunt. 6. Vulnus militis est leve. 7. Carmen est dulce. 8. Naves hostium sunt celeres. 9. Tempus humanae vitae breve est. 10. Rex cives fideles habet.

1. The soldiers have sharp arms. 2. The arrow is swift. 3. Labor is easy in the winter. 4. Labor is difficult in the summer. 5. Arms are useful to soldiers. 6. The soldiers have short swords. 7. The beginning of the song is difficult. 8. The songs are easy. 9. The wounds of the soldier are light. 10. The arrows are sharp and swift.

B.—1. Consilium ducis audax est. 2. Consilia ducis Romani audacia sunt. 3. Tempus praesens felix est. 4. Regnum Persarum erat potens. 5. Animalia rapacia sunt velocia. 6. Vetus vinum est bonum. 7. Rex ingentem numerum militum habet. 8. Leges Romanorum erant praestantes. 9. Praemia equitum ingentia erant. 10. Agricolae vinum vetus habent.

1. The plans of the leader were prudent. 2. Elephants are prudent animals. 3. The booty of the Romans was immense. 4. The beginning was fortunate. 5. The Romans have excellent laws. 6. The king gives immense rewards to the soldiers. 7. Lions are rapacious animals. 8. The father gives old wine to the boy. 9. The present times are fortunate. 10. The Romans are powerful.

VII.—The Fourth Declension.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Substantives of the Fourth Declension ends in **ŭs**, and of Neuter Nouns in **ū**. The Genitive Singular ends in **ūs**.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Grăd-ŭs** (*m.*),	*a step.*	**Grăd-ūs,**	*steps.*
Gen.	**Grăd-ūs**	*of a step.*	**Grăd-ŭum,**	*of steps.*
Dat.	**Grăd-ŭī,**	*to* or *for a step.*	**Grăd-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for steps.*
Acc.	**Grăd-um,**	*a step.*	**Grăd-ūs,**	*steps.*
Voc.	**Grăd-ŭs**	*O step.* [*a step.*	**Grăd-ūs,**	*O steps.*
Abl.	**Grăd-ū,**	*by, with,* or *from*	**Grăd-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from steps.*

2.

Nom.	**Gĕn-ū,**	*a knee.*	**Gĕn-ŭă,**	*knees.*
Gen.	**Gĕn-ūs,**	*of a knee.*	**Gĕn-ŭum,**	*of knees.*
Dat.	**Gĕn-ū,**	*to* or *for a knee.*	**Gĕn-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for knees.*
Acc.	**Gĕn-ū,**	*a knee.*	**Gĕn-ŭă,**	*knees.*
Voc.	**Gĕn-u,**	*O knee.* [*knee.*	**Gĕn-ŭă,**	*O knees.*
Abl.	**Gĕn-ū,**	*by, with,* or *from a*	**Gĕn-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from knees.*

Vocabulary 14.

acŭs, ūs, *f.*	*a needle.*	**fructus, us,** *m.*	*fruit.*
arcŭs, ūs, *m.*	*a bow.*	**măgistrātus, us,** *m.*	*a magistrate.*
auditus, ūs, *m.*	*hearing.*	**mănus, us,** *f.*	*a hand.*
cursus, ūs, *m.*	*running.*	**pĕdĭtātus, us,** *m.*	*infantry.*
ĕquĭtātus, ūs, *m.*	*cavalry.*	**portus, us,** *m.*	*a harbor.*
exercĭtus, us, *m.*	*an army.*	**quercus, us,** *f.*	*an oak.*
fĭcus, us, *f.*	*a fig, fig-tree.*	**sensus, us,** *m.*	*a sense.*

vīsus, us, *m.*	*seeing.*	**cervus, i,** *m.*	*a stag.*
cornu, ūs, *n.*	*a horn.*	**instrūmentum, i,** *n.*	*an instrument.*
gĕnu, ūs, *n.*	*a knee.*	**magnĭfĭcus, a, um,**	*magnificent.*
auris, is, *f.*	*an ear.*	**tūtus, a, um,**	*safe.*
coelestis, e,	*belonging to the heavens; of heaven;* hence	**Scȳtha, ae,** *m.*	*a Scythian.*
		sēdes, is, *f.*	*a seat.*
		taurus, i, *m.*	*a bull.*
arcus coelestis,	*the rainbow.*	**vŏluptas, tātis,** *f.*	*pleasure.*

Exercise XIV.

A.—1. Quercus sunt altae. 2. Manus hominibus utiles sunt. 3. Visus et auditus sunt utiles hominibus. 4. Acus est acuta. 5. Portus est tutus. 6. Cursus militis erat celer. 7. Arcus Scytharum leves erant. 8. Arcus coelestis varios colores habet. 9. Fructus ficūs erat dulcis. 10. Caput est sedes omnium sensuum.

1. The oak is useful to man. 2. The city has beautiful harbors. 3. The Scythians have arrows and bows. 4. The needles are sharp. 5. The girl has a sharp needle. 6. The harbors of the city are safe. 7. The number of the harbors is great. 8. Hearing and seeing are useful (*pl.*) to animals. 9. The fruit of fig-trees is sweet. 10. The soldier kills the lion with (his) hand.

Quĕ, *and* (placed after the word which it unites to the preceding).

B.—1. Cornua tauri acuta sunt. 2. Magister cornu puero dat. 3. Genua hominibus utilia sunt. 4. Magistratus sunt legum ministri. 5. Exercitus arma magnifica habet. 6. Duces exercitūs audaces erant. 7. Rex equitatum peditatumque habet. 8. Voluptas sensibus grata est. 9. Oculi sunt instrumenta visūs. 10. Aures sunt instrumenta auditūs.

1. The knees of elephants are hard. 2. The horns of the stag are hard. 3. The king gives a beautiful horn to the soldier. 4. The magistrates are the guardians of the laws. 5. The leader of the cavalry is bold. 6. Greece has many harbors. 7. Every animal has senses. 8. Eyes and ears are the instruments of the senses. 9. Sharp needles are useful to women. 10. The leaders of the infantry are powerful.

VIII.—The Fifth Declension.

The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the Fifth Declension ends in **ēs** and the Genitive in **ēi.**

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Dĭ-ēs,	*a day.*	Dĭ-ēs, *days.*
Gen.	Dĭ-ēī,	*of a day.*	Dĭ-ērum, *of days.*
Dat.	Dĭ-ēī,	*to* or *for a day.*	Dĭ-ēbŭs, *to* or *for days.*
Acc.	Dĭ-em,	*a day.*	Dĭ-ēs, *days.*
Voc.	Dĭ-ēs,	*O day.*	Dĭ-ēs, *O days.*
Abl.	Dĭ-ē,	*by, with,* or *from a day.*	Dĭ-ēbŭs, *by, with,* or *from days.*

All Substantives of the Fifth Declension are Feminine except *dies*, which is either Masculine or Feminine in the Singular, but always Masculine in the Plural.

The *e* in the Genitive and Dative Singular of the Fifth Declension is long before *i*, except in *res*, *spes*, and *fides*; see p. 156.

RULE 8.—When the Ablative Case indicates the place *where*, it is used with the Preposition ĭn, *in*; as, hostes in plānĭtiē ĕrant, *the enemies were in the plain.* See Rule 7, p. 14.

VOCABULARY 15.

ăcies, ēi, *f.*	*a line of battle.*	**spēs, ĕi,** *f.*	*hope.*
diēs, ēi, *m.* and *f.*	*day.*	**creātŏr, ōris,** *m.*	*creator.*
făcies, ēi, *f.*	*countenance.*	**Deus, i,** *m.*	*God, a god.*
fĭdes, ēi, *f.*	*faith, fidelity.*	**domĭna, ae,** *f.*	*mistress.*
plānĭtiēs, ēi, *f.*	*a plain.*	**rārus, a, um,**	*rare.*
res, rēi, *f.*	*a thing.*	**sērēnus, a, um,**	*clear.*
segnĭtiēs, ēi, *f.*	*slothfulness.*	**victōria, ae,** *f.*	*victory.*

EXERCISE XV.

1. Dies sunt sereni. 2. Numerus dierum serenorum parvus est. 3. Deus* est dominus omnium rerum. 4. Dux magnam victoriae spem habet. 5. Fides servorum rara erat. 6. Exercitus in magna planitie erat. 7. In acie multi pedites erant. 8. Fortuna est domina rerum humanarum. 9. Facies filii pulchra erat. 10. Magna est pueri segnities.

1. The number of days is infinite. 2. God is the creator of all things. 3. Many things are hurtful to man. 4. The mother gives many things to the girl. 5. In the line-of-battle were many horse-soldiers. 6. The cavalry was in the plain. 7. The reward was the beginning of hope. 8. The leaders have great hope of victory. 9. The fidelity of sons was rare. 10. The slothfulness of the girl is troublesome to the mother.

* For declension of *Deus*, see next page.

IX.—Some Irregular Substantives.

The following words are thus declined:

Dĕŭs, *God* (2 Decl.).

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	**Deŭs**	**Deī, Diī,** *or* **Dī**
Gen.	**Deī**	**Deōrum,** *or* **Deûm**
Dat.	**Deō**	**Deīs, Diīs,** *or* **Dīs**
Acc.	**Deum**	**Deōs**
Voc.	**Deŭs**	**Deī, Diī,** *or* **Dī**
Abl.	**Deō**	**Deīs, Diīs,** *or* **Dīs**

Dŏmŭs, *f. a house* (2 and 4 Decl.)

Sing.	Plur.
Dŏmŭs	**Dŏmūs**
Dŏmūs	**Dŏmŭum,** *or* **dŏmōrum**
Dŏmūī	**Dŏmĭbŭs**
Dŏmum	**Dŏmōs** (*rarely* **dŏmūs**)
Dŏmūs	**Dŏmūs**
Dŏmō	**Dŏmĭbŭs**

N.B.—The form *domi* is used only in the sense of *at home*, and is probably a Dative.

Bōs, *an ox* or *cow*.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	**Bōs**	**Bŏvēs**
Gen.	**Bŏvĭs**	(**Bŏvum**) *or* **bŏum**
Dat.	**Bŏvī**	**Bōbŭs,** *or* **būbŭs**
Acc.	**Bŏvem**	**Bŏvēs**
Voc.	**Bōs**	**Bŏvēs**
Abl.	**Bŏvĕ**	**Bōbŭs,** *or* **būbŭs**

Sĕnex, *an old man*.

Sing.	Plur.
Sĕnex	**Sĕnēs**
Sĕnĭs	**Sĕnum**
Sĕnī	**Sĕnĭbŭs**
Sĕnem	**Sĕnēs**
Sĕnex	**Sĕnēs**
Sĕnĕ	**Sĕnĭbŭs**

Vīs, *f. strength* (3 Decl.).

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	**Vīs**	**Vīrēs**
Gen.	wanting	**Vīrĭum**
Dat.	wanting	**Vīrĭbŭs**
Acc.	**Vim**	**Vīrēs**
Voc.	wanting	**Vīrēs**
Abl.	**Vī**	**Vīrĭbŭs**

Jūpĭtĕr (=Jŏv-pĭtĕr, *i.e.* pătĕr), (3 Decl.), (*the god*) *Jupiter*.

Jūpĭtĕr
Jŏvĭs
Jŏvī
Jŏvem
Jūpĭtĕr
Jŏvĕ

Jusjūrandum, *n. an oath* (properly two words, Jus, 3 Decl., and jurandum, 2 Decl.).

Sing.
Nom. **Jusjūrandum**
Gen. **Jūrisjūrandi**
Dat. **Jurījūrandō**
Acc. **Jusjūrandum**
Voc. **Jusjūrandum**
Abl. **Jūrējūrando**

Respublĭca, *f. a commonwealth, a republic* (properly two words, Res, 5 Decl., and publĭca, 1 Decl.).

Sing.
Nom. **Respublĭcă**
Gen. **Rēīpublĭcae**
Dat. **Rēīpublĭcae**
Acc. **Rempublĭcam**
Voc. **Respublĭcă**
Abl. **Rēpublĭcā**

Vocabulary 16.

arbor, ŏris, *f.*	*a tree.*
bestia, ae, *f.*	*a beast.*
cănis, is, *c.*	*a dog.*
conscientia, ae, *f.*	*conscience.*
dēbĭlis, e,	*feeble.*
dīvĭtiae, arum, *f.* (only pl.)	*riches.*
flūmĕn, ĭnis, *n.*	*a current, river.*
fortis, e,	*strong, brave.*
fulmĕn, ĭnis, *n.*	*a thunderbolt.*

fūnŭs, ĕris, *n.*	*a funeral.*	**mortālis, e,**	*mortal.*
grāmĕn, ĭnis, *n.*	*grass.*	**Neptūnus, i,** *m.*	*Neptune.*
immortālis, e,	*immortal.*	**paucus, a, um,**	*few.*
jŭvĕnis, is, *c.*	*a young man or woman.*	**plēnus, a, um** (with gen.),	*full.*
mŏnŭmentum, i, *n.*	*a monument.*	**silva, ae,** *f.*	*a wood.*

Exercise XVI.

A.—1. Di sunt immortales. 2. Jupiter et Neptūnus sunt dii Romanorum. 3. Quercus Jovi sacrae erant. 4. Domus urbis sunt pulchrae. 5. Divitiae magnae in domo patris sunt. 6. Divitiae ingentes in domibus incolarum sunt. 7. Canes domuum custodes sunt. 8. Homines in domibus sunt, bestiae in silvis. 9. Dis sacrum est monumentum. 10. Vis fluminis ingens est.

1. Men are mortal, the gods immortal. 2. The oak is sacred to Jupiter. 3. Thunderbolts are the arms of Jupiter. 4. Many trees are sacred to the gods. 5. The number of the gods in ancient times was immense. 6. The number of the houses is immense. 7. (There) were immense riches in the houses of the citizens. 8. The monuments are sacred to the gods. 9. Jupiter has many temples in Italy. 10. Oxen have great strength (pl.).

B.—1. Senex est debilis et aeger. 2. Funera senum et juvenum sunt multa. 3. Nomen Ciceronis senibus notum est. 4. Boves magnas vires habent. 5. Magna est vis conscientiae. 6. Civis jusjurandum judici dat.* 7. In republica Romana sunt multi servi. 8. Respublica Romanorum potens erat. 9. Cornua bovis dura sunt. 10. Boves et equi in agro sunt.

1. The strength (pl.) of oxen is immense. 2. The king gives many oxen to the soldiers. 3. The old men are feeble and sick. 4. The old man gives gold and silver to the young man. 5. The house of the old man is full of riches. 6. Gold and silver are in the houses of the citizens. 7. In the Roman commonwealth were many brave citizens. 8. The friends of the commonwealth were few. 9. The grass is pleasing to the oxen. 10. The fields are sacred to Jupiter.

* Jusjurandum dat, in English, *takes the oath.*

X.—Some Greek Nouns.

1. Greek Nouns of the First Declension end in **as**, **es**, masculine, and **e** feminine, and differ only in the Singular number from Latin nouns; they are chiefly Proper Names.

Nom.	Ænē-as,	*Æneas.*	Anchīs-es,	*Anchises.*
Gen.	Ænē-æ,	*of Æneas.*	Anchīs-æ,	*of Anchises.*
Dat.	Ænē-æ,	*to* or *for Æneas.*	Anchīs-æ,	*to* or *for Anchises.*
Acc.	Ænē-am or Ænē-ān,	*Æneas.*	Anchīs-ēn,	*Anchises.*
Voc.	Ænē-ā,	*O Æneas.*	Anchīs-ē *or* ă,	*O Anchises.*
Abl.	Ænē-ā,	*by, with,* or *from Æneas.*	Anchīs-ē *or* ă,	*by, with,* or *from Anchises.*

Remark.—The Vocative in *a* of Greek Nouns in *as* is long.

Note.—More minute variations in the forms of the cases, and the other forms not given here, are not required until the student enters upon his more advanced grammar.

2. Greek Nouns of the Second Declension end in **os**, masculine or feminine, and **on** neuter.

Nom.	Dēl-ŏs,	*Delos.*	Īli-ŏn,	*Ilium.*
Gen.	Dēl-i,	*of Delos.*	Īli-ī,	*of Ilium.*
Dat.	Dēl-ō,	*to* or *for Delos.*	Īli-ō,	*to* or *for Ilium.*
Acc.	Dēl-ŏn,	*Delos.*	Īli-ŏn,	*Ilium.*
Voc.	Dēl-ĕ,	*O Delos.*	Īli-ŏn,	*O Ilium.*
Abl.	Dēl-ō,	*by, with,* or *from Delos.*	Īli-ō,	*by, with,* or *from Ilium.*

Proper names in **eus** are sometimes of the Second, sometimes of the Third Declension; thus:

	Second Declension.		Third Declension.	
Nom.	Orph-ēūs	Orph-ēūs,	*Orpheus.*
Gen.	Orph-ĕī	Orph-ĕōs,	*of Orpheus.*
Dat.	Orph-ĕō	Orph-ĕī *or* ēī,	*to* or *for Orpheus.*
Acc.	Orph-ĕum	Orph-ĕă,	*Orpheus.*
Voc.	———	Orph-ēū,	*O Orpheus.*
Abl.	Orph-ĕō	———,	*by, with,* or *from Orpheus.*

3. The principal variations in form of Greek Nouns of the Third Declension (besides those in *eus*) consist in forming the Genitive Singular in *os* for *is;* as, *Daphnis*, genitive *Daphnidos:* the Accusative Singular in *ă* for *em;* as, *heros*, accusative *herōă:* the Vocative in *ĭ* for *ĭs;* as, *Daphnis*, vocative *Daphnĭ:* and the Accusative Plural in *ăs* for *ēs;* as, *herōăs.*

Pericles is thus declined:

Nom.	**Pericles,**	*Pericles.*
Gen.	**Periclis** *and* **i,**	*of Pericles.*
Dat.	**Pericli**	*to* or *for Pericles.*
Acc.	**Periclĕă** *and* **em,**	*Pericles.*
Voc.	**Periclē** *and* **es,**	*O Pericles.*
Abl.	**Pericle,**	*by, with,* or *from Pericles.*

XI.—Some Irregular Adjectives.

The following words have in the Genitive Singular **ĭŭs** (rarely **ĭŭs**), and in the Dative **i**:

ūnus, a, um, *one.*	**neuter, neutra, neutrum,** *neither of two.*
sōlus, a, um, *alone.*	**alter, altĕra, altĕrum,** *one of two, the one, the other.*
tōtus, a, um, *whole.*	**ălĭus, ălĭa, ălĭŭd,** *one of any number, one, another.*
ullus, a, um, *any.*	
nullus, a, um, *none.*	
ŭter, utra, utrum, *which of two.*	

For example:

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**Ūn-us**	**ūn-a**	**ūn-um***	**Ŭt-er**	**utr-a**	**utr-um**
Gen.	**Ūn-ĭus**			**Utr-ĭus**		
Dat.	**Ūn-i**			**Utr-i**		
Acc.	**Ūn-um**	**ūn-am**	**un-um**	**Utr-um**	**utr-am**	**utr-um**
Abl.	**Ūn-ō**	**ūn-ā**	**ūn-ō**	**Utr-ō**	**utr-ā**	**utr-ō**

The Genitive Singular of **alter** is ***altĕrĭus***, and of **ălĭus** is ***dlĭus***.

Vocabulary 17.

Æněas, ae, *m.* *Æneas.*	**ĭnĭmīcus, a, um,** *unfriendly.*
Anchīses, ae, *m.* *Anchises.*	**laus, laudis,** *f.* *praise.*
cīvĭtas, ātis, *f.* *state, citizenship.*	**mĕmŏrābĭlis, e,** *to be remembered, memorable.*
culpa, ae, *f.* *blame, fault.*	**Pericles, is,** *Pericles.*
Graecus, a, um, *Greek, Grecian.*	**vērus, a, um,** *true.*
hŏnŏr, ōris, *m.* *an honor.*	**virtus, ūtis,** *f.* *valor, virtue.*
indoctus, a, um, *unlearned.*	

Exercise XVII.

1. Virtus sola veram dat voluptatem. 2. Cives Ciceroni uni dant honorem. 3. Utri dat civitas laudem? Neutri. 4. Alii sunt docti, alii indocti. 5. Alĭus vires, alĭus divitiae sunt magnae. 6. Alter est Graecus, alter Romanus. 7. Tota Cic-

* The Plural of *unus* is regular, but seldom used, only with nouns which have no singular, or have a different signification in singular and plural.

eronis vita memorabilis erat. 8. Alteri laudem, alteri cupam dant. 9. Ciceroni totam dat laudem. 10. Neutra civitas habet laudem ullam. 11. Ænēas nautis praemium dat. 12. Orpheus Musae filius erat.

1. He gives the whole booty to the soldiers. 2. Cicero alone was pleasing to the citizens. 3. He was troublesome to neither. 4. To which of the two does he give the praise? 5. Neither of the men has any abode. 6. Virtue alone gives true honors. 7. Life is troublesome to no good man. 8. Rome alone was head of (all) cities. 9. He was unfriendly to neither. 10. The one was pleasing to the citizens, the other was troublesome. 11. O Æneas, son of Anchises, the Greeks are unfriendly to Ilium. 12. Pericles has the praise of valor.

XII.—Comparison of Adjectives.

Adjectives have three forms, which are usually called the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative Degrees; as,

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
altus, *high.*	altĭŏr, *higher.*	altissĭmus, *highest, very high.*

The Comparative is formed by adding *ior* and the Superlative by adding *issĭmus* to the Positive, after taking away the termination of the Genitive Singular; as,

Nom.	*Gen.*			
altus,	alt-i,	*high,*	alt-ior,	alt-issĭmus,
lĕvis,	lĕv-is,	*light,*	lĕv-ior,	lĕv-issĭmus,
fēlix,	fēlīc-is,	*fortunate,*	fēlīc-ior,	fēlīc-issĭmus,
prūdens,	prūdent-is,	*prudent,*	prūdent-ior,	prūdent-issĭmus.

The Comparative is declined as follows:

	Sing.		Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Altĭor	altĭus	Altiōr-ēs	altiōr-ă
Gen.	Altiōr-is		Altiōr-um	
Dat.	Altiōr-i		Altiōr-ĭbus	
Acc.	Altiōr-em	altĭus	Altiōr-ēs	altiōr-ă
Voc.	Altĭor	altĭus	Altiōr-ēs	altiōr-ă
Abl.	Altior-ĕ, *rarely* -ī		Altiōr-ĭbus	

The Superlative is declined like bŏnus, bŏna, bŏnum.

Exceptions.

I. Adjectives ending in *er* form the Superlative in *rĭmus*; as,

Posit.		*Comp.*	*Sup.*
pulcher,	*beautiful,*	pulchr-ior,	pulcher-rĭmus.
lĭber,	*free,*	lĭbĕr-ior,	lĭber-rĭmus.
ācer,	*sharp,*	ācr-ior,	ācer-rĭmus.
cĕler,	*swift.*	cĕlĕr-ior,	cĕler-rĭmus.

Also vĕtus (*Gen.* vĕtĕr-is), *old,* has a Superlative, vĕter-rĭmus.

II. The following six Adjectives ending in *ilis* form their Superlative in *limus*; as,

făcĭlis,	*easy,*	făcĭl-ior,	făcil-lĭmus.
difficĭlis,	*difficult,*	difficĭl-ior,	difficil-lĭmus.
sĭmĭlis	*like,*	sĭmĭl-ior,	sĭmil-lĭmus.
dissĭmĭlis,	*unlike,*	dissĭmĭl-ior,	dissĭmil-lĭmus.
grăcilis,	*thin,*	grăcĭl-ior,	grăcil-lĭmus.
hŭmĭlis,	*low,*	hŭmĭl-ior,	hŭmil-lĭmus.

Irregular Comparison.

bŏnus,	*good,*	mĕlior,	optĭmus.
mălus,	*bad,*	pējor,	pessĭmus.
magnus,	*great,*	mājor,	maxĭmus.
parvus,	*small,*	mĭnor,	mĭnĭmus.
multus,	*much,*	plūs,	plūrĭmus.
nēquam,	*worthless,*	nēquior,	nēquissĭmus.

Rule 9.—The English word *than* after the Comparative is translated by the Latin quam (indeclinable).

Vocabulary 18.

ădūlātio, onis, *f.*	*flattery.*	**lēpus, ŏris,** *m.*	*a hare.*
ămābĭlis, e,	*lovely.*	**lūna, ae,** *f.*	*the moon.*
ămŏr, ōris, *m.*	*love.*	**lux, lūcis,** *f.*	*light.*
asper, ĕra, ĕrum,	*rough, rugged.*	**meus,* a, um,**	*my, mine.*
Cătо, ōnis, *m.*	*Cato.*	**mons, montis,** *m.*	*mountain.*
dulcis, e,	*sweet, delightful.*	**nihil,** *indecl. n.*	*nothing.*
ferrum, i, *n.*	*iron.*	**nōn,** *adv.*	*not.*
Helvetia, ae, *f.*	*the country of the Helvetii.*	**ŏdium, ii,** *n.*	*hatred.*
hībernus, a, um,	*of winter, wintry.*	**pernĭcĭōsus, a, um,**	*destructive.*
ĭmāgo, ĭnis, *f.*	*likeness, image, portrait.*	**quam,** *conj.* and *adv.*	*than, as.*
		rādix, ĭcis, *f.*	*root.*
improbus, a, um,	*dishonest, wicked.*	**săpientia, ae,** *f.*	*wisdom.*
ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, *n.*	*journey.*	**semper,** *adv.*	*always.*
		sĭmŭlātio, ōnis, *f.*	*pretense.*

* The Vocative Singular Masculine of *meus* is *mi*.

sŏnĭtus, ūs, *m.*	*sound.*	suus, a, um,	*his, her, its, their own.*
spērātus, a, um,	*hoped for.*	tuus, a, um,	*thy, thine.*
suāvis, e,	*sweet, delightful.*	vēr, vēris, *n.*	*spring.*
tranquillus, a, um,	*calm.*	vultur, ŭris, *m.*	*vulture.*

The Superlative must often be translated by *very*.

Exercise XVIII.

A.—1. Aestate dies longiores sunt quam noctes. 2. Tempore hiberno dies sunt breviores. 3. Lepores timidiores sunt quam canes. 4. Noctes brevissimae sunt aestate. 5. Roma clarissima urbs Italiae erat. 6. Ferrum utilissimum est metallorum. 7. Radices arborum longissimae sunt. 8. Nihil est amabilius quam virtus. 9. Lux est velocior quam sonitus. 10. Nihil in amicitia perniciosius est quam adulatio.

1. Men are stronger than women. 2. Iron is more useful than gold. 3. The hare is a very timid animal. 4. Nothing is more excellent than virtue. 5. The roots of oak-trees are very strong and very long. 6. The Rhine is a very rapid river. 7. The eyes of the eagle are very keen. 8. The days are calmer in summer than in winter. 9. In winter time the light is feebler than in summer. 10. Nothing is more destructive to friendship than flattery.

B.—1. In bello miserrimi sunt agricolae. 2. Filiae matri sunt simillimae. 3. Itinera antiquis temporibus difficillima erant. 4. Pulcherrima est imago regis. 5. Facillimi erant labores militum. 6. Pulcherrima animalia non semper sunt utilissima. 7. Veterrima vina non semper sunt dulcissima. 8. Vultures acerrimos habent oculos. 9. Pulcherrimi sunt colores florum. 10. In Helvetia sunt asperrimi montes.

1. The scent of flowers is very sweet. 2. The work is very difficult. 3. The journey was very long and very rough. 4. The eyes of the vulture are very keen. 5. Helvetia is a very rugged land. 6. The swiftest animals are not always the strongest. 7. The legs of the stag are very slender. 8. The son was very like (his) father (*Dat.*). 9. War is the cause of many crimes. 10. In summer the sun is more powerful than in winter.

C.—1. Nihil est melius quam sapientia. 2. Sol major est quam terra. 3. Luna minor est quam terra. 4. Plurima et maxima animalia sunt in mari. 5. Optimae erant leges Ro-

manae. 6. Pessimae sunt consuetudines discipulorum. 7. Melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria. 8. Simulatio amoris est pejor quam odium. 9. Cato optimus erat suae aetatis orator. 10. Aquilae vis maxima est.

1. Hatred is better than flattery. 2. Very many men give the greatest praise to Cato. 3. The best orator is not always the best citizen. 4. The most wicked men slay the most excellent (men). 5. No state was more renowned than Rome. 6. The best men are not always the most powerful. 7. They give the honor to the most excellent citizens. 8. Very many islands are larger than Sicily. 9. Sicily is a smaller island than Britain. 10. The Greeks were more learned than the Romans.

XIII.—The Numerals.

Cardinal Numerals denote number simply or absolutely; as, ūnŭs, *one;* dŭo, *two;* trēs, *three.*

The declension of ūnŭs is given on p. 29.

Dŭo, trēs, and millĭă, *thousands*, are declined as follows:

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	N.
Nom.	Du-o	du-ae	du-o	Tres	tria	Millĭă
Gen.	Du-ōrum	du-ārum	du-ōrum	Trium	—	Millium
Dat.	Du-ōbus	du-ābus	du-ōbus	Tribus	—	Millibus
Acc.	Du-ōs	du-ās	du-o	Trēs *or* trīs	tria	Millĭă
Abl.	Du-ōbus	du-ābus	du-ōbus	Tribus	—	Millibus

Millĕ in the singular is indeclinable; but it is usually an indeclinable adjective, as *mille homines, mille hominum.*

Millia (in pl.) is always a substantive, and is, of course, followed by the Genitive; as, *duo millia hominum*—never *homines.*

The Cardinal Numerals from quattuŏr, *four*, to centum, *a hundred*, are indeclinable.

Dŭcentī, ae, ă, *two hundred*, and the following hundreds, are declined regularly.

Ordinal Numerals denote numbers regarded as forming parts of a series; as, prīmus, *first;* sĕcundus, or altĕr, *second.* They are declined regularly as adjectives.

Arabic Symbols.	Roman Symbols.	Cardinals.	Ordinals.
1	I	ūnus	prīmus.
2	II	duo	sĕcundus *or* altĕr.
3	III	trēs	tertĭus.
4	IV	quattuŏr	quartus.
5	V	quinque	quintus.
6	VI	sex	sextus.
7	VII	septem	septĭmus.
8	VIII	octo	octāvus.
9	IX	nŏvem	nōnus.
10	X	dĕcem	dĕcĭmus.
11	XI	undĕcim	undĕcĭmus.
12	XII	duŏdĕcim	duŏdĕcĭmus.
13	XIII	trĕdĕcim	tertĭus dĕcĭmus.
14	XIV	quattuordĕcim	quartus dĕcĭmus.
15	XV	quindĕcim	quintus dĕcĭmus.
16	XVI	sēdĕcim	sextus dĕcĭmus.
17	XVII	septemdĕcim	septĭmus dĕcĭmus.
18	XVIII	duŏdēvīgintī	duŏdēvīcēsĭmus.
19	XIX	undēvīgintī	undēvīcēsĭmus.
20	XX	vīgintī	vīcēsĭmus.
21	XXI	ūnus et vīgintī *or* vīgintī ūnus	prīmus et vīcēsĭmus, *or* vīcēsĭmus prīmus.
22	XXII	duŏ et vīgintī *or* vīgintī duo	alter et vīcēsĭmus, *or* vīcēsĭmus altĕr.
23	XXIII	trēs et vīgintī *or* vīgintī trēs	tertĭus et vīcēsĭmus, *or* vīcēsĭmus tertĭus.
28	XXVIII	duŏdētrīgintā	duŏdētrīgēsĭmus.
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētrīgēsĭmus.
30	XXX	trīgintā	trīgēsĭmus.
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsĭmus.
50	L	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsĭmus.
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsĭmus.
70	LXX	septŭāgintā	septuāgēsĭmus.
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsĭmus.
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsĭmus.
100	C	centum	centēsĭmus.
200	CC	dŭcentī (ae, ă)	ducentēsĭmus.
300	CCC	trĕcentī	trĕcentēsĭmus.
400	CCCC	quadringentī	quadringentēsĭmus.
500	D *or* IↃ	quingentī	quingentēsĭmus.
600	DC	sexcentī	sexcentēsĭmus.
700	DCC	septingentī	septingentēsĭmus.
800	DCCC	octingentī	octingentēsĭmus.
900	DCCCC	nongentī	nongentēsĭmus.
1000	M *or* CIↃ	millĕ	millēsĭmus.
2000	MM	duŏ millĭa	bis millēsĭmus.
100,000	CCCIↃↃ	centum millĭa	centiēs millēsĭmus.

VOCABULARY 19.

Ălexander, dri, *m.*	*Alexander, king of Macedonia.*	**mālum, i,** *n.*	*an apple.*
Augustus,* i, *m.*	*Augustus, the first emperor of Rome.*	**mănĭpŭlus, i,** *m.*	*a maniple.*
centŭria, ae, *f.*	*a century (of soldiers).*	**mensis, is,** *m.*	*a month.*
cĕrăsus, i, *f.*	*a cherry-tree.*	**mītis, e,**	*mild.*
cĕrăsum, i, *n.*	*a cherry.*	**ŏs, ossis,** *n.*	*a bone.*
cōhors, tis, *f.*	*a cohort.*	**pars, partis,** *f.*	*a part.*
consul, ŭlis, *m.*	*a consul.*	**pĭrus, i,** *f.*	*a pear-tree.*
injustus, a, um,	*unjust.*	**pĭrum, i,** *n.*	*a pear.*
lĕgio, ōnis, *f.*	*a legion.*	**prūnus, i,** *f.*	*a plum-tree.*
Măcĕdo, ŏnis, *m.*	*Macedonian.*	**prūnum, i,** *n.*	*a plum.*
mālus, i, *f.*	*an apple-tree.*	**sapiens, ntis,**	*wise, a wise man, a sage.*
		Xerxes, is, *m.*	*Xerxes, a king of Persia.*

EXERCISE XIX.

1. Homo habet unum ōs, duas aures, duos oculos. 2. Magister puero tres libros dat. 3. Sunt sedecim mala, viginti pruna, undeviginti pira, duodeviginti cerasa. 4. In capite hominis sexaginta tria sunt ossa. 5. In exercitu Alexandri Magni duodecim millia Macedonum erant. 6. Xerxes habet classem mille ducentarum navium. 7. In legione Romana erant cohortes decem, manipuli triginta, centuriae sexaginta. 8. Septem erant reges Romani: primus erat Romulus, secundus Numa Pompilius, tertius Tullus Hostilius, quartus Ancus Martius, quintus Tarquinius Priscus, sextus Servius Tullius, septimus Tarquinius Superbus. 9. Augustus octavus est anni mensis. 10. Manipulus erat tricesima pars legionis Romanae.

1. The wise (men) of Greece were seven. 2. The first king of Rome was warlike. 3. They slay the tenth part of the men. 4. In a Roman legion there were ten cohorts, thirty maniples, sixty centuries. 5. They slay ten thousand men (*Gen.*) in the war. 6. The second king of Rome was just and mild. 7. The seventh king of Rome was unjust and wicked. 8. In the first month of the year (there) are thirty-one days. 9. Rome has two consuls. 10. A Roman legion has five thousand foot-soldiers (*Gen.*), three hundred horse-soldiers.†

* The month of August, previously called Sextilis, was named after the Emperor Augustus.

† The number of soldiers in a legion varied considerably at different periods.

XIV.—The Verb **Sum**, *I am.*

Sum, fŭī, fŭtūrŭs, essĕ: *to be.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	**Sum,**	*I am.*	*Plur.*	**Sŭmŭs,**	*We are.*
	Ĕs,	*thou art.*		**Estĭs,**	*ye* or *you are*
	Est,	*he is.*		**Sunt,**	*they are.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	**Ĕram,**	*I was.*	*Plur.*	**Ĕrāmŭs,**	*We were.*
	Ĕrās,	*thou wast.*		**Ĕrātĭs,**	*ye* or *you were.*
	Ĕrăt,	*he was.*		**Ĕrant,**	*they were.*

3. Future-Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	**Ĕro,**	*I shall be.*	*Plur.*	**Ĕrĭmŭs,**	*We shall be.*
	Ĕris,	*thou wilt be.*		**Ĕrĭtĭs,**	*ye* or *you will be.*
	Ĕrĭt,	*he will be.*		**Ĕrunt,**	*they will be.*

4. Present-Perfect Tense.

Sing.	**Fuī,**	*I have been,* or *I was.*	*Plur.*	**Fuĭmŭs,**	*We have been,* or *we were.*
	Fuistī,	*thou hast been,* or *thou wast.*		**Fuistĭs,**	*ye* or *you have been,* or *ye* or *you were.*
	Fuĭt,	*he has been,* or *he was.*		**Fuērunt** or **fuērĕ,**	*they have been,* or *they were.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

Sing.	**Fuĕram,**	*I had been.*	*Plur.*	**Fuĕrāmŭs,**	*We had been.*
	Fuĕrās,	*thou hadst been.*		**Fuĕrātĭs,**	*ye* or *you had been.*
	Fuĕrăt,	*he had been.*		**Fuĕrant,**	*they had been.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

Sing.	**Fuĕro,**	*I shall have been.*	*Plur.*	**Fuĕrimus,**	*We shall have been.*
	Fuĕris,	*thou wilt have been.*		**Fuĕritĭs,**	*ye* or *you will have been.*
	Fuĕrĭt,	*he will have been.*		**Fuĕrint,**	*they will have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing.	**Ĕs,**	*Be thou.*	*Plur.*	**Estĕ,**	*Be ye* or *you.*

2. Future Tense.

Sing.	**Esto,**	*Thou shalt be.*	*Plur.*	**Estōtĕ,**	*Ye* or *you shall be.*
	Esto,	*he shall be,* or *let him be.*		**Sunto,**	*they shall be,* or *let them be.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**sim,**	*I may be.*	*P.*	**sīmŭs,**	*We may be.*
	sīs,	*thou mayst be.*		**sītis,**	*ye* or *you may be.*
	sĭt,	*he may be.*		**sint,**	*they may be.*

Obs. The first and third Person, singular and plural, of the Present-Imperfect Subjunctive are often used as Imperatives; as, sint cives justi, *let the citizens be just.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Essem** *or* **fŏrem,**	*I might be.*	*P.*	**Essēmŭs** *or* **fŏrēmŭs,**	*We might be.*
	Essēs *or* **fŏrēs,**	*thou mightst be.*		**Essētis** *or* **fŏrētis,**	*ye* or *you might be.*
	Essĕt *or* **fŏrĕt,**	*he might be.*		**Essent** *or* **fŏrent,**	*they might be.*

3. Future-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Fŭtūrŭs sim,**	*I may be about to be.*	*P.*	**Fŭtūrī sīmŭs,**	*We may be about to be.*
	Fŭtūrŭs sīs,	*thou mayst be about to be.*		**Fŭtūrī sītis,**	*ye* or *you may be about to be.*
	Fŭtūrŭs sĭt,	*he may be about to be.*		**Fŭtūrī sint,**	*they may be about to be.*

4. Present-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Fuĕrim,**	*I may have been.*	*P.*	**Fuĕrimŭs,**	*We may have been.*
	Fuĕrīs,	*thou mayst have been.*		**Fuĕritis,**	*ye* or *you may have been.*
	Fuĕrĭt,	*he may have been.*		**Fuĕrint,**	*they may have been.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Fuissem,**	*I might have been.*	*P.*	**Fuissēmŭs,**	*We might have been.*
	Fuissēs,	*thou mightst have been.*		**Fuissētis,**	*ye* or *you might have been.*
	Fuissĕt,	*he might have been.*		**Fuissent,**	*they might have been.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	**Essĕ,**	*to be.*
Perfect.	**Fuissĕ,**	*to have been.*
Future.	**Fŭtūrŭs essĕ,** *or* **fŏrĕ,**	*to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

Future.	**Fŭtūrŭs, -a, -um,**	*about to be.*

Subject and Predicate.

A Sentence (from the Latin Sententia, *a thought*) is the complete enunciation or expression in words of a thought, and consists of two chief parts, the *Subject* and the *Predicate.*

The Subject (from the Latin Subjectum, *placed beneath*, as the basis, as it were, of the sentence) is that of which something is asserted, which *does*, *is*, or *suffers* something. It stands in the Nominative Case, and is either a *substantive* or some *word* or *phrase used as a substantive;* as, rosa floret, *the rose blooms;* duo cadunt, *two fall;* errare humanum est, *to err is human.*

The Predicate (from the Latin Praedicatum, *asserted* of the subject) is that which is asserted of the subject, and is either a *verb*, or an *adjective*, or *substantive* combined with the verb *esse;* as, rosa *floret*, rosa *pulchra est*, rosa *flos est.*

The verb *esse*, when thus used, is called the Copula (*tie* or *bond*), because it binds, as it were, the Predicate to the Subject.

Remark.—In such sentences as Rosa flos est, *rosa* is called the Subject Nominative, and *flos* the Predicate Nominative.

Exception to Rule of Quantity (on p. 7).

Is final is long in Second Person Singular Present Indicative of the Fourth Conjugation; as, *audis*, and in *velis* (from *volo*) and compounds.

The Verb Sum.—Indicative Mood.

Vocabulary 20.

attentus, a, um,	*attentive.*	**lætus, a, um,**	*joyful.*
beātus, a, um,	*happy.*	**līber, ĕra, ĕrum,**	*free.*
cārus, a, um,	*dear.*	**mĕmor, ŏris,**	*mindful.*
contentus, a, um,	*contented.*	**noster, tra, trum,**	*our, ours.*
dīligens, ntis,	*diligent, careful.*	**nunc,** *adv.*	*now.*
dīves, ĭtis,	*rich.*	**pauper, ĕris,**	*poor.*
ignāvia, ae, *f.*	*cowardice.*	**præceptor, ōris,** *m.*	*a teacher.*
jūs, jūris, *n.*	*right, law.*	**prŏbus, a, um,**	*good, upright.*

vester, tra, trum,	*your, yours.*	**Titus, i,** *m. abbrev.* (T.)	*Titus, a common Roman forename.*
călus, ūtis, *f.*	*safety.*		
cors, sortis, *f.*	*lot.*	**tristis, e,**	*sad.*

Exercise XX.

A.—1. Sum laetus. 2. Es tristis. 3. Non diligens fuisti, Tite. 4. Probi filii gaudium patris erunt. 5. Opera tua multis hominibus erunt utilia. 6. Dux vester ero: victores erimus. 7. Si contenti eritis, pauperes non eritis. 8. Multi erunt pauperes, qui (*who*) divites fuerant. 9. Cives urbis liberae sumus. 10. Custodes miserae puellae fuistis.

1. We are joyful. 2. You are sad. 3. I am a Roman citizen. 4. The contented are always joyful; the rich are often sad. 5. If you are good, you are rich. 6. If thou wilt be diligent, thou wilt be learned. 7. The wicked man is not free. 8. They had been unlearned, now they are learned. 9. You shall be rich and free. 10. The Roman state was renowned.

Imperative Mood.

B.—1. Judex custos severus juris esto. 2. Probi este, pueri, et felices eritis. 3. Discipuli sunto attenti. 4. Judices justi sunto. 5. Reipublicae salus civibus cara esto. 6. Amici fideles sunto. 7. Reges patres patriae sunto. 8. Attenti este, discipuli. 9. Contenti estote sorte vestra. 10. Virtutis praeceptorum memores este.

1. Be diligent, scholars. 2. Praise shall be the reward of diligence. 3. Be faithful, friends. 4. The judge shall be just. 5. They are contented; they shall be rich. 6. Let there be no cause of enmity; we are faithful friends. 7. Be just, be virtuous; thou shalt be successful. 8. Be brave, soldiers! 9. Let the citizens be free, let them be happy! 10. Let the city be the booty of the soldiers.

XV.—Compounds of Sum.

Absum,	*I am absent.*
Adsum,	*I am present, stand by, side with.*
Dēsum,	*I am wanting.*
Insum,	*I am in.*
Intersum,	*I am among.*

Obsum,	*I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure.*
Praesum,	*I am before, am at the head of.*
Prōsum,	*I am serviceable, do good to.*
Subsum,	*I am under*, or *among.*
Supersum,	*I remain over, survive.*

All these compounds of Sum are followed by the Dative Case. They are conjugated like Sum, but Prōsum takes *d* before *e;* as,

INDICATIVE.

Present-Imperfect.

Sing.		*Plur.*	
	Prōsum		Prō-sŭmŭs
	Prōd-es		Prōd-estĭs
	Prōd-est.		Prō-sunt.

Past-Imperfect.	*Future-Imperfect.*
Prōd-ĕram.	Prōd-ĕro.

INFINITIVE.—*Imperfect.*

Prōd-esse.

VOCABULARY 21.

Ănĭmus, i, *m.*	*mind, the soul.*	**planta, ae,** *f.*	*sprout, plant.*
auxĭlium, i, *n.*	*help, aid.*	**proelium, i,** *n.*	*battle.*
cŭpidĭtas, ātis, *f.*	*desire, passion.*		

EXERCISE XXI.

1. Bonis hominibus non deerunt amici. 2. Cicero reipublicae profuit. 3. Legionibus Romanis duces praefuerunt fortes. 4. Alexander Magnus multis proeliis interfuit. 5. Equitum multitudo exercitui nostro proderit. 6. Miles fortis omnibus aderit periculis. 7. Variae cupiditates animo insunt. 8. Frigus multis plantis non prodest. 9. Militibus deerat animus. 10. Auxilium meum reipublicae non profuit.

1. To good men friends are not wanting. 2. Cicero was serviceable to the commonwealth. 3. A good citizen sides with his native country in the time of danger. 4. Indolence is hurtful to all men. 5. Alexander the Great survived many battles. 6. The general was among his soldiers in the battle. 7. Light is serviceable to all animals. 8. The general

is-at-the-head-of the army. 9. Anger has been hurtful to many. 10. The soul survives the body.

XVI.—The Pronouns.

I. Personal Pronouns.

1. *Pronoun of the First Person.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Ĕgŏ,**	*I.*	**Nōs,**	*we.*
Gen.	**Meī,**	*of me.*	**Nostrī** *and* **nostrum,**	*of us.*
Dat.	**Mihi,**	*to* or *for me.*	**Nōbīs,**	*to* or *for us.*
Acc.	**Mē,**	*me.*	**Nōs,**	*us.*
Abl.	**Mē,**	*by, with,* or *from me.*	**Nōbīs,**	*by, with,* or *from us.*

2. *Pronoun of the Second Person.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Tū,**	*thou.*	**Vōs,**	*ye* or *you.*
Gen.	**Tuī,**	*of thee.*	**Vestrī** *and* **vestrum,**	*of you.*
Dat.	**Tibi,**	*to* or *for thee.*	**Vōbīs,**	*to* or *for you.*
Acc.	**Tē,**	*thee.*	**Vōs,**	*you.*
Voc.	**Tū,**	*O thou.*	**Vōs,**	*O ye.*
Abl.	**Tē,**	*by, with,* or *from thee.*	**Vōbīs,**	*by, with,* or *from you.*

3. *Pronoun of the Third Person.*

For the Pronoun of the Third Person, *he, she, it,* **ĭs, eă, ĭd,** is usually employed. (See p. 44.)

II. Reflective Pronoun of the Third Person.

The Reflective Pronoun refers to the subject of the sentence, and can not therefore have a Nominative Case.

Note.—The Singular and Plural are alike in form.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Gen.	**Suī,**	*of himself, herself, itself.*	**Sui,**	*of themselves.*
Dat.	**Sibi,**	*to* or *for himself, herself, itself.*	**Sibi,**	*to* or *for themselves.*
Acc.	**Sē** *or* **sēsē,**	*himself, herself, itself.*	**Se** *or* **sese,**	*themselves.*
Abl.	**Sē** *or* **sēsē,**	*by* or *from himself, herself, itself.*	**Se** *or* **sese,**	*by, from,* or *with themselves.*

III. Possessive Pronouns.

These are formed from the First and Second Personal and the Third Reflective Pronouns, and are declined as Adjectives:

M.	F.	N.	
Meus,	mea,	meum,	*my* or *mine.*
Tuus,	tua,	tuum,	*thy* or *thine.*
Noster,	nostra,	nostrum,	*our, ours.*
Vester,	vestra,	vestrum,	*your, yours.*
Suus,	sua,	suum,	*his, her, its, their.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**Meus**	**mea**	**meum**	**Mei**	**meae**	**mea**
Gen.	**Mei**	**meae**	**mei**	**Meorum**	**mearum**	**meorum**
Dat.	**Meo**	**meae**	**meo**	**Meis**	**meis**	**meis**
Acc.	**Meum**	**meam**	**meum**	**Meos**	**meas**	**mea**
Voc.	**Mi**	**mea**	**meum**	**Mei**	**meae**	**mea**
Abl.	**Meo**	**mea**	**meo**	**Meis**	**meis**	**meis**

So, **Noster, nostra, nostrum,**
Nostri, nostrae, nostri, etc.

VOCABULARY 22.

memŏria, ae, *f. memory.* | **parens, entis,** *c. a parent.*

EXERCISE XXII.

1. Ego sum laetus, tu es tristis. 2. Pater mihi librum dat utilem. 3. In me et in te et in nobis omnibus est animus immortalis. 4. Patria mihi carior est quam vita. 5. Omnia tua consilia nobis nota sunt. 6. Parentes vobis cari sunto. 7. Memores sumus tui. 8. Amicus memor est vestri. 9. Memoria nostri nobis grata est. 10. Mihi mea vita, tibi tua (vita) cara est.

1. Thy father is dear to thee; mine to me. 2. Wisdom and counsel are wanting to you, citizens! 3. In thee is all our hope and safety. 4. Let thy native-land be ever most dear to thee. 5. Thy indolence is-in-the-way, Titus! 6. A true friend will be with thee in the time of danger. 7. The memory of our works survives us. 8. In neither battle was the general among his soldiers. 9. He was serviceable to his friends; he was hurtful to his enemies. 10. To us the victory is joyful, to you it is most sad.

IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. **Hic, haec, hoc,** *this (near me), this of mine.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**Hic**	**haec**	**hoc**	**Hī**	**hae**	**haec**
Gen.	**Hūjus**			**Hōrum**	**hārum**	**hōrum**
Dat.	**Huīc**			**His**		
Acc.	**Hunc**	**hanc**	**hoc**	**Hōs**	**hās**	**haec**
Abl.	**Hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**His**		

2. Istĕ, istă, istŭd, *that (near you), that of yours.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
Nom.	**Istĕ**	**istă**	**istŭd**	**Istī**	**istae**	**istă**
Gen.	**Istīus**			**Istōrum**	**istārum**	**istōrum**
Dat.	**Istī**			**Istīs**		
Acc.	**Istum**	**istam**	**istŭd**	**Istōs**	**istās**	**istă**
Abl.	**Istō**	**istā**	**istō**	**Istīs**		

3. Illĕ, illă, illŭd, *that near him, that yonder.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
Nom.	**Illĕ**	**illă**	**illŭd**	**Illī**	**illae**	**illă**
Gen.	**Illīus**			**Illōrum**	**illārum**	**illōrum**
Dat.	**Illī**			**Illīs**		
Acc.	**Illum**	**illam**	**illŭd**	**Illōs**	**illās**	**illă**
Abl.	**Illō**	**illā**	**illō**	**Illīs**		

VOCABULARY 23.

auctōrĭtas, ātis, *f.*	*authority.*
autem,* *conj.*	*but, however.*
carmen, ĭnis, *n.*	*song, poem.*
Dēmosthĕnes, is, *m.*	*Demosthenes, the famous Athenian orator.*
hic, haec, hoc,	*this, the latter.*
ille, illa, illud,	*that, the former.*
industrius, a, um,	*industrious, busy.*
iners, ertis,	*helpless, sluggish.*
lĭbĕri, orum, *m. (pl.)*	*children.*

EXERCISE XXIII.

1. Haec carmina suavissima sunt. 2. Hi montes altissimi sunt. 3. Liberi agricolarum illorum diligentes fuerunt. 4. Dat tibi illud carmen pulcherrimum. 5. Hic puer industrius est, ille iners. 6. Demosthenes et Cicero clarissimi oratores fuerunt; ille erat Graecus, hic autem Romanus. 7. Iste tuus amicus vir est optimus. 8. Ista vestra auctoritas est maxima. 9. Memoria harum rerum nobis jucundissima est. 10. Nomen illius poëtae clarissimum est.

---

* The proper position of *autem* is *after* the first word of the clause which it belongs to.

1. These mountains are very high and very rugged. 2. That indolence (of yours) is hurtful to you, Titus. 3. The immortal soul will survive this mortal body. 4. That one man has always been hurtful to the commonwealth. 5. The memory of that one day was to Cicero most delightful. 6. That song (of yours) is to me most pleasant. 7. This my son is careful and industrious. 8. This life (of ours) is short; but that-one (ille) is immortal. 9. Those hands of yours are always busy. 10. These citizens are serviceable to the commonwealth; those are hurtful.

V. Determinative, Relative, and Interrogative Pronouns.

1. Determinative — Is, ĕă, ĭd, *he, she, it, that*, referring to the words of a sentence.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ĭs	eă	ĭd	Ī	eae	eă
Gen.	Ējus			Eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	Eī			Īs *or* eīs		
Acc.	Eum	eam	ĭd	Eōs	eās	eă
Abl.	Eō	eā	eō	Īs *or* eīs		

2. Īdem, eădem, ĭdem, *the same.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
Nom.	Īdem	eădem	ĭdem	Īdem	eaedem	eădem
Gen.	Ējusdem			Eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	Eīdem			Īsdem *or* eisdem		
Acc.	Eundem	eandem	ĭdem	Eōsdem	eāsdem	eădem
Abl.	Eōdem	eādem	eōdem	Īsdem *or* eisdem		

3. Ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsum, *self, same.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
Nom.	Ipsĕ	ipsă	ipsum	Ipsi	ipsae	ipsă
Gen.	Ipsīus			Ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	Ipsī			Ipsīs		
Acc.	Ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	Ipsōs	ipsās	ipsă
Abl.	Ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	Ipsīs		

4. Relative—Quī, quae, quŏd, *who* or *which.* *or that*

	Sing.			Plur.		
Nom.	Quī	quae	quŏd	Quī	quae	quae
Gen.	Cūjus			Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cuī			Quĭbus		
Acc.	Quem	quam	quŏd	Quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō	Quĭbus		

5. Interrogative—Quĭs or quī, quae, quĭd or quŏd, *who? which? what?*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**Quĭs** *or* **quī**	**quae**	**quĭd**	**Quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**Cūjus**		[*or* **quŏd**	**Quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**Cuī**		[*or* **quŏd**	**Quĭbus**		
Acc.	**Quem**	**quam**	**quĭd**	**Quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**Quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**Quĭbus**		

Rule 10.—The Relative Pronoun agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case; as, Fēlix est rex/quem omnēs cīvēs laudant, *Fortunate is the king whom all citizens praise.*

Lĕgit, (*he, she, it*) *reads.* **Lĕgunt,** (*they*) *read.*

Vocabulary 24.

addictus, a, um,	*devoted.*	**Lĭvius, ii,** *m.*	*Livy, a Roman historian.*
aeternus, a, um,	*eternal.*	**luscĭnia, ae,** *f.*	*a nightingale.*
bellua, ae, *f.*	*a great beast.*	**mŭlier, ĕris,** *f.*	*woman, wife.*
Cimbri, orum, *m.*	*the Cimbrians, a formidable Celtic tribe.*	**nōn,** *adv.*	*not.*
		Sallustius, ii, *m.*	*Sallust, a Roman historian.*
cŏr, cordis, *n.*	*heart.*	**salvus, a, um,**	*safe.*
ēlĕgans, ntis,	*elegant, exquisite.*	**sanguis, ĭnis,** *m.*	*blood.*
fidēlis, e, / **fīdus, a, um,**	*faithful.*	**scriptor, ōris,** *m.*	*writer, author.*
fons, ntis, *m.*	*a fountain.*		

Exercise XXIV.

A.—1. Amicum fidum habet; ei addictus est. 2. Sallustius est elegantissimus scriptor; ille ejus libros legit. 3. Qui amico in periculis adest, is verus amicus est. 4. Ii sunt cives boni qui reipublicae prosunt. 5. Ipse labor nobis jucundus est. 6. Fons omnium voluptatum in nobis ipsis est. 7. Melior pars tui ipsius immortalis est. 8. Non minor pugna erat cum mulieribus Cimbrorum quam cum Cimbris ipsis. 9. Idem dies erit initium vitae aeternae. 10. Non omnibus hominibus eadem prosunt.

1. He has a faithful friend; he will never injure him. 2. My brother himself is a most elegant writer. 3. (He) who gives honors to the bad is hurtful to the state. 4. The wives

of the Cimbrians were themselves brave. 5. The same (things) injure some, do good to others. 6. (He) who is hurtful to the commonwealth is hurtful to himself. 7. The same (things) are not pleasing to all (men). 8. Demosthenes himself was not always pleasing to his (fellow)-citizens. 9. Cicero is a faithful friend; I am devoted to him. 10. Cicero is a most elegant writer; they read his books.

B.—1. Quis tibi hunc librum dat? 2. Quis vestrum illi pugnae interfuit? 3. Animal, quod sanguinem habet, cor habet. 4. Leges, quas Persae habent, non sunt sacrae. 5. Quae animalia sunt celerrima et rapacissima? 6. Rex ei magnum praemium dat, qui exercitui praeest. 7. Cujus vox suavior est quam (vox) lusciniae? 8. Is nobis esto carissimus, qui est optimus. 9. Iis estote amici, qui sunt optimi. 10. Is erit fortissimus, qui ipse suarum cupiditatum victor fuerit.

1. Who survived that battle? 2. What beast has greater strength (pl.) than the elephant? 3. Who of the Romans was more renowned than Cicero? 4. Who was-at-the-head-of that army? 5. Who of Roman writers is more elegant than Livy? 6. (Those)* who are most faithful to their friends, (ii) are most dear to us. 7. Cicero himself gives the greatest praise to Demosthenes. 8. (Those)* who are the most daring (ii) are not always the most excellent. 9. The children of the good are not always themselves good. 10. Danger itself is pleasing to the brave.

NOTE.—Eadem=*the same things*. The Masculine of adjectives is frequently used to denote *Persons*, the Neuter to denote *Things*: in both cases without a Substantive.

XVII.—THE VERB.

Latin Verbs have two Voices:

I. ACTIVE.
II. PASSIVE.

Verbs have four Moods:

I. The INDICATIVE MOOD.
II. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
III. The IMPERATIVE MOOD.
IV. The INFINITIVE MOOD.

* Begin with *qui*, leaving the *ii* till the second clause of the sentence.

Three other forms are derived from and partake of the signification of Verbs:

I. The PARTICIPLE, which is a Verbal Adjective.
II. The SUPINE, } which are Verbal Substantives.
III. The GERUND, }

Verbs have six TENSES, three expressing *Imperfect*, or unfinished action, and three expressing *Perfect* or finished action:

Imperfect Tenses.	*Perfect Tenses.*
1. Present.	1. Present.
2. Past.	2. Past.
3. Future.	3. Future.

Obs. The Present-Perfect has also the meaning of an Indefinite Past: thus ămāvī signifies *I loved* as well as *I have loved.*

Verbs have two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural, and three PERSONS in each Number.

Latin Verbs are arranged in four classes, called CONJUGATIONS, distinguished by the ending of the Imperfect Infinitive Active; which in,

I. The First Conjugation ends in ārĕ; { as, ămārĕ, *to love.*
II. The Second " " ērĕ; { as, mŏnērĕ, *to advise.*
III. The Third " " ĕrĕ; { as, rĕgĕrĕ, *to rule.*
IV. The Fourth " " īrĕ; { as, audīrĕ, *to hear.*

The Present-Imperfect Indicative, the Present-Perfect Indicative, the Imperfect Infinitive, and the Supine are called the *Principal Parts* of the Verb, because it is necessary to know these in order to conjugate a Verb.

XVIII.—First Conjugation.—Active Voice.

Ămo, ămāvī, ămātum, ămārĕ: *to love.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Am-o,**	*I love.*	P.	**Am-āmŭs,**	*We love.*
	Am-ās,	*thou lovest.*		**Am-ātĭs,**	*you love.*
	Am-ăt,	*he loves.*		**Am-ant,**	*they love.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Am-ābam,**	*I was loving.*	P.	**Am-ābāmŭs,**	*We were loving.*
	Am-ābās,	*thou wast loving.*		**Am-ābātis,**	*you were loving.*
	Am-ābăt,	*he was loving.*		**Am-ābant,**	*they were loving.*

3. Future-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Am-ābo,**	*I shall love.*	P.	**Am-ābĭmŭs,**	*We shall love.*
	Am-ābĭs,	*thou wilt love.*		**Am-ābĭtĭs,**	*you will love.*
	Am-ābĭt,	*he will love.*		**Am-ābunt,**	*they will love.*

4. Present-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Am-āvī,**	*I have loved,* or *I loved.*	P.	**Am-āvĭmŭs,**	*We have loved,* or *we loved.*
	Am-āvistī,	*thou hast loved,* or *thou lovedst.*		**Am-āvistĭs,**	*you have loved,* or *you loved.*
	Am-āvĭt,	*he has loved,* or *he loved.*		**Am-āvērunt** *or* **ăm-āvērĕ,**	*they have loved,* or *they loved.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Am-āvĕram,**	*I had loved.*	P.	**Am-āvĕrāmŭs,**	*We had loved.*
	Am-ā-ĕrās,	*thou hadst loved.*		**Am-āvĕrātis,**	*you had loved.*
	Am-āvĕrăt,	*he had loved.*		**Am-āvĕrant,**	*they had loved.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Am-āvĕro,**	*I shall*	P.	**Am-āvĕrimŭs,**	*We shall*
	Am-āvĕrĭs,	*thou wilt* } *have*		**Am-āvĕritĭs,**	*you will* } *have*
	Am-āvĕrĭt,	*he will* } *loved.*		**Am-āvĕrint,**	*they will* } *loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.*

Present Tense.

S.	**Amā,**	*Love thou.*	P.	**Am-ātĕ,**	*Love you.*

Future Tense.

S.	**Am-āto,** *thou shalt love.*	P.	**Am-ātōtĕ,** *you shall love.*
	Am-āto, *he shall love,* or *let him love.*		**Am-anto,** *they shall love,* or *let them love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.*

1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

S. Am-em,	*I may love.*	*P.* Am-ēmŭs,	*We may love.*
Am-ēs,	*thou mayest love.*	Am-ētĭs,	*you may love.*
Am-ĕt,	*he may love.*	Am-ent,	*they may love.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S. Am-ārem,	*I might love.*	*P.* Am-ārēmŭs,	*We might love.*
Am-ārēs,	*thou mightst love.*	Am-ārētĭs,	*you might love.*
Am-ārĕt,	*he might love.*	Am-ārent,	*they might love.*

3. Future-Imperfect Tense.

S. Am-ātūrŭs sim,	*I may be about to love.*	*P.* Am-ātūrī sīmŭs,	*We may be about to love.*
Am-ātūrŭs sīs,	*thou mayst be about to love.*	Am-ātūrī sītĭs,	*you may be about to love.*
Am-ātūrŭs sĭt,	*he may be about to love.*	Am-ātūrī sint,	*they may be about to love.*

4. Present-Perfect Tense.

S. Am-āvĕrim,	*I may have loved.*	*P.* Am-āvĕrimŭs,	*We may have loved.*
Am-āvĕrīs,	*thou mayst have loved.*	Am-āvĕrītĭs,	*you may have loved.*
Am-āvĕrĭt,	*he may have loved.*	Am-āvĕrint,	*they may have loved.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S. Am-āvissem,	*I might have loved.*	*P.* Am-āvissēmŭs,	*We might have loved.*
Am-āvissēs,	*thou mightst have loved.*	Am-āvissētĭs,	*you might have loved.*
Am-āvissĕt,	*he might have loved.*	Am-āvissent,	*they might have loved.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	Am-ārĕ,	*to love.*
Perfect.	Am-āvissĕ,	*to have loved.*
Future.	Am-ātūrum esse,	*to be about to love.*

GERUND.

Gen.	Am-andī,	*of loving.*
Dat.	Am-andō,	*for loving.*
Acc.	Am-andum,	*the loving.*
Abl.	Am-andō,	*by loving.*

SUPINES.

Am-ātum,	*to love.*
Am-ātū,	*to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Imperf.	Am-ans,	*loving.*
Future.	Am-ātūrŭs,	*about to love.*

* On the translation of the Imperative and Subjunctive Moods, see the Verb Sum, and p. 59.

Obs. In all the Perfect Tenses *vi* and *ve* may be omitted before *s* and *r*; as,

ămāvistī	becomes ămastī	ămāvĕram	becomes ămāram
ămāvistis	" ămastis	ămāvĕro	" ămāro
ămāvērunt	" ămārunt	ămāvĕrim	" ămārim
but ămāvĕrĕ does not become ămārĕ, which would be confounded with the Imperfect Infinitive.		ămāvissem	" ămassem
		ămāvissĕ	" ămassĕ

XIX.—Second Conjugation.—Active Voice.

Mŏnĕo, mŏnŭī, mŏnĭtum, mŏnērĕ: *to advise.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-ĕo,**	*I advise.*	*P.*	**Mŏn-ēmŭs,**	*We advise.*
	Mŏn-ēs,	*thou advisest.*		**Mŏn-ētis,**	*you advise.*
	Mŏn-ĕt,	*he advises.*		**Mŏn-ent,**	*they advise.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-ēbam,**	*I was advising.*	*P.*	**Mŏn-ēbāmŭs,**	*We were advising.*
	Mŏn-ēbās,	*thou wast advising.*		**Mŏn-ēbātis,**	*you were advising.*
	Mŏn-ēbăt,	*he was advising.*		**Mŏn-ēbant,**	*they were advising.*

3. Future-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-ēbo,**	*I shall advise.*	*P.*	**Mŏn-ēbĭmŭs,**	*We shall advise.*
	Mŏn-ēbis,	*thou wilt advise.*		**Mŏn-ēbĭtis,**	*you will advise.*
	Mŏn-ēbĭt,	*he will advise.*		**Mŏn-ēbunt,**	*they will advise.*

4. Present-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-uī,**	*I have advised,* or *I advised.*	*P.*	**Mŏn-uĭmŭs,**	*We have advised,* or *we advised.*
	Mŏn-uistī,	*thou hast advised,* or *advisedst.*		**Mŏn-uistis,**	*you have advised,* or *you advised.*
	Mŏn-uĭt,	*he has advised,* or *he advised.*		**Mŏn-uērunt** or **-uērĕ,**	*they have advised,* or *they advised.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-uĕram,**	*I had advised.*	*P.*	**Mŏn-uĕrāmŭs,**	*We had advised.*
	Mŏn-uĕrās,	*thou hadst advised.*		**Mŏn-uĕrātis,**	*you had advised.*
	Mŏn-uĕrăt,	*he had advised.*		**Mŏn-uĕrant,**	*they had advised.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-uĕro,**	*I shall have advised.*	*P.*	**Mŏn-uĕrimŭs,**	*We shall have advised.*
	Mŏn-uĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have advised.*		**Mŏn-uĕritis,**	*you will have advised.*
	Mŏn-uĕrĭt,	*he will have advised.*		**Mŏn-uĕrint,**	*they will have advised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. Mŏn-ē,	*Advise thou.*	*P.* Mŏn-ētĕ,	*Advise ye* or *you.*

Future Tense.

S. Mŏn-ēto,	*Thou shalt advise.*	*P.* Mŏn-ētōtĕ,	*Ye* or *you shall advise*
Mŏn-ēto,	*he shall advise*, or *let him advise.*	Mŏn-ento,	*they shall advise*, or *let them advise.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

S. Mŏn-eam,	*I may advise.*	*P.* Mŏn-eāmŭs,	*We may advise.*
Mŏn-eās,	*thou mayst advise.*	Mŏn-eātis,	*you may advise.*
Mŏn-eăt,	*he may advise.*	Mŏn-eant,	*they may advise.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S. Mŏn-ērem,	*I might advise.*	*P.* Mŏn-ērēmŭs,	*We might advise.*
Mŏn-ērēs,	*thou mightst advise.*	Mŏn-ērētis,	*you might advise.*
Mŏn-ērĕt,	*he might advise.*	Mŏn-ērent,	*they might advise.*

3. Future-Imperfect Tense.

S. Mŏn-ĭturŭs sim,	*I may be about to advise.*	*P.* Mŏn-ĭturī sīmŭs,	*We may be about to advise.*
Mŏn-ĭturŭs sīs,	*thou mayst be about to advise.*	Mŏn-ĭturī sītis,	*you may be about to advise.*
Mŏn-ĭturŭs sit,	*he may be about to advise.*	Mŏn-ĭturī sint,	*they may be about to advise.*

4. Present-Perfect Tense.

S. Mŏn-uĕrim,	*I may have advised.*	*P.* Mŏn-uĕrimŭs,	*We may have advised.*
Mŏn-uĕrīs,	*thou mayst have advised.*	Mŏn-uĕritis,	*you may have advised.*
Mŏn-uĕrĭt,	*he may have advised.*	Mŏn-uĕrint,	*they may have advised.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S. Mŏn-uissem,	*I might have advised.*	*P.* Mŏn-uissēmŭs,	*We might have advised.*
Mŏn-uissēs,	*thou mightst have advised.*	Mŏn-uissētis,	*you might have advised.*
Mŏn-uissĕt,	*he might have advised.*	Mŏn-uissent,	*they might have advised.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	Mŏn-ērĕ,	*to advise.*
Perfect.	Mŏn-uisĕ,	*to have advised.*
Future.	Mŏn-ĭturum essĕ,	*to be about to advise.*

GERUND.

Gen.	Mŏn-endī,	*of advising.*
Dat.	Mŏn-endō,	*for advising.*
Acc.	Mŏn-endum,	*the advising.*
Abl.	Mŏn-endō,	*by advising.*

SUPINES.		PARTICIPLES.	
Mŏn-ĭtum,	*to advise.*	IMPERF. **Mŏn-ens,**	*advising.*
Mŏn-ĭtū,	*to be advised.*	FUT. **Mŏn-ĭtūrŭs,**	*about to advise*

XX.—THIRD CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Rĕgo, rexī, rectum, rĕgĕrĕ: *to rule.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S.	**Rĕg-o,**	*I rule.*	*P.*	**Rĕg-ĭmŭs,**	*We rule.*
	Rĕg-ĭs,	*thou rulest.*		**Rĕg-ĭtis,**	*you rule.*
	Rĕg-ĭt,	*he rules.*		**Rĕg-unt,**	*they rule.*

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S.	**Rĕg-ēbam,**	*I was ruling.*	*P.*	**Rĕg-ēbāmŭs,**	*We were ruling.*
	Rĕg-ēbās,	*thou wast ruling.*		**Rĕg-ēbātis,**	*you were ruling.*
	Rĕg-ēbăt,	*he was ruling.*		**Rĕg-ēbant,**	*they were ruling.*

3. FUTURE-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S.	**Rĕg-am,**	*I shall rule.*	*P.*	**Rĕg-ēmŭs,**	*We shall rule.*
	Rĕg-ēs,	*thou wilt rule.*		**Rĕg-ētis,**	*you will rule.*
	Rĕg-ĕt,	*he will rule.*		**Rĕg-ent,**	*they will rule.*

4. PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

S.	**Rex-ī,**	*I have ruled,* or *I ruled.*	*P.*	**Rex-ĭmŭs,**	*We have ruled,* or *we ruled.*
	Rex-istī,	*thou hast ruled,* or *thou ruledst.*		**Rex-istis,**	*you have ruled,* or *you ruled.*
	Rex-ĭt,	*he has ruled,* or *he ruled.*		**Rex-ērunt** *or* **rex-ērĕ,**	*they have ruled,* or *they ruled.*

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S.	**Rex-ĕram,**	*I had ruled.*	*P.*	**Rex-ĕrāmŭs,**	*We had ruled.*
	Rex-ĕrās,	*thou hadst ruled.*		**Rex-ĕrātis,**	*you had ruled.*
	Rex-ĕrăt,	*he had ruled.*		**Rex-ĕrant,**	*they had ruled.*

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S.	**Rex-ĕro,**	*I shall have ruled.*	*P.*	**Rex-ĕrimŭs,**	*We shall have ruled.*
	Rex-ĕris,	*thou wilt have ruled.*		**Rex-ĕritis,**	*you will have ruled.*
	Rex-ĕrit,	*he will have ruled.*		**Rex-ĕrint,**	*they will have ruled.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S.	**Rĕg-ĕ,**	*Rule thou.*	*P.*	**Rĕg-ĭtĕ,**	*Rule ye* or *you.*

2. Future Tense.

S. Rĕg-ĭto,	*Thou shalt rule.*	*P.* Rĕg-ĭtōtĕ,	*You shall rule.*
Rĕg-ĭto,	*he shall rule*, or *let him rule.*	Rĕg-unto,	*they shall rule*, or *let them rule.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

S. Rĕg-am,	*I may rule.*	*P.* Rĕg-āmŭs,	*We may rule.*
Rĕg-ās,	*thou mayst rule.*	Rĕg-ātis,	*you may rule.*
Rĕg-at,	*he may rule.*	Rĕg-ant,	*they may rule.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S. Rĕg-ĕrem,	*I might rule.*	*P.* Rĕg-ĕrēmŭs,	*We might rule.*
Rĕg-ĕrēs,	*thou mightst rule.*	Rĕg-ĕrētis,	*you might rule.*
Rĕg-ĕrĕt,	*he might rule.*	Rĕg-ĕrent,	*they might rule.*

3. Future-Imperfect Tense.

S. Rec-tūrŭs sim,	*I may be about to rule.*	*P.* Rec-tūrī sīmŭs,	*We may be about to rule.*
Rec-tūrŭs sīs,	*thou mayst be about to rule.*	Rec-tūrī sītis,	*you may be about to rule.*
Rec-tūrŭs sit,	*he may be about to rule.*	Rec-tūrī sint,	*they may be about to rule.*

4. Present-Perfect Tense.

S. Rex-ĕrim,	*I may have ruled.*	*P.* Rex-ĕrimŭs,	*We may have ruled.*
Rex-ĕrīs,	*thou mayst have ruled.*	Rex-ĕritis,	*you may have ruled.*
Rex-ĕrĭt,	*he may have ruled.*	Rex-ĕrint,	*they may have ruled.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S. Rex-issem,	*I might*	*P.* Rex-issēmŭs,	*We might*
Rex-issēs,	*thou mightst* *have ruled.*	Rex-issētis,	*you might* *have ruled.*
Rex-issĕt,	*he might*	Rex-issent,	*they might*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	Rĕg-ĕrĕ,	*to rule.*
Perfect.	Rex-issĕ,	*to have ruled.*
Future.	Rec-tūrum essĕ,	*to be about to rule.*

GERUND.

Gen.	Rĕg-endī,	*of ruling.*
Dat.	Rĕg-endō,	*for ruling.*
Acc.	Rĕg-endum,	*the ruling.*
Abl.	Rĕg-endō,	*by ruling.*

SUPINES.

Rec-tum,	*to rule.*
Rec-tū,	*to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

Imperf.	Rĕg-ens,	*ruling.*
Future.	Rec-tūrŭs,	*about to rule.*

XXI.—Fourth Conjugation.—Active Voice.

Audĭo, audīvī, audītum, audīrĕ: *to hear.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-io,**	*I hear.*	P.	**Aud-īmŭs,**	*We hear.*
	Aud-īs,	*thou hearest.*		**Aud-ītĭs,**	*you hear.*
	Aud-ĭt,	*he hears.*		**Aud-iunt,**	*they hear.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-iēbam,**	*I was hearing.*	P.	**Aud-iēbāmŭs,**	*We were hearing*
	Aud-iēbās,	*thou wast hearing.*		**Aud-iēbātĭs,**	*you were hearing.*
	Aud-iēbăt,	*he was hearing.*		**Aud-iēbant,**	*they were hearing*

3. Future-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-iam,**	*I shall hear.*	P.	**Aud-iēmŭs,**	*We shall hear.*
	Aud-iēs,	*thou wilt hear.*		**Aud-iētĭs,**	*you will hear.*
	Aud-iĕt,	*he will hear.*		**Aud-ient,**	*they will hear.*

4. Present-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-īvī,**	*I have heard,* or *I heard.*	P.	**Aud-īvĭmŭs,**	*We have heard,* or *we heard.*
	Aud-īvistī,	*thou hast heard,* or *thou heardst.*		**Aud-īvistĭs,**	*you have heard,* or *you heard.*
	Aud-īvĭt,	*he has heard,* or *he heard.*		**Aud-īvērunt** or **-īvērĕ,**	*they have heard,* or *they heard.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-īvĕram,**	*I had heard.*	P.	**Aud-īvĕrāmŭs,**	*We had heard.*
	Aud-īvĕrās,	*thou hadst heard.*		**Aud-īvĕrātĭs,**	*you had heard.*
	Aud-īvĕrăt,	*he had heard.*		**Aud-īvĕrant,**	*they had heard.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-īvĕro,**	*I shall*	P.	**Aud-īvĕrimŭs,**	*We shall*
	Aud-īvĕrĭs,	*thou wilt* } *have*		**Aud-īvĕrĭtĭs,**	*you will* } *have*
	Aud-īvĕrĭt,	*he will* } *heard.*		**Aud-īvĕrint,**	*they will* } *heard*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S.	**Aud-ī,**	*Hear thou.*	P.	**Aud-ītĕ,**	*Hear ye* or *you.*

Future Tense.

S.	**Aud-īto,**	*thou shalt hear.*	P.	**Aud-ītōtĕ,**	*You shall hear.*
	Aud-īto,	*he shall hear,* or *let him hear.*		**Aud-iunto,**	*they shall hear,* or *let them hear.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-iam,**	*I may hear.*	*P.*	**Aud-iāmŭs,**	*We may hear.*
	Aud-iās,	*thou mayst hear.*		**Aud-iātĭs,**	*you may hear.*
	Aud-iăt,	*he may hear.*		**Aud-iant,**	*they may hear.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-īrem,**	*I might hear.*	*P.*	**Aud-īrēmŭs,**	*We might hear.*
	Aud-īrēs,	*thou mightst hear.*		**Aud-īrētĭs,**	*you might hear.*
	Aud-īrĕt,	*he might hear.*		**Aud-īrent,**	*they might hear.*

3. Future-Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-ītūrŭs sim,**	*I may be about to hear.*	*P.*	**Aud-ītūrī sīmŭs,**	*We may be about to hear.*
	Aud-ītūrŭs sīs,	*thou mayst be about to hear.*		**Aud-ītūrī sītĭs,**	*you may be about to hear.*
	Aud-ītūrŭs sĭt,	*he may be about to hear.*		**Aud-ītūrī sint,**	*they may be about to hear.*

4. Present-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-īvĕrim,**	*I may*	*P.*	**Aud-īvĕrimus,**	*We may*
	Aud-īvĕrīs,	*thou mayst*		**Aud-īvĕrītĭs,**	*you may*
	Aud-īvĕrĭt,	*he may*		**Aud-īvĕrint,**	*they may*

have heard.

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-īvissem,**	*I might*	*P.*	**Aud-īvissēmŭs,**	*We might*
	Aud-īvissēs,	*thou mightst*		**Aud-īvissētĭs,**	*you might*
	Aud-īvissĕt,	*he might*		**Aud-īvissent,**	*they might*

have heard.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperf.	**Aud-īrĕ,**	*to hear.*
Perfect.	**Aud-īvisse,**	*to have heard.*
Future.	**Aud-ītūrum esse,**	*to be about to hear.*

GERUND.

Gen.	**Aud-iendī,**	*of hearing.*
Dat.	**Aud-iendō,**	*for hearing.*
Acc.	**Aud-iendum,**	*the hearing.*
Voc.	**Aud-iendō,**	*by hearing.*

SUPINES.

Aud-ītum,	*to hear.*
Aud-ītū,	*to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

Imperf.	**Aud-iens,**	*hearing.*
Future.	**Aud-ītūrŭs,**	*about to hear.*

Obs. In all the Perfect Tenses *v* is frequently omitted before *e* and *i*. The two *ii* are often contracted into *i*; as,

audīvistī	becomes	audīstī *or* audistī	audīvĕrim	becomes	audīĕrim
audīvistis	"	audīstĭs *or* audistĭs	audīvissem	"	audīssem *or* audissem
audīvit	"	audīt	audīvissĕ	"	audīssĕ *or* audissĕ
audīvērunt	"	audĕrunt			
audīvēram	"	audĕram			
audīvēro	"	audĕro			

Rules of Quantity.

REMARK.—It is usual to call the syllable or syllables occurring between the verbal stem (as *am-* in *am-are*) and the final syllable the verbal increment; thus, in *am-o*, *am-as*, there is no increment, but in *am-a-mus*, *am-a-ba-mus*, the *a* and *ba* are the increment.

[For convenience the Second Person Singular of the Present Indicative is assumed as the standard, and a verbal form is said to have an increment when it exceeds this in the number of its syllables.]

a, in the increment of verbs, is always long, except the first increase of *do*; as, *amāmus*, etc.; but *dăbam*, *dăre*, *dăbāmus*.

e, in the increment of verbs, is long; as, *monēre*, *regēbam*, *amēris*.

EXCEPTION 1.—e is short in the first increase of every Present and Imperfect of the third conjugation when followed by *r*; as, *regĕre*, *regĕrem*, *regĕris*.

EXCEPTION 2.—e is short before *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, of every conjugation, and in the termination *bĕris* or *bĕre*.

i, in the increment of verbs, is short; as, *amavĭmus*, *amabĭtis*, etc.

EXCEPTION 1.—i is long in the first increase of the fourth conjugation when followed by a consonant; as, *audīre*, *audītis*, *audīvi*.

Remark 1. Verbs of the third conjugation, which form their Perfects in *ivi* and Supines in *itum*, have the *i* of the penult long after the analogy of verbs of the fourth conjugation; as, *peto*, *petīvi*, *petītum*.

Remark 2. On the other hand, verbs of the fourth conjugation, which make the Perfect after the analogy of the third, as *venīre*, *vēni*, follow the rule, and have the *i* short; as Perfect *vēnĭmus*, while the Present is *venīmus*.

EXCEPTION 2.—i is long in the Present Subjunctive of *sum* and *volo* (and their compounds); as, *sīmus*, *sītis*, *velīmus*, *velītis*.

o is long in the increment of verbs; as, *monetōte*.

u is long in the Future Participle, as *rectūrus*; short in *sŭmus* and *volŭmus* (and compounds).

FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

VOCABULARY 25 (*a*).

A.—aedĭfĭco (āvi, ātum, āre),	*I build.*	**păro (āre, etc.),**	*I prepare, make ready, get, gain.*
do (dĕdi, dătum, dăre),	*I give.*	**recreo (āre, etc.),**	*I refresh.*
hăbĭto (āre, etc.),	*I dwell.*	**vĭgĭlo (āre, etc.),**	*I watch, am awake.*
intro (āre, etc.),	*I enter.*	**dum (*adv.*),**	*while.*
laudo (āre, etc.),	*I praise.*	**fraus, fraudis,**	*f. fraud, dishonesty.*

vĭtŭpero (āre, etc.),	*I blame, find fault with.*	**quum** (*adv.* and *conj.*),	*when.*
plăcĭdus, a, um,	*quiet, calm.*	**si** (*conj.*),	*if.*
probĭtas, ātis, *f.*	*honesty, integrity.*	**somnus, i,** *m.*	*sleep.*
		timŏr, ōris, *m.*	*fear.*

EXERCISE XXV.

The Present-~~Imperfect~~, ~~Past~~-Imperfect, and Future-~~Imperfect~~ Tenses, Indicative.

A.—1. Ego te laudabam, tu me vituperabas. 2. Ego te laudabo, tu me vituperabis. 3. Bonos semper laudabo, improbos semper vituperabo. 4. Si virtutem amabitis, omnes boni vos amabunt. 5. Dum nos placidus somnus recreabat, vos vigilabatis. 6. Quum milites urbem intrabant, omnes cives timoris pleni erant. 7. Hieme in urbe habitamus, aestate autem in hortis habitabimus. 8. Probitate, non fraude amicos parabis. 9. Graeci partem praedae Diis dabant. 10. Multi homines aedificant domos, in quibus non habitabunt.

1. He was building a house in the city. 2. I shall always praise the good; I shall always find-fault-with the bad. 3. The Romans gave the greatest honors to good citizens. 4. By virtue they are getting to themselves (*sibi*) a renowned name. 5. While the soldiers were refreshing themselves the enemy (pl.) were watching. 6. We build houses; others will dwell in them. 7. The general will give the booty to (his) soldiers. 8. You find-fault-with yourself, I (do) not find-fault-with you. 9. All persons praise diligence and honesty. 10. While the citizens watched, the soldiers made ready their arms.

The ~~Present~~-Perfect, Past-Perfect, and Future-Perfect Tenses, Indicative.

RULE 11.—When two substantives refer to the same person or thing, they are put in the same case by *Apposition;* as, Rōmŭlŭs, rex Rōmānōrum, *Romulus, king of the Romans.*

VOCABULARY 25 (*a*).

B.—ambŭlo (āre, etc.),	*I walk.*	**expugno (are**, etc.),	*I take by storm.*
ămo (āre, etc.),	*I love.*	**flo (are**, etc.),	*I blow.*
castīgo (are, etc.),	*I chastise.*	**jūdĭco (are**, etc.),	*I judge.*
ēmendo (are, etc.),	*I improve.*	**oppugno (are**, etc.),	*I attack, assault.*
ēmīgro (are, etc.),	*I depart from.*	**orno (are**, etc.),	*I adorn.*

vasto (are, etc.),	*I lay waste.*	**jam,** *adv.*	*now, already.*
aedificium, ii, *n.*	*building.*	**opŭlentus, a, um,**	*wealthy.*
Corinthus, i, *f.*	*Corinth.*	**ventus, i,** *m.*	*wind.*

B.—1. Ego ambulavi, tu vigilavisti, ventus flavit. 2. Ego ambulaveram, tu vigilaveras, ventus flaverat. 3. Ego te laudavero, tu me vituperaveris, frater judicaverit. 4. Praeceptores meos semper amavi. 5. Romani Corinthum, opulentam Graeciae urbem, expugnaverunt. 6. Quum milites urbem intraverant, omnes cives timoris pleni erant. 7. Si unum castigaveris, centum emendabis. 8. Si animum virtutibus ornaveris, semper beatus eris. 9. Quum exercitus urbem oppugnavit, nos jam emigraveramus. 10. Quum hostes agros vastaverint, urbem oppugnabunt.

1. The Romans assaulted the city. 2. The soldiers laid waste the lands (agri) and assaulted the city. 3. Cicero, the orator, got for himself a renowned name. 4. They had adorned the city (of) Corinth with most splendid buildings. 5. When the army has (*fut. perf.*) laid-waste the lands, the general will assault the city. 6. When you have improved (*fut. perf.*) your life, you will have gained for-yourself (*dative*) true praise. 7. I have built for myself a splendid house; I have gained very many friends. 8. I have praised you, not found-fault-with you. 9. The army had entered the city and had laid-waste all (things). 10. If you have gained for yourself true friends, you are happy.

Imperative Mood.

VOCABULARY 25 (*a*).

C.—creo (are, etc.),	*I create, make.*	**lĭttĕra, ae,** *f.*	*a letter (of the alphabet.)*
cūro (are, etc.),	*I take care, pains.*	**lĭttĕrae, ārum,** *f. pl.*	*letters, learning;* also, *an epistle, letter.*
firmo (are, etc.),	*I strengthen.*	**nēmo, ĭnis,*** *c.*	*nobody.*
mūto (are, etc.),	*I change.*	**vălētūdo, ĭnis,** *f.*	*health*
pugno (are, etc.),	*I fight.*		
dĭlĭgenter, *adv.*	*carefully.*		

NOTE.—*Not* in prohibitions is always NE.

C.—1. Amato patrem et matrem! 2. Omnes homines ama! 3. Mores vestros mutate, amici! 4. Diligenter cura, amice, valetudinem tuam! 5. Amate litteras, o pueri! 6. Discipulus amato praeceptores! 7. Laudatote probos homines, vituperatote improbos! 8. Omnes homines amanto Deum! 9. Ne nomen muta; muta mores.

* In place of this genitive *nullius* is used.

1. Enter, O friends! 2. Improve those ill manners, scholars! 3. O my son, love (thy) mother! 4. (Do) not change this law, citizens. 5. Praise thou the just and good (pl.). 6. (Do) not change (your) friends. 7. While the soldiers are fighting, let the citizens watch. 8. Let good and upright citizens be at-the-head-of the commonwealth. 9. Get not to thyself a name by guilt.

The Subjunctive Mood.

The Indicative Mood speaks of a thing as a fact, present, past, or to be, while the Subjunctive Mood speaks of it as merely entertained by the mind, and dependent on other circumstances. Thus, Dŏmum aedĭfĭcāvī, aedĭfĭcābo, *I have built a house, I shall build a house*, as facts; ŭt ĭn ĕā hăbĭtem, *that I may dwell in it*, the idea or purpose entertained, but not necessarily coming to pass.

The translation of the Subjunctive Mood with *may* and *might* is only an approximation to its meaning. Very often it has to be rendered in English by the corresponding tense of the Indicative Mood, as in the whole of Exercise E.

Note.—The Rule for the sequence of tenses in the Subjunctive Mood is given on p. 127.

Rule 12.—The Conjunction **ŭt**, *that, in order that*, and **nē**, *lest, in order that not*, are constructed with the Subjunctive Mood.

The Present-Imperfect and Past-Imperfect Tenses, Subjunctive.

Vocabulary 25 (*b*).

D.—dīmĭco (are, etc.),	*I fight (a battle).*	**tracto (are**, etc.),	*I handle, deal with.*
exhĭlăro (are, etc.)	*I cheer.*	**hĕrī**, *adv.*	*yesterday.*
impĕro (are, etc.).	*I command* (gov. *dat.*).	**ĭtă**, *adv.* (*from* **is, id**),	*in that way, thus.*
lĭbĕro (are, etc.)	*I free, deliver.*	**majōres, um**, *m. pl.*	*ancestors.*
ɔpto (are, etc.),	*I wish, desire.*	**rectus, a, um**,	*straight, right.*
rĕdămo (are, etc.),	*I love in return.*	**saepe**, *adv.*	*often.*
servo (are, etc.),	*I preserve, save.*	**stătio, ōnis**, *f.*	*post, station.*
		nē (*conj.* = **ut non**),	*that not, in order that not.*

D.—1. Laudat puerum, ut litteras amet. 2. Laudavit puerum, ut litteras amaret. 3. Omnes parentes optant, ut filii litteras diligenter tractent. 4. Saepe majores nostri dimicaverunt, ut patriam suam liberarent. 5. Amo te, ut me redames. 6. Amavi te, ut me redamares. 7. Dux imperavit ut milites stationes suas servarent. 8. Ita judicat judex justus, ut in omni re rectam conscientiam servet. 9. Heri ambulabam, ut tristem animum exhilararem. 10. Exercitus noster pugnabat, ne urbem hostes expugnarent.

1. I often walked in the fields that I might refresh my mind. 2. Who does not fight that he may preserve his country? 3. They were fighting that they might preserve their freedom. 4. He chastises the boy in order that he may improve him. 5. He was chastising the boy in order that he might improve him. 6. We fight *in order that* the enemy (pl.) may *not* (ne) lay-waste our lands. 7. The husbandmen were preparing arms *in order that* the soldiers might *not* enter their lands. 8. We make ready our arms that we may save the city. 9. We often walked in the garden in order that we might refresh ourselves (nos). 10. We were building and were adorning dwelling-places, in order that others might dwell in them.

RULE 13.—**Quīn** is used with the Subjunctive Mood after nōn dŭbĭto, *I do not doubt;* nēmo dŭbĭtăt, *no one doubts;* quis dŭbĭtăt? *who doubts?* nōn est dŭbĭum, *it is not doubtful*, or, *there is no doubt;* and is translated in English by *that.*

The Future-Imperfect, Present-Perfect, and Past-Perfect Tenses, Subjunctive.

VOCABULARY 25 (*b*).

E.—**dēlecto (are,** etc.),	*I delight, amuse.*	**fortĭter,** *adv.*	*bravely.*
dŭbĭto (are, etc.),	*I doubt.*	**fortissimē,** *adv.*	*very bravely.*
erro (are, etc.),	*I err, make a mistake.*	**Hannĭbal, ălis,** *m.*	*Hannibal, the great Carthaginian general.*
occŭpo (are, etc.),	*I seize upon.*	**pro,** *prep.* (*with abl.*),	*for, in behalf of.*
sŭpĕro (are, etc.),	*I overcome.*	**terror, ōris,** *m.*	*terror, alarm.*
dŭbĭus, a, um,	*doubtful.*		
fĭdes, ei, *f.*	*faith, promise.*		

E.—1. Non dubito, quin milites nostri hostes superaverint.

2. Non dubitabam, quin milites nostri hostes superavissent. 3. Non dubito, quin milites nostri hostes superaturi sint. 4. Quis dubitat, quin bonos semper laudaverimus? 5. Non est dubium, quin fidem semper servaveritis. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin hostes urbem expugnavissent. 7. Non est dubium, quin malos semper vituperaverimus. 8. Nemo dubitabat, quin Hannibal fortissime pugnavisset. 9. Non est dubium, quin terror omnium civium animos occupaverit. 10. Non erat dubium, quin terror omnium civium animos occupavisset.

1. There was no doubt that the enemy had entered the city. 2. There is no doubt that our soldiers have fought bravely. 3. I do not doubt that ye have always praised the good. 4. There is no doubt that our (men) will overcome the enemy. 5. There was no doubt that they had prepared arms. 6. Who doubts that the enemy will prepare arms? 7. I have no doubt that our soldiers will take-by-storm the city. 8. Who doubts that our men will fight bravely? 9. There is no doubt that he has improved his manners. 10. Who doubts that a good citizen will fight for (prō with abl.) his native-land?

Infinitive Mood and Participles.

RULE 14.—The Infinitive Mood is sometimes put as the object of another verb; as, Caesăr hostēs sŭpĕrārĕ pŏtest, *Caesar is able to overcome the enemy.*

VOCABULARY 25 (*b*).

F.—advento (are, etc.),	*I am on the point of arriving.*	**porto (are,** etc.),	*I carry.*
		ăb (ā, abs), (*prep.* with abl.),	*from, by.*
canto (are, etc.)	*I sing.*	**interĭtus, us,** *m.*	*destruction.*

Pŏtest, (*he, she, it*) *is able.* **Possunt,** (*they*) *are able.*

F.—1. Milites urbem expugnare possunt. 2. Caesar sibi amicos parare potest. 3. Naturam mutare difficile est. 4. Errare humanum est. 5. Luscinia cantans animos nostros delectat. 6. Hostes adventant expugnaturi urbem nostram.

1. Caesar is able to take-by-storm the city. 2. Our (men) are able to overcome the enemy. 3. It is difficult to change bad manners. 4. It is easy to overcome the enemies. 5. The general entered the city, carrying his sword in his hand. 6. They were walking in the garden, singing and adorning themselves with flowers.

Second Conjugation.—Active Voice.

Vocabulary 26.

coerceo (ēre, etc., 2),	*I restrain, curb.*
dēbeo (ēre, etc., 2),	*I owe, ought.*
dēleo (ēre, ēvi, ētum, 2),	*I destroy.*
displĭceo (ēre, etc., 2),	*I displease (with dat.).*
docĕo (ēre, etc., 2),	*I teach (with two acc.).*
exerceo (ēre, etc., 2),	*I exercise.*
fleo (ēre, ēvi, ētum, 2),	*I weep.*
floreo (ēre, etc., 2),	*I bloom, flourish.*
gaudeo* (ēre, gāvīsus sum, 2),	*I rejoice.*
mereo (ēre, etc., 2),	*I deserve.*
moneo (ēre, etc., 2),	*I advise, warn.*
nŏceo (ēre, etc., 2),	*I hurt, harm (with dat.).*
pāreo (ēre, etc., 2),	*I obey (with dat.).*
praebeo (ēre, etc., 2),	*I furnish, afford, exhibit.*
terreo (ēre, etc., 2),	*I terrify, frighten, alarm.*
văleo (ēre, etc., 2),	*I am strong, in good health.*
plăceo (ēre, etc., 2),	*I please (with dat.).*
ars, artis, *f.*	*art, handicraft.*
ăvis, is, *f.*	*a bird.*
Athenienses, e, *adj.*	*Athenian.*
bĕnĕ, *adv.*	*well.*
Caesar, ăris, *m.*	*Cæsar, the great Roman commander.*
cantus, us, *m.*	*song.*
diu, *adv.*	*long.*
dīvīnus, a, um, *adj.*	*belonging to the gods, divine.*
Lătīnus, a, um, *adj.*	*Latin.*
lingua, æ, *f.*	*tongue, language.*
Pompēius, ii, *m.*	*Pompey, the rival of Cæsar.*
quiă, quod, *conjs.*	*because.*
saepissĭme, *adv.*	*very often.*
senectus, ūtis, *f.*	*old age.*
Sŏlon, ōnis, *m.*	*Solon, the Athenian lawgiver.*
tĕmĕrĭtas, ātis, *f.*	*recklessness, rashness.*

Exercise XXVI.

Indicative and Imperative Moods.

A.—1. Ego te monebam, tu flebas. 2. Ego te monebo, tu flebis. 3. Arbores vere florent. 4. Tempus omnia opera hominum delet. 5. Romani primis temporibus parebant regibus. 6. Gaudebam quod tu valebas. 7. Praeceptor gaudebat, quod vos ejus praeceptis parebatis. 8. Tibi placebas, aliis displicebas. 9. Omnes boni legibus divinis semper parebunt. 10. Vires vestras semper exercete, pueri!

1. We shall rejoice, you will weep. 2. The young-man

* The verb *gaudeo* belongs to the class of Neuter-Passives. (See Exercise XLVII.)

obeys not the laws of the commonwealth. 3. Weep not, O my sons; the commonwealth rejoices. 4. A good king is not always pleasing to his citizens. 5. I rejoice, because the state flourishes. 6. The same (things) do not always please the same persons. 7. The commonwealth was flourishing. 8. The good citizens were rejoicing; the bad were weeping. 9. Obey the laws of your country, citizens. 10. The enemy was destroying the houses.

B.—1. Graecia omnibus artibus floruit. 2. Multum iis debemus, qui nos virtutem docuerunt. 3. Fortes milites, laudem meruistis. 4. Cantus avium maximam nobis praebuerunt voluptatem. 5. Bonae leges Solonis Atheniensibus placuerunt. 6. Divitiae multis hominibus nocuerunt. 7. Magistri vos linguam Latinam docuerunt. 8. Equites Caesaris Pompeium ejusque amicos terruerunt. 9. Haec civitas diu floruerat, quia semper legibus paruerat. 10. Tu nobis nocueras, quia temeritatem tuam non coërcueras.

1. Rashness has often been hurtful to generals. 2. We owe very many-things to our parents. 3. Who taught you the Latin language, boy? 4. Curb the tongue; the tongue has been hurtful to very many (persons). 5. Cicero exhibited to his fellow-citizens a memorable example of integrity. 6. Set (praebeo) a good example to thy fellow-citizens. 7. Do not destroy the city, soldiers! 8. Solon the Athenian furnished most excellent laws for his fellow-citizens. 9. That man often curbs his tongue. 10. To whom do not the songs of birds afford pleasure?

Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.

C.—1. Curo ut pueri corpus exerceam. 2. Curabam ut pueri corpus exercerem. 3. Cura ut pueri corpus exerceas. 4. Curabam ut pueri corpus exerceres. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum semper bene monuerim. 6. Nemo dubitavit quin ego puerum semper bene monuissem. 7. Non dubito quin dux temeritatem militum coercuerit. 8. Non dubito, quin dux temeritatem militum coerciturus sit. 9. Miserum est habuisse, et nihil habere. 10. Bonis placuisse maxima laus est.

1. Who doubts that rashness has been hurtful to generals? 2. It is difficult to curb the tongue; it is more difficult to curb anger. 3. There is no doubt that to curb anger is most difficult. 4. There is no doubt that the soldiers entered the

city weeping. 5. To do good to very many is true glory. 6. That tongue of yours (*iste*) is destined-to-hurt (*Fut. Part.*) yourself. 7. I will take care to* set a good example to my children. 8. A son ought to obey (his) father. 9. There is no doubt that the laws of Solon were serviceable to the Athenians. 10. Who doubts that anger has hurt very many?

* *Obs. To set=that I may set:* ut with Subjunctive. When the English Infinitive Mood expresses a purpose, it must be translated in Latin by *ut* and the Subjunctive.

Third Conjugation.—Active Voice.

Vocabulary 27.

absŭmo (mpsi, mptum, 3),	*I consume, cut off.*
cingo (nxi, nctum, 3),	*I surround.*
contemno (mpsi, mptum, 3),	*I despise.*
contrăho (axi, actum, 3),	*I draw together.*
convolo (āre, etc.),	*to fly or rush together.*
corrigo (exi, ectum, 3),	*I correct.*
dēfendo (di, sum, 3),	*I defend.*
dēsĕro (erui, ertum, 3),	*I abandon.*
detĕgo (xi, ctum, 3),	*I discover.*
dīco (xi, ctum, 3),	*I say, speak.*
disco (dĭdĭci, *no sup.*, 3),	*I learn.*
dūco (xi, ctum, 3),	*I lead.*
excŏlo (ŏlui, ultum, 3),	*I cultivate carefully.*
instĭtuo (ui, ūtum, 3),	*I appoint, institute.*
ĕmo (ēmi, emptum, 3),	*I buy.*
instruo (uxi, uctum, 3),	*I arrange, draw up in order.*
jungo (nxi, nctum, 3),	*I join.*
lĕgo (lēgi, lectum, 3),	*I gather, read.*
narro (are, etc.),	*I relate.*
pingo (nxi, ctum, 3),	*I paint, embroider.*
rĕgo (xi, ctum, 3),	*I rule.*
scrībo (psi, ptum, 3),	*I write.*
solvo (vi, ūtum, 3),	*I loosen, I pay.*
specto (are, etc.),	*I look at, look on.*
tĕgo (xi, ctum, 3),	*I cover.*
trăho (axi, actum, 3),	*I draw, drag.*
triumpho† (are, etc.),	*I triumph.*
vŏlo (are, etc.),	*I fly.*

Camillus, i, *m.*	*Camillus, a famous Roman general.*
Cătilīna, ae, *m.*	*Catiline, a notorious conspirator.*
conjūrātio, ōnis, *f.*	*conspiracy.*
cōpia, ae, *f.*	*plenty.*
cōpiae, ārum, *f. pl.*	*forces, troops.*
currus, ūs, *m.*	*chariot.*
fĕrē, *adv.*	*almost, commonly.*
Hellespontus, i, *m.*	*the Hellespont* (now *the Dardanelles*).
impĕrātor, ōris, *m.*	*military commander.*
in, *prep.* (*with acc.*),	*into, to.*
incendium, ii, *n.*	*a fire, conflagration.*

† The triumph (*triumphus*) was a special honor granted by the Senate of Rome to a victorious general.

innŭmĕrus, a, um,	*innumerable.*
lŏcus, i, *m., in pl.* **lŏci** *and* **lŏca,**	*place.*
mens, mentis, *f.*	*mind.*
mundus, i, *m.*	*the world.*
obsĭdio, ōnis, *f.*	*siege, blockade.*
ōrātio, ōnis, *f.*	*oration, speech.*
pallium, ii, *n.*	*cloak.*
pons,* ntis, *m.*	*bridge.*
sĭmul ac (atque), *or, in one word,* **simulac,** *conj.*	*as soon as.*
vix, *adv.*	*hardly, scarcely.*

Exercise XXVII.

Indicative and Imperative Moods.

A.—1. Omnem hunc mundum Deus regit. 2. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam ducet. 3. Semper dicam quod verum est. 4. Dum ego scribebam, tu legebas, et frater pingebat. 5. Miles corpus pallio suo teget. 6. Hostes aciem instruebant. 7. Disce, puer! 8. Coelestia semper spectato, humana contemnito. 9. Vos, viri fortissimi, urbem templaque deorum defendetis. 10. Tu exercitum duces, multasque urbes expugnabis.

1. Hannibal will lead his army into the Roman territory (agri, *pl.*). 2. We were leading the army into the Roman territory. 3. We were defending the city and the temples of the gods. 4. I was writing; you were reading; (my) brother was painting. 5. A good citizen will never abandon the commonwealth. 6. The state defends us. 7. I will cover the bodies of the boys with (my) cloak. 8. Learn the song, boys; (it) is very beautiful (pulcher). 9. Brave men despise death and danger. 10. Tell† me (*Dat.*), (my) son, what has hurt you?

B.—1. Tarquinius Priscus Romam urbem muris cinxit. 2. Xerxes, Persarum rex, Hellespontum ponte junxit. 3. Imperator exercitum duxit, multasque urbes expugnavit. 4. Cicero multas pulcherrimas orationes scripserat. 5. Cicero conjurationem Catilinae detexerat. 6. Simulac litteras scripserimus, ambulabimus. 7. Incendium totam fere urbem absumpserat. 8. Camillum triumphantem albi traxerunt equi. 9. Xerxes, Persarum rex, innumeras copias contraxit. 10. Vix Caesar aciem instruxerat, quum hostes in unum locum convolaverunt.

---

* Observe the phrase *jungere flumen ponte, to throw a bridge over a river.*

† The verbs dico, duco, facio, drop the final *e* in the Imperative Mood; hence dic, *tell thou;* duc, *lead thou;* fac, *do thou.*

1. The fire consumed the third part of the city. 2. The general led a great army into Italy. 3. The Cimbri brought-together innumerable forces. 4. Caesar arranged his line-of-battle. 5. Caesar threw a bridge across the river (*say*, joined the river by a bridge). 6. As soon as I have written (*Fut. Perf.*) the letter, I will take-a-walk. 7. We discovered the conspiracy of Catiline. 8. I defended the commonwealth (when) a young man. 9. White horses had drawn Camillus triumphing. 10. We have despised human (things).

Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.

C.—1. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam ducit, ut cum Romanis in hac terra pugnet. 2. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam duxit, ut cum Romanis in hac terra pugnaret. 3. Cura ut pueri animum excolas. 4. Curabam ut pueri animum excoleres. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum diligenter correxerim. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin ego puerum diligenter correxissem. 7. Narrate nobis, quid parentes scripserint. 8. Quis dubitat, quin hostes urbem obsidione cincturi sint. 9. Difficile est regere hominum animos. 10. Emere facilius est quam solvere.

1. I will take care to cultivate (*ut* and *Subj.*) the boy's mind. 2. There is no doubt that he has carefully cultivated his intellect (mens). 3. Take care to be well (*ut* and *Subj.*). 4. Who doubts that it is very difficult to rule the minds of men? 5. Who doubts that we have obeyed the laws? 6. Caesar drew together his forces with-the-intention-of-assaulting (*Fut. Part.*) the town. 7. White horses drew the chariot of Camillus (when) triumphing. 8. It is difficult to learn many things. 9. There is no doubt that we ought always to-be-learning (*Imperf. Inf.*). 10. I will take care to correct (*ut* and *Subj.*) the boys.

Fourth Conjugation.—Active Voice.

Vocabulary 28.

custōdio (īre, īvi, ītum, 4),	*I guard, keep guard.*
dormio (īre, etc., 4),	*I sleep.*
ērŭdio (īre, etc., 4),	*I train up, educate.*
firmo (āre, etc., 1),	*I strengthen.*
fīnio (īre, etc., 4),	*I limit, put an end to.*
mollio (īre, etc., 4),	*I soften, assuage.*
mūnio (īre, etc., 4),	*I fortify.*
pūnio (īre, etc., 4)	*I punish.*

nescio (īre, ivi, *and* ii, 4),	*I am ignorant of.*
nutrio (īre, etc., 4),	*I nourish, nurture.*
ŏbĕdio (īre, etc., 4),	*I obey (with dat.).*
rĕpĕrio, īre, rĕpĕri, repertum, 4,	*I find.*
scio (īre, etc., 4),	*I know.*
sĕpĕlio, īre, īvi, *and* ii, sepultum, 4,	*I bury.*
vĕnio, īre, vēni, ventum, 4,	*I come.*
vestio (īre, etc., 4),	*I clothe.*
vincio, īre, vinxi, vinctum, 4,	*I bind.*
Alpes, ium (*pl.*), *f.*	*the Alps.*
Cornēlia, ae, *f.*	*Cornelia, a Roman matron.*
crūdēlis, e,	*cruel.*
dīligentissĭme, *adv.*	*most carefully.*
dŏlor, ōris, *m.*	*pain, grief.*
ĕtiam, *conj.*	*also, even.*
Libya, ae, *f.*	*Africa.*
finis, is, *m.*	*end, limit;* in pl., *territories.*
gnāvĭter, *adv.*	*actively, vigorously.*
lictor, ōris, *m.*	*a lictor (attendant on a Roman magistrate).*
longinquus, a, um,	*long, distant.*
longinquĭtas, ātis, *f.*	*length, distance.*
membrāna, ae, *f.*	*thin skin, membrane.*
mollis, e,	*soft, mellow.*
mortuus, a, um,	*dead.*
quŏque, *conj.*	*also, even.*
tenuis, e,	*thin, delicate.*
turpis, e,	*base, disgraceful.*
vestis, is, *f.* / **vestīmentum, i, *n.***	*clothing.*
vincŭlum, i, *n.*	*chain, bond.*
vox, vōcis, *f.*	*voice.*

Exercise XXVIII.

Indicative and Imperative Moods.

A.—1. Mors finiet nostram vitam. 2. Leones non reperitis in Gallia. 3. Discipulos diligentes non puniemus. 4. Persae castra muniebant et custodiebant. 5. Dum tu dormiebas, ego te custodiebam. 6. Scio multas res, quas olim nesciebam. 7. Dum tu dormies, ego te custodiam. 8. Praeceptor puerorum mentes erudito. 9. Liberi parentibus obediunto. 10. Qui Deo obedit, etiam hominibus obediet.

1. The soldiers were fortifying the camp. 2. Cornelia trained her children carefully. 3. My son, obey thy mother. 4. While the citizens kept-guard, the soldiers slept. 5. We will keep-guard, and you shall sleep. 6. Now I know these things; yesterday I was-ignorant-of them. 7. You will not easily find a lion in Europe. 8. Death puts-an-end-to all the hopes of this life. 9. Carefully train your children; praise the good; punish the bad. 10. Thou shalt not bury a dead man within (in) the city.

B.—1. Natura Italiam Alpibus munivit. 2. Cicero domum suam muniverat et firmaverat. 3. Magister puniebat eos dis-

cipulos, qui non obediverant. 4. Vincîte eos, qui non obediverunt. 5. Claram vocem hujus avis non audivisti? eam non audivi. 6. Servi dominum sepeliverunt. 7. Vix milites castra muniverant, quum Caesar aciem instruxit. 8. Quum milites castra muniverint, dormient. 9. Natura oculos membranis tenuissimis vestivit. 10. Parentes mei pauperem hunc puerum nutriverant.

1. A good father will nurture, clothe, (and) train-up his children. 2. Who did not hear that very clear (*sup.*) song of the nightingale? 3. Nature has fortified the earth with mountains. 4. They bound the men with the hardest chains. 5. Lictor, bind the man! 6. Very delicate membranes clothe the eyes. 7. Punish thou the bad; give honor to the good; in-that-way thou wilt be serviceable to the commonwealth. 8. He will bind the citizens with the strongest (validus) chains. 9. That cruel mother did not nurture her own children. 10. Bind not the man, soldier! he is a Roman citizen.

Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.

C.—1. Curo ut pueri mentem erudiam. 2. Curabam, ut pueri mentem erudirem. 3. Obedit aliis, ut sibi quoque alii obediant. 4. Obediebam aliis, ut mihi quoque alii obedirent. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum gnaviter custodi(v)erim. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin puerum gnaviter custodi(v)isses. 7. Non dubito quin longinquitas temporis dolorem tuum mollitura sit. 8. Milites urbem custodire debent. 9. Nihil scire turpe est. 10. Venio auditurus, quid pater scripserit.

1. There is no doubt that length of time will assuage your grief. 2. It is easy to exercise the body; it is difficult to train the mind. 3. Who doubts that the father carefully trained the intellect of his son? 4. I will take pains to assuage (*ut* and *Subj.*) the pain of the wound. 5. I have no doubt that he is going-to-train-up (*Fut. Part.*) the boy most carefully. 6. To punish is not to train-up. 7. He bound the men with chains, that they might learn to obey. 8. It is easy to obey the feelings (animus*). 9. There is no doubt that length of time assuages both grief and anger (dolorem iramque). 10. (He) who knows not (nescio) (how) to obey, knows not (how) to command.

* Use the Singular.

XXII.—First Conjugation.—Passive Voice.

Amŏr, ămātŭs sum *or* **fuī, ămārī**: *to be loved.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

S. **Am-ŏr,**	*I am loved.*	P. **Am-āmŭr,**	*We are loved.*
Am-āris *or* **ăm-ārĕ,**	*thou art loved.*	**Am-āmĭnī,**	*you are loved.*
Am-ātŭr,	*he is loved.*	**Am-antŭr,**	*they are loved.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S. **Am-ābăr,**	*I was being loved.*	P. **Am-ābāmŭr,**	*We were being loved.*
Am-ābārĭs *or* **ăm-ābārĕ,**	*thou wast being loved.*	**Am-ābāmĭnī,**	*you were being loved.*
Am-ābātŭr,	*he was being loved.*	**Am-ābantŭr,**	*they were being loved.*

3. Future-Imperfect Tense.

S. **Am-ābŏr,**	*I shall be loved.*	P. **Am-ābĭmŭr,**	*We shall be loved.*
Am-ābĕrĭs *or* **ăm-ābĕrĕ,**	*thou wilt be loved.*	**Am-ābĭmĭnī,**	*you will be loved.*
Am-ābĭtŭr,	*he will be loved.*	**Am-ābuntŭr,**	*they will be loved.*

4. Present-Perfect Tense.

S. **Am-ātŭs sum** *or* **fuī,**	*I have been loved,* or *was loved.*	P. **Am-ātī sŭmŭs** *or* **fuĭmŭs,**	*We have been loved,* or *were loved.*
Am-ātŭs ĕs *or* **fuistī,**	*thou hast been loved,* or *wast loved.*	**Am-ātī estĭs** *or* **fuistĭs,**	*you have been loved,* or *were loved.*
Am-ātŭs est *or* **fuĭt,**	*he has been loved,* or *was loved.*	**Am-ātī sunt, fuērunt,** *or* **fuērĕ,**	*they have been loved,* or *were loved.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S. **Am-ātŭs ĕram** *or* **fuĕram,**	*I had been loved.*	P. **Am-ātī ĕrāmŭs** *or* **fuĕrāmŭs,**	*We had been loved.*
Am-ātŭs ĕrās *or* **fuĕrās,**	*thou hadst been loved.*	**Am-ātī ĕrātĭs** *or* **fuĕrātĭs,**	*you had been loved.*
Am-ātŭs ĕrăt *or* **fuĕrăt,**	*he had been loved.*	**Am-ātī ĕrant** *or* **fuĕrant,**	*they had been loved.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. **Am-ātŭs ĕro** *or* **fuĕro,**	*I shall have been loved.*	P. **Am-ātī ĕrĭmŭs** *or* **fuĕrimŭs,**	*We shall have been loved.*
Am-ātŭs ĕrĭs *or* **fuĕrĭs,**	*thou wilt have been loved.*	**Am-āti ĕrĭtĭs** *or* **fuĕritĭs,**	*you will have been loved.*
Am-ātŭs ĕrĭt *or* **fuĕrĭt,**	*he will have been loved.*	**Am-ātī ĕrunt** *or* **fuĕrint,**	*they will have been loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. Am-ārĕ,	*Be thou loved.*	*P.* Am-āmĭnī,	*Be ye* or *you loved.*

Future Tense.

S. Am-ātŏr,	*Thou shalt be loved.*	*P.* Am-āntŏr,	*They shall be loved,*
Am-ātŏr,	*he shall be loved,* or *let him be loved.*		or *let them be loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

S. Am-ĕr,	*I may be loved.*	*P.* Am-ēmŭr,	*We may be loved.*
Am-ērĭs *or* ăm-ērĕ,	*thou mayst be loved.*	Am-ēmĭnī,	*you may be loved.*
Am-ētŭr,	*he may be loved.*	Am-entŭr,	*they may be loved.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S. Am-ārĕr,	*I might be loved.*	*P.* Am-ārēmŭr,	*We might be loved.*
Am-ārērĭs *or* ăm-ārērĕ,	*thou mightst be loved.*	Am-ārēmĭnī,	*you might be loved.*
Am-ārētŭr,	*he might be loved.*	Am-ārentŭr,	*they might be loved.*

3. Present-Perfect Tense.

S. Am-ātŭs sim *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been loved.*	*P.* Am-ātī sīmŭs *or* fuĕrimŭs,	*We may have been loved.*
Am-ātŭs sīs *or* fuĕrĭs,	*thou mayst have been loved.*	Am-ātī sītĭs *or* fuĕritĭs,	*you may have been loved.*
Am-ātŭs sĭt *or* fuĕrĭt,	*he may have been loved.*	Am-ātī sint *or* fuĕrint,	*they may have been loved.*

4. Past-Perfect Tense.

S. Am-ātŭs essem *or* fuissem,	*I might have been loved.*	*P.* Am-ātī essēmŭs *or* fuissēmŭs,	*We might have been loved.*
Am-ātŭs essēs *or* fuissēs,	*thou mightst have been loved.*	Am-ātī essētĭs *or* fuissētĭs,	*you might have been loved.*
Am-ātŭs essĕt *or* fuissĕt,	*he might have been loved.*	Am-ātī essent *or* fuissent,	*they might have been loved.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	Am-ārī,	*to be loved.*
Perfect.	Am-ātum (am, um) essĕ *or* fuissĕ,	*to have been loved.*
Future.	Am-ātum īrī,	*to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	Am-ātŭs (a, um),	*loved,* or *having been loved.*
Gerundive.	Am-andŭs (a, um),	*fit to be loved.*

XXIII.—Second Conjugation.—Passive Voice.

Mŏneŏr, mŏnĭtŭs sum *or* **fuī, mŏnērī**: *to be advised.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

S. **Mŏn-eŏr,**	*I am advised.*	*P.* **Mŏn-ēmŭr,**	*We are advised.*
Mŏn-ērĭs *or* **mŏn-ērĕ,**	*thou art advised.*	**Mŏn-ēmĭnī,**	*you are advised.*
Mŏn-ētŭr,	*he is advised.*	**Mŏn-entŭr,**	*they are advised.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S. **Mŏn-ēbăr,**	*I was being advised.*	*P.* **Mŏn-ēbāmŭr,**	*We were being advised.*
Mŏn-ēbārĭs *or* **mŏn-ēbārĕ,**	*thou wast being advised.*	**Mŏn-ēbāmĭnī,**	*you were being advised.*
Mŏn-ēbātŭr,	*he was being advised.*	**Mŏn-ēbantŭr,**	*they were being advised.*

3. Future-Imperfect Tense.

S. **Mŏn-ēbŏr,**	*I shall be advised.*	*P.* **Mŏn-ēbĭmŭr,**	*We shall be advised.*
Mŏn-ēbĕrĭs *or* **mŏn-ēbĕrĕ,**	*thou wilt be advised.*	**Mŏn-ēbĭmĭnī,**	*you will be advised.*
Mŏn-ēbĭtŭr,	*he will be advised.*	**Mŏn-ēbuntŭr,**	*they will be advised.*

4. Present-Perfect Tense.

S. **Mŏn-ĭtŭs sum** *or* **fuī,**	*I have been advised,* or *was advised.*	*P.* **Mŏn-ĭti sŭmŭs** *or* **fuĭmŭs,**	*We have been advised,* or *were advised.*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕs *or* **fuistī,**	*thou hast been advised,* or *wast advised.*	**Mŏn-ĭtī estĭs** *or* **fuistĭs,**	*you have been advised,* or *were advised.*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs est *or* **fuĭt,**	*he has been advised,* or *was advised.*	**Mŏn-ĭtī sunt, fuērunt,** *or* **fuērĕ,**	*they have been advised,* or *were advised.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S. **Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕram** *or* **fuĕram,**	*I had been advised.*	*P.* **Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrāmŭs** *or* **fuĕrāmŭs,**	*We had been advised.*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrās *or* **fuĕrās,**	*thou hadst been advised.*	**Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrātĭs** *or* **fuĕrātĭs,**	*you had been advised.*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrăt *or* **fuĕrăt,**	*he had been advised.*	**Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrant** *or* **fuĕrant,**	*they had been advised.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. **Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕro** *or* **fuĕrŏ,**	*I shall have been advised.*	*P.* **Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrimŭs** *or* **fuĕrimŭs,**	*We shall have been advised.*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrĭs *or* **fuĕrĭs,**	*thou wilt have been advised.*	**Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrĭtĭs** *or* **fuĕrĭtĭs,**	*you will have been advised.*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrĭt *or* **fuĕrĭt,**	*he will have been advised.*	**Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrunt** *or* **fuĕrint,**	*they will have been advised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S.	Mŏn-ērĕ, *Be thou advised.*	*P.*	Mŏn-ēmĭnī, *Be ye* or *you advised*

Future Tense.

S.	Mŏn-ētŏr, *Thou shalt be advised.* Mŏn-ētŏr, *he shall be advised*, or *let him be advised.*	*P.*	Mŏn-entŏr, *They shall be advised*, or *let them be advised.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

S.	Mŏn-eăr, *I may be advised.*	*P.*	Mŏn-eāmŭr, *We may be advised.*
	Mŏn-eārĭs *or* mŏn-eārĕ, *thou mayst be advised.*		Mŏn-eāmĭnī, *you may be advised.*
	Mŏn-eātŭr, *he may be advised.*		Mŏn-eantŭr, *they may be advised.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S.	Mŏn-ērĕr, *I might be advised.*	*P.*	Mŏn-ērēmŭr, *We might be advised.*
	Mŏn-ērērĭs *or* mŏn-ērērĕ, *thou mightst be advised.*		Mŏn-ērēmĭnī, *you might be advised.*
	Mŏn-ērētŭr, *he might be advised.*		Mŏn-ērentŭr, *they might be advised.*

3. Present-Perfect Tense.

S.	Mŏn-ĭtŭs sim *or* fuĕrim, *I may have been advised.*	*P.*	Mŏn-ĭtī sīmŭs, *or* fuĕrimŭs, *We may have been advised.*
	Mŏn-ĭtŭs sĭs *or* fuĕrĭs, *thou mayst have been advised.*		Mŏn-ĭtī sītĭs *or* fuĕritĭs, *you may have been advised.*
	Mŏn-ĭtŭs sĭt *or* fuĕrĭt, *he may have been advised.*		Mŏn-ĭtī sint *or* fuĕrint, *they may have been advised.*

4. Past-Perfect Tense.

S.	Mŏn-ĭtŭs essem *or* fuissem, *I might have been advised.*	*P.*	Mŏn-ĭtī essēmŭs *or* fuissēmŭs, *We might have been advised.*
	Mŏn-ĭtŭs essēs *or* fuissēs, *thou mightst have been advised.*		Mŏn-ĭtī essētis *or* fuissētis, *you might have been advised.*
	Mŏn-ĭtŭs essĕt *or* fuissĕt, *he might have been advised.*		Mŏn-ĭtī essent *or* fuissent, *they might have been advised.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	Mŏn-ērī,	*to be advised.*
Perfect.	Mŏn-ĭtum (am, um), essĕ *or* fuissĕ,	*to have been advised.*
Future.	Mŏn-ĭtum īrī,	*to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	Mŏn-ĭtŭs (a, um),	*advised*, or *having been advised.*
Gerundive.	Mŏn-endŭs (a, um),	*fit to be advised.*

XXIV.—Third Conjugation.—Passive Voice.

Rĕgŏr, rectŭs sum *or* **fui, rĕgī**: *to be ruled.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

S. **Rĕg-ŏr,**	*I am ruled.*	*P.* **Rĕg-ĭmŭr,**	*We are ruled.*
Rĕg-ĕrĭs *or* **rĕg-ĕre,**	*thou art ruled.*	**Rĕg-ĭmĭnī,**	*you are ruled.*
Rĕg-ĭtŭr,	*he is ruled.*	**Rĕg-untŭr,**	*they are ruled.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S. **Rĕg-ēbăr,**	*I was being ruled.*	*P.* **Rĕg-ēbāmŭr,**	*We were being ruled.*
Rĕg-ēbārĭs *or* **rĕg-ēbāre,**	*thou wast being ruled.*	**Rĕg-ēbāmĭnī,**	*you were being ruled.*
Rĕg-ēbātŭr,	*he was being ruled.*	**Rĕg-ēbantŭr,**	*they were being ruled.*

3. Future-Imperfect Tense.

S. **Rĕg-ăr,**	*I shall be ruled.*	*P.* **Rĕg-ēmŭr,**	*We shall be ruled.*
Rĕg-ērĭs *or* **rĕg-ērĕ,**	*thou wilt be ruled.*	**Rĕg-ēmĭnī,**	*you will be ruled.*
Rĕg-ētŭr,	*he will be ruled.*	**Rĕg-entŭr,**	*they will be ruled.*

4. Present-Perfect Tense.

S. **Rec-tŭs sum** *or* **fuī,**	*I have been ruled,* or *was ruled.*	*P.* **Rec-tī sŭmŭs** *or* **fuĭmŭs,**	*We have been ruled,* or *were ruled.*
Rec-tŭs ĕs *or* **fuistī,**	*thou hast been ruled,* or *wast ruled.*	**Rec-tī estĭs** *or* **fuistĭs,**	*you have been ruled,* or *were ruled.*
Rec-tŭs est *or* **fuĭt,**	*he has been ruled,* or *was ruled.*	**Rec-tī sunt, fuērunt,** *or* **fuērĕ,**	*they have been ruled,* or *were ruled.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S. **Rec-tŭs ĕram** *or* **fuĕram,**	*I had been ruled.*	*P.* **Rec-tī ĕrāmŭs** *or* **fuĕrāmŭs,**	*We had been ruled.*
Rec-tŭs ĕrās *or* **fuĕrās,**	*thou hadst been ruled.*	**Rec-tī ĕrātĭs** *or* **fuĕrātĭs,**	*you had been ruled.*
Rec-tŭs ĕrăt *or* **fuĕrăt,**	*he had been ruled.*	**Rec-tī ĕrant** *or* **fuĕrant,**	*they had been ruled.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. **Rec-tŭs ĕro** *or* **fuĕro,**	*I shall have been ruled.*	*P.* **Rec-tī ĕrĭmŭs** *or* **fuĕrĭmŭs,**	*We shall have been ruled.*
Rec-tŭs ĕrĭs *or* **fuĕrĭs,**	*thou wilt have been ruled.*	**Rec-tī ĕrĭtĭs** *or* **fuĕrĭtĭs,**	*you will have been ruled.*
Rec-tŭs ĕrĭt *or* **fuĕrĭt,**	*he will have been ruled.*	**Rec-tī ĕrunt** *or* **fuĕrint,**	*they will have been ruled.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. Rĕg-ĕrĕ, *Be thou ruled.*	*P.* Rĕg-ĭmĭnĭ, *Be ye or you ruled.*

Future Tense.

S. Rĕg-ĭtŏr, *Thou shalt be ruled.* Rĕg-ĭtŏr, *he shall be ruled,* or *let him be ruled.*	*P.* Rĕg-untŏr, *They shall be ruled,* or *let them be ruled.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

S. Rĕg-ăr,	*I may be ruled.*	*P.* Rĕg-āmŭr,	*We may be ruled.*
Rĕg-ārĭs *or* rĕg-ārĕ,	*thou mayst be ruled.*	Rĕg-āmĭnĭ,	*you may be ruled.*
Rĕg-ātŭr,	*he may be ruled.*	Rĕg-antŭr,	*they may be ruled.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S. Rĕg-ĕrĕr,	*I might be ruled.*	*P.* Rĕg-ĕrēmŭr,	*We might be ruled.*
Rĕg-ĕrērĭs *or* rĕg-ĕrērĕ,	*thou mightst be ruled.*	Rĕg-ĕrēmĭnĭ,	*you might be ruled.*
Rĕg-ĕrētŭr,	*he might be ruled.*	Rĕg-ĕrentŭr,	*they might be ruled.*

3. Present-Perfect Tense.

S. Rec-tŭs sim *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been ruled.*	*P.* Rec-tī sīmŭs *or* fuĕrimŭs,	*We may have been ruled.*
Rec-tŭs sis *or* fuĕrĭs,	*thou mayst have been ruled.*	Rec-tī sītis *or* fuĕritĭs,	*you may have been ruled.*
Rec-tŭs sit *or* fuĕrĭt,	*he may have been ruled.*	Rec-tī sint *or* fuĕrint,	*they may have been ruled.*

4. Past-Perfect Tense.

S. Rec-tŭs essem *or* fuissem,	*I might have been ruled.*	*P.* Rec-tī essēmŭs *or* fuissēmŭs,	*We might have been ruled.*
Rec-tŭs essēs *or* fuissēs,	*thou mightst have been ruled.*	Rec-tī essētis *or* fuissētis,	*you might have been ruled.*
Rec-tŭs esset *or* fuisset,	*he might have been ruled.*	Rec-tī essent *or* fuissent,	*they might have been ruled.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	Rĕg-ī,	*to be ruled.*
Perfect.	Rec-tum (am, um) essĕ *or* fuissĕ,	*to have been ruled.*
Future.	Rec-tum īrī,	*to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	Rec-tŭs (a, um),	*ruled,* or *having been ruled*
Gerundive.	Rĕg-endŭs (a, um),	*fit to be ruled.*

XXV.—Fourth Conjugation.—Passive Voice.

Audiŏr, audītŭs sum *or* **fuī, audīrī**: *to be heard.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

S. **Aud-iŏr,**	*I am heard.*	*P.* **Aud-īmŭr,**	*We are heard.*
Aud-īrĭs *or* **aud-īrĕ,**	*thou art heard.*	**Aud-īmĭnī,**	*you are heard.*
Aud-ītŭr,	*he is heard.*	**Aud-iuntŭr,**	*they are heard.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S. **Aud-iēbăr,**	*I was being heard.*	*P.* **Aud-iēbāmŭr,**	*We were being heard.*
Aud-iēbārĭs *or* **aud-iēbārĕ,**	*thou wast being heard.*	**Aud-iēbāmĭnī,**	*you were being heard.*
Aud-iēbātŭr,	*he was being heard.*	**Aud-iēbantŭr,**	*they were being heard.*

3. Future-Imperfect Tense.

S. **Aud-iăr,**	*I shall be heard.*	*P.* **Aud-iēmŭr,**	*We shall be heard.*
Aud-iērĭs *or* **aud-iērĕ,**	*thou wilt be heard.*	**Aud-iēmĭnī,**	*you will be heard.*
Aud-iētŭr,	*he will be heard.*	**Aud-ientŭr,**	*they will be heard.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S. **Aud-ītŭs sum** *or* **fuī,**	*I have been heard,* or *was heard.*	*P.* **Aud-ītī sŭmŭs** *or* **fuĭmŭs,**	*We have been heard,* or *were heard.*
Aud-ītŭs ĕs *or* **fuistī,**	*thou hast been heard,* or *wast heard.*	**Aud-ītī estĭs** *or* **fuistĭs,**	*you have been heard,* or *were heard.*
Aud-ītŭs est *or* **fuĭt,**	*he has been heard,* or *was heard.*	**Aud-ītī sunt, fuērunt,** *or* **fuērĕ,**	*they have been heard,* or *were heard.*

5. Past-Perfect Tense.

S. **Aud-ītŭs ĕram** *or* **fuĕram,**	*I had been heard.*	*P.* **Aud-ītī ĕrāmŭs** *or* **fuĕrāmŭs,**	*We had been heard.*
Aud-ītŭs ĕrās *or* **fuĕrās,**	*thou hadst been heard.*	**Aud-ītī ĕrātĭs,** *or* **fuĕrātĭs,**	*you had been heard.*
Aud-ītŭs ĕrăt *or* **fuĕrăt,**	*he had been heard.*	**Aud-ītī ĕrant** *or* **fuĕrant,**	*they had been heard.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. **Aud-ītŭs ĕro** *or* **fuĕro,**	*I shall have been heard.*	*P.* **Aud-ītī ĕrĭmŭs** *or* **fuĕrimŭs,**	*We shall have been heard.*
Aud-ītŭs ĕrĭs *or* **fuĕrĭs,**	*thou wilt have been heard.*	**Aud-ītī ĕrĭtĭs** *or* **fuĕritĭs,**	*you will have been heard.*
Aud-ītŭs ĕrĭt *or* **fuĕrĭt,**	*he will have been heard.*	**Aud-ītī ĕrunt** *or* **fuĕrint,**	*they will have been heard.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. Aud-īrĕ,	*Be thou heard.*	*P.* Aud-īmĭnī,	*Be ye* or *you heard.*

Future Tense.

S. Aud-ītŏr,	*Thou shalt be heard.*	*P.* Aud-iuntŏr,	*They shall be heard,*
Aud-ītŏr,	*he shall be heard,* or *let him be heard.*		or *let them be heard.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

S. Aud-iăr,	*I may be heard.*	*P.* Aud-iāmŭr,	*We may be heard.*
Aud-iārĭs *or* aud-iārĕ,	*thou mayst be heard.*	Aud-iāmĭnī,	*you may be heard.*
Aud-iātŭr,	*he may be heard.*	Aud-iantŭr,	*they may be heard.*

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

S. Aud-īrĕr,	*I might be heard.*	*P.* Aud-īrēmŭr,	*We might be heard.*
Aud-īrērĭs *or* aud-īrērĕ,	*thou mightst be heard.*	Aud-īrēmĭnī,	*you might be heard.*
Aud-īrētŭr,	*he might be heard.*	Aud-īrentŭr,	*they might be heard.*

3. Present-Perfect Tense.

S. Aud-ītŭs sim *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been heard.*	*P.* Aud-ītī sīmŭs *or* fuĕrimŭs,	*We may have been heard.*
Aud-ītŭs sīs *or* fuĕrīs,	*thou mayst have been heard.*	Aud-ītī sītĭs *or* fuĕritĭs,	*you may have been heard.*
Aud-ītŭs sĭt *or* fuĕrĭt,	*he may have been heard.*	Aud-ītī sint *or* fuĕrint,	*they may have been heard.*

4. Past-Perfect Tense.

S. Aud-ītŭs essem *or* fuissem,	*I might have been heard.*	*P.* Aud-ītī essēmŭs *or* fuissēmŭs,	*We might have been heard.*
Aud-ītŭs essēs *or* fuissēs,	*thou mightst have been heard.*	Aud-ītī essētĭs *or* fuissētĭs,	*you might have been heard.*
Aud-ītŭs essĕt *or* fuissĕt,	*he might have been heard.*	Aud-ītī essent *or* fuissent,	*they might have been heard.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	Aud-īrī,	*to be heard.*
Perfect.	Aud-ītum (am, um) essĕ *or* fuissĕ,	*to have been heard.*
Future.	Aud-ītum īrī,	*to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	Aud-ītŭs (a, um),	*heard,* or *having been heard.*
Gerundive.	Aud-iendŭs (a, um),	*fit to be heard.*

First Conjugation.—Passive Voice.

Rule 15.—A proposition in the active voice may also be expressed by the passive voice, the accusative being changed into the nominative, and the nominative into the ablative: if the ablative expresses a living being, the preposition **ā** or **ăb** is prefixed; as, **măgistĕr pŭĕrum laudăt**, *the master praises the boy*, becomes in the passive, **puĕr ā măgistrō laudātŭr**, *the boy is praised by the master.*

Vocabulary 29.

ēdŭco (āre, etc., 1),	*I educate.*	**grăvĭter,** *adv.*	*heavily, severely.*
ēdūco (xi, ctum, 3),	*I lead out.*	**Lycurgus, i,** *m.*	*Lycurgus, the Spartan legislator.*
fŭgo (āre, etc., 1),	*I put to flight.*	**Trōja, ae,** *f.*	*Troy, the city of Priam.*
vulnĕro (āre, etc., 1),	*I wound.*	**Vesta, ae,** *f.*	*Vesta, the Roman goddess of fire and of the hearth.*
Antĭŏchus, i, *m.*	*Antiochus, a name of kings of Syria.*	**virtus, ūtis,** *f.*	*valor, virtue, good quality.*
ēgrĕgius, a, um,	*excellent, eminent.*		

Exercise XXIX.

A.—1. Multi milites in proelio vulnerabantur. 2. Pueri attenti a magistris laudabantur. 3. Troja a Graecis expugnata est. 4. Leges egregiae a Lycurgo datae sunt. 5. Duces exercitus nostri in proelio vulnerati sunt. 6. Antiocho regi pax a Romanis data est. 7. Fugari et superari dulce non est. 8. Puer bene educator. 9. Puer, bene educatus, omnibus placet. 10. Quum rex urbem intravit, omnium civium domus floribus ornatae erant.

1. The good (men) are praised; the bad are blamed. 2. He was severely wounded. 3. In the first battle the Romans were overcome. 4. Immense forces had been raised (paro) by the enemy. 5. The temple of Vesta was built by Numa Pompilius. 6. Antiochus was overcome by the Roman general. 7. The town was assaulted. 8. The city was not taken-by-storm by Hannibal. 9. It is a small-thing to be adorned with gold and silver. 10. The whole land (ager) was laid-waste by the enemy.

B.—1. Pater curat ut ego bene edŭcer. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego bene educarer. 3. Curo, ut puer bene educetur. 4.

Curabam, ut puer bene educaretur. 5. Non dubito quin hostes a militibus nostris superati sint. 6. Non dubitabam, quin hostes a militibus nostris superati essent. 7. Nemo dubitat quin urbs ab hostibus expugnata sit. 8. Nemo dubitabat, quin urbs ab hostibus expugnata esset. 9. Exercitus noster pugnat, ut urbs servetur. 10. Exercitus noster pugnabat, ut urbs servaretur.

1. Cornelia took-care that her children should be well educated. 2. Who doubts that the boy has been carefully educated? 3. I will take-care that the girl may be adorned with good-qualities. 4. There is no doubt that the city has been assaulted. 5. To be put-to-flight is not always to be overcome. 6. Let arms be made-ready; let the gates of the city be strengthened. 7. The general takes-care that the gates should be strengthened. 8. Let not the good be blamed; let not the bad be praised! 9. We were put to flight, but we were not overcome. 10. There is no doubt that Pompey was overcome by Caesar.

Second Conjugation.—Passive Voice.

Vocabulary 30.

mănĕo (nsi, nsum, 2),	*I remain.*	**Nĕro, ōnis,** *m.*	*Nero, a Roman family name.*
mŏveo (ōvi, ōtum, 2),	*I move, disturb.*	**strēnuē,** *adv.*	*vigorously.*
tĭmeo (ui, *no sup.*, **2),**	*I fear.*	**stŭdium, ii,** *n.*	*zeal, pursuit, study.*
adventus, ūs, *m.*	*arrival.*	**sŭbĭtus, a, um,**	*sudden.*
strēnuus, a, um,	*vigorous.*		

Exercise XXX.

A.—1. Discipuli a magistro docentur. 2. Amari major est laus quam timeri. 3. Fortis vir nullis periculis movebitur. 4. Nero ab omnibus Romanis timebatur. 5. Incolae illius urbis hostium adventu territi sunt. 6. Moniti sumus, ut diligentiores essemus. 7. Puer strenue exercetor. 8. Hostes territi in urbe manserunt. 9. Pueri in litterarum studiis gnaviter exerciti sunt. 10. Monemini ut diligentiores sitis.

1. The pupil is taught by the master. 2. The walls were destroyed. 3. The citizens had been terrified. 4. You have been taught by your father. 5. It is a great thing to be well taught. 6. All the citizens were terrified (at) his (ejus) arrival (abl.). 7. Nero was grievously feared by all the citizens.

8. It is not pleasant to be feared by the good; it is very-pleasant to be feared by the bad. 9. Let the bodies of the children be actively exercised. 10. You had been warned, but you did not obey.

B.—1. Pater curat, ut ego strenue exercear. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego strenue exercerer. 3. Curo, ut strenue exerceare. 4. Curabam, ut strenue exercerere. 5. Curo ut puer strenue exerceatur. 6. Curabam ut puer strenue exerceretur. 7. Nemo dubitat quin puer a me semper bene monitus sit. 8. Nemo dubitavit quin puer a me semper bene monitus esset. 9. Non est dubium quin milites subito periculo territi sint. 10. Non erat dubium quin milites subito periculo territi essent.

1. He-was-taking-care that his body might be vigorously exercised. 2. I will take care that the boys are carefully taught. 3. A good mother will take-care that her daughter is carefully taught. 4. I do not doubt that the whole city was terrified at his arrival. 5. There is no doubt that the citizens were alarmed by the sudden danger. 6. Let not the citizens be troubled (moved) by the arrival of the enemy. 7. (Our) father took care that we should be carefully taught. 8. I have taken care that my sons should be carefully taught. 9. Brave men will not be suddenly terrified. 10. Virtue is the most beautiful of (all) things; take care that it is diligently exercised.

THIRD CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

VOCABULARY 31.

affĭgo, ixi, ictum, 3,	*I cast down, I prostrate.*
cŏlo, cŏlui, cultum, 3,	*I cultivate, cherish,* etc.
dĭlĭgo, lexi, lectum, 3,	*I esteem, I love.*
fingo, nxi, fictum, 3,	*I frame, feign, invent.*
clādes, is, *f.*	*disaster, defeat.*
fābŭla, ae, *f.*	*fable, story.*
nōbĭlis, e,	*distinguished.*
perversus, a, um,	*willful, perverse.*
quĭdem, *conj.*	*indeed.*
Phăĕthon, ontis, *m.*	*Phaëthon, a son of Apollo.*
stŭdeo, ui, 2,	*I am eager, zealous.*
vĕho, exi, ectum, 3,	*I carry;* in Pass., *I ride.*
vinco, vīci, victum, 3,	*I conquer.*
prŏbe, *adv.*	*rightly, properly.*
rătio, onis, *f.*	*reason.*
Scīpio, onis, *m.*	*Scipio, a Roman noble name.*
vĕhĕmenter, *adv.*	*vehemently, warmly.*

Exercise XXXI.

A.—1. Omnis hic mundus a Deo regitur. 2. Respublica Romana a consulibus regebatur. 3. Ripae Rheni ponte junguntur. 4. Urbs muro cincta erat. 5. Graecia perversis suis consiliis afflicta est. 6. Si semper bene vixeris, ab omnibus diligēre. 7. Quum urbs ab hostibus oppugnabatur, a civibus defendebatur. 8. Conjuratio Catilinae a Cicerone detecta est. 9. Multae fabulae a poetis fictae sunt. 10. Vix acies a Caesare instructa erat, quum hostes in unum locum convolaverunt.

1. Hannibal was conquered by Scipio. 2. The commonwealth was severely cast-down. 3. He was esteemed and was loved by all. 4. This story was invented by the poets. 5. The memory of the man will always be cherished (colo) by his fellow-citizens. 6. The conspiracy is discovered; the commonwealth is preserved. 7. You will be loved by many. 8. The town is being assaulted indeed (quidem), but it is not taken. 9. In that most celebrated (nobilis) battle Carthage was cast-down. 10. A bridge was thrown over the Rhine by Caesar. (*Say*, The River Rhine was joined with a bridge by Caesar.)

B.—1. Pater curat, ut ego probe excolar. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego probe excolerer. 3. Curo, ut puer probe excolatur. 4. Curabam, ut puer probe excoleretur. 5. Phaethon vehementer optat, ut patris curru vehatur. 6. Phaethon vehementer optavit, ut patris curru veheretur. 7. Dicit mihi, quid tibi a sorore scriptum sit.* 8. Dixit mihi, quid tibi a sorore scriptum esset.* 9. Puer probe excolitor. 10. Sapientes semper ratione rĕgi student.

1. I will take-care that he may be rightly cultivated. 2. He took care that the boy might be rightly cultivated. 3. We vehemently wish that the enemy may be conquered. 4. Cicero vehemently desired that all (things) might be discovered. 5. Let-us-be-zealous to be ruled by reason. 6. All are zealous to rule, not to be ruled. 7. Tell me (*Dat.*) what (quae, neuter plural) was written (*Pres. Perf. Subj.**) to thee. 8. He told me (*Dat.*) what (quae) had been written (*Past-Perf. Subj.**). 9. The boy wishes that he may ride in the chariot. 10. The boy was wishing that he might ride in the chariot.

* The rule for this use of the Subjunctive is given subsequently. See p. 127.

Fourth Conjugation.—Passive Voice.

Vocabulary 32.

cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, 3,	*I fall.*	**lăpĭdeus, a, um,**	*of stone.*
āĕr, ĕris, *m.*	*the air.*	**negōtium, ii,** *n.*	*a thing, business.*
Africānus, i, *m.*	*Africanus, a surname of the Scipios.*	**pellis, is,** *f.*	*skin* (of an animal).
		prius, *adv.*	*sooner, before.*
cognĭtio, ōnis, *f.*	*knowledge, inquiry.*	**Pūnicus, a, um,**	*Punic, Carthaginian.*
ērŭdītus, a, um,	*trained, educated.*	**Sōcrătes, is,** *m.*	*Socrates, the sage of Athens.*
Gracchus, i, *m.*	*Gracchus, a Roman family name.*	**sōlum,** *adv.*	*only.*
		summus, a, um,	*highest, utmost, greatest.*
injustē, *adv.*	*unjustly.*	**Tĭbĕrius, ii,** *m.*	*Tiberius, a common Roman forename* (cont. Ti.).
justē, *adv.*	*justly.*		
lăpis, ĭdis, *m.*	*a stone.*		

Exercise XXXII.

A.—1. Pueri a magistris erudiuntur. 2. Improbi homines a Deo punientur. 3. Bellum Punicum secundum finitum est a Scipione Africano. 4. Omnes dolores morte finientur. 5. Pisces in mari, aves in aëre a Deo nutriuntur. 6. Oculi tenuissimis membranis a natura vestiti sunt. 7. Veteres Britanniae incolae pellibus vestiebantur. 8. Corpora eorum, qui in pugna ceciderunt, sepeliuntor. 9. Urbes munitae ab hostibus non expugnabantur. 10. Non prius dormiemus, quam negotia vestra finita erunt (*prius quam*, before that).

1. The Britons used-to-clothe-themselves (*Past-Imp. Pass.*) with skins. 2. The cities had been fortified with stone (*Adj.*) walls. 3. The sons of Tiberius Gracchus had been carefully trained by their mother. 4. The bodies were buried with the highest honors. 5. The generals were punished because they had not buried the bodies. 6. These two boys had been trained by their mother carefully. 7. The camp had not been fortified. 8. This life of-ours (nostra) will be found exceedingly-short (*Sup.*). 9. When the city has been fortified (*Fut.-Perf.*), the citizens will defend it. 10. The city is fortified and made strong with guards.

B.—1. Pater curat, ut ego diligenter erudiar. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego diligenter erudirer. 3. Curo, ut diligenter erudiare. 4. Curabam, ut diligenter erudirere. 5. Curabam, ut puer bene educaretur, strenue exerceretur, probe excolere-

tur, diligenter erudiretur. 6. O puer, diligenter eruditor! 7. Bonus discipulus litterarum cognitione erudiri studet. 8. Homo eruditus non solum sibi, sed etiam aliis prodest. 9. Nemo dubitat, quin puer a me gnaviter custoditus sit. 10. Nemo dubitavit, quin puella a me gnaviter custodita sit.

1. Let the boys be carefully trained. 2. Let not the boys be trained by wicked men. 3. I will take care that my son is carefully trained. 4. I took care that my son should not be trained by a wicked master. 5. There is no doubt that the boys have been carefully trained. 6. Who doubts that it is better to be trained by a good master than by a bad one? 7. Who doubts that Socrates was unjustly punished? 8. It is not disgraceful to be unjustly punished. 9. Take care that the boy is well trained. 10. Well-trained boys love their master.

XXVI.—THIRD CONJUGATION (*mixed with the Fourth*).

Căpio, cēpī, captum, căpĕrĕ: *to take.*

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. *Present-Imperfect Tense.*

S.	**Căp-io,**	*I take.*	*P.*	**Căp-ĭmŭs,**	*We take.*
	Căp-is,	*thou takest.*		**Căp-ĭtis,**	*you take.*
	Căp-it,	*he takes.*		**Căp-iunt,**	*they take.*

2. *Past-Imperfect Tense.*

S.	**Căp-iēbam,**	*I was taking.*	*P.*	**Căp-iēbāmŭs,**	*We were taking.*
	Căp-iēbās,	*thou wast taking.*		**Căp-iēbātis,**	*you were taking.*
	Căp-iēbăt,	*he was taking.*		**Căp-iēbant,**	*they were taking.*

3. *Future-Imperfect Tense.*

S.	**Căp-iam,**	*I shall take.*	*P.*	**Căp-iēmŭs,**	*We shall take.*
	Căp-iēs,	*thou wilt take.*		**Căp-iētis,**	*you will take.*
	Căp-iĕt,	*he will take.*		**Căp-ient,**	*they will take.*

4. *Present-Perfect Tense.*

Cēp-i, *I have taken,* or *I took,* like **rexi.**

5. *Past-Perfect Tense.*

Cēp-ĕram, *I had taken,* like **rexĕram.**

6. *Future-Perfect Tense.*

Cēp-ĕro, *I shall have taken,* like **rexĕro.**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. *Present-Imperfect Tense.*

S. **Căp-iam,**	*I may take.*	*P.* **Căp-iāmus,**	*We may take.*
Căp-iās,	*thou mayst take.*	**Căp-iātis,**	*you may take.*
Căp-iăt,	*he may take.*	**Căp-iant,**	*they may take.*

2. *Past-Imperfect Tense.*

S. **Căp-ĕrem,**	*I might take.*	*P.* **Căp-ĕrēmŭs,**	*We might take.*
Căp-ĕrēs,	*thou mightst take.*	**Căp-ĕrētis,**	*you might take.*
Căp-ĕrĕt,	*he might take.*	**Căp-ĕrent,**	*they might take.*

3. *Present-Perfect Tense.*

Cēp-ĕrim, *I may have taken,* like **rexĕrim.**

4. *Past-Perfect Tense.*

Cēp-issem, *I might have taken,* like **rexissem.**

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. **Căp-ĕ,**	*Take thou.*	*P.* **Căp-ĭtĕ,**	*Take ye* or *you.*

Future Tense.

S. **Căp-ĭto,**	*Thou shalt take.*	*P.* **Căp-ĭtōtĕ,**	*You shall take.*
Căp-ĭto,	*he shall take,* or *let him take.*	**Căp-iunto,**	*they shall take,* or *let them take.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	**Căp-ĕre,**	*to take.*
Perfect.	**Cēp-isse,**	*to have taken.*
Future.	**Cap-tūrum esse,**	*to be about to take.*

GERUND.

Gen.	**Căp-iendi,**	*of taking.*
Dat.	**Căp-iendo,**	*for taking.*
Acc.	**Căp-iendum,**	*the taking.*
Abl.	**Căp-iendo,**	*by taking.*

SUPINES.

Cap-tum,	*to take.*
Cap-tu,	*to be taken.*

PARTICIPLES.

Imperfect.	**Căp-iens,**	*taking.*
Future.	**Cap-tūrus,**	*about to take.*

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. *Present-Imperfect Tense.*

S. **Căp-ĭŏr,**	*I am taken.*	*P.* **Căp-ĭmŭr,**	*We are taken.*
Căp-ĕris or **-ĕrĕ,**	*thou art taken.*	**Căp-ĭminī,**	*you are taken.*
Căp-ĭtŭr,	*he is taken.*	**Căp-iuntŭr,**	*they are taken.*

2. *Past-Imperfect Tense.*

S. **Căp-iēbar,**	*I was being taken.*	*P.* **Căp-iēbāmŭr,**	*We were being taken.*
Căp-iēbāris *or* **cap-iēbāre,**	*thou wast being taken.*	**Căp-iēbāmĭni,**	*you were being taken.*
Căp-iēbātŭr,	*he was being taken.*	**Căp-iēbantŭr,**	*they were being taken.*

3. *Future-Imperfect Tense.*

S. **Căp-iar,**	*I shall be taken.*	*P.* **Căp-iēmŭr,**	*We shall be taken.*
Căp-iēris *or* **căp-iēre,**	*thou wilt be taken.*	**Căp-iēmĭni,**	*you will be taken.*
Căp-iētŭr,	*he will be taken.*	**Căp-ientŭr,**	*they will be taken.*

4. *Present-Perfect Tense.*

Cap-tus sum *or* **fui,** { *I have been taken,* or *I was taken,* } like { **rectus sum** *or* **fui.** }

5. *Past-Perfect Tense.*

Cap-tus ĕram *or* **fuĕram,** *I had been taken,* like { **rectus ĕram** *or* **fuĕram.** }

6. *Future-Perfect Tense.*

Cap-tus ĕro *or* **fuĕro,** *I shall have been taken,* like { **rectus ĕro** *or* **fuero.** }

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. *Present-Imperfect Tense.*

S. **Căp-iar,**	*I may be taken.*	*P.* **Căp-iāmŭr,**	*We may be taken.*
Căp-iāris *or* **cap-iāre,**	*thou mayst be taken.*	**Căp-iāmĭni,**	*you may be taken.*
Cap-iātŭr,	*he may be taken.*	**Căp-iantŭr,**	*they may be taken.*

2. *Past-Imperfect Tense.*

S. **Căp-ĕrer,**	*I might be taken.*	*P.* **Căp-ĕrēmŭr,**	*We might be taken.*
Căp-ĕrēris *or* **căp-ĕrēre,**	*thou mightst be taken.*	**Căp-ĕrēmĭni,**	*you might be taken.*
Căp-ĕrētur,	*he might be taken.*	**Căp-ĕrentur,**	*they might be taken.*

3. *Present-Perfect Tense.*

Cap-tus sim *or* **fuĕrim,** *I may have been taken,* like { **rectus sim** *or* **fuĕrim.** }

4. *Past-Perfect Tense.*

Cap-tus essem *or* **fuissem,** *I might have been taken,* like { **rectus essem** *or* **fuissem.** }

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. **Căp-ĕrĕ,** *Be thou taken.*		*P.* **Căp-ĭmĭni,** *Be ye* or *you taken.*	

Future Tense.

S. **Căp-ĭtŏr,** *Thou shalt be taken.*		*P.* **Căp-iuntor,** *They shall be taken,*	
Căp-ĭtŏr, *he shall be taken,* or *let him be taken.*		or *let them be taken.*	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	**Căp-ī,**	*to be taken.*
Perfect.	**Cap-tum (am, um) esse** *or* **fuisse,**	*to have been taken.*
Future.	**Cap-tum iri,**	*to be about to be taken.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	**Cap-tus (a, um),**	*taken,* or *having been taken.*
Gerundive.	**Căp-iendus (a, um),**	*fit to be taken.*

Obs. The Verbs conjugated like căpio are:

fŭcio,	fēcī,	factum,	făcĕrĕ,	*to make.*
jăcio,	jēcī,	jactum,	jăcĕrĕ,	*to throw.*
fŭgio,	fūgī,	fŭgitum,	fŭgĕrĕ,	*to flee.*
fŏdio,	fōdī,	fossum,	fŏdĕrĕ,	*to dig.*
răpio,	răpuī,	raptum,	răpĕrĕ,	*to seize.*
părio,	pĕpĕrī,	partum,	părĕrĕ,	*to bring forth.*
quătio,	(no perfect),	quassum,	quătĕre,	*to shake.*
cŭpio,	cŭpīvī,	cŭpītum,	cŭpĕrĕ,	*to desire.*
săpio,	săpīvī,	———	săpĕrĕ,	*to savor of, be wise.*
lăcio,	———	———	lăcĕre,	*to draw,* } rare, except in
spĕcio,	———	———	spĕcĕrĕ,	*to look,* } composition.

VOCABULARY 33.

absurdus, a, um,	*out of tune, absurd.*	**margărīta, ae,** *f.*	*a pearl.*
bŏna, orum, *n.* (*pl.*),	*goods.*	**necessārius, a, um,**	*necessary, needful.*
celsus, a, um,	*lofty, tall.*	**nīdus, i,** *m.*	*a nest.*
		versus, us, *m.*	*a line, a verse.*

EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. Urbs capitur; fugiunt cives, rapiuntur omnia. 2. Curabit dux strenuus ne milites sui fugiant. 3. Scribebam ego versus, tu pingebas, et frater in horto fodiebat. 4. Quis dubitat quin absurdum sit malos versus facere? 5. Poeta versus faciebat quum hostes urbem intrabant. 6. Ne fugiant milites, saepe tutius est pugnare quam fugere. 7. Non omnes eadem cupimus. 8. Curavit ut oratio sua Ciceronem saperet. 9. Quis dubitat quin milites bona nostra rapturi sint? 10. Ne facite absurda, cives! Sapite et iram coercete.

1. Birds make their nests in trees. 2. An eagle had made her nest in a tall tree. 3. We desire very many things which are not needful to us. 4. It is easy to make verses; it is not easy to make good (ones). 5. The enemy flee, and the camp is taken. 6. Flee not, soldiers! It is safer to fight than to flee. 7. We will dig in the earth, in order that we may find minerals. 8. Men do not dig in the ground to (ut) find pearls. 9. A strong wind was shaking the trees. 10. That whole roation savors-of the poets (*Acc.*).

Deponent Verbs have a Passive form,

I. Hortŏr, hortātŭs sum, hortārī, *to exhort*, like **ămŏr.**
II. Vĕrĕŏr, vĕrĭtŭs sum, vĕrērī, *to fear*, " **mŏnĕŏr.**

		I.		II.	
Indicative Mood.	*Pres.-Imp.*	Hort-ŏr,	*I exhort.*	Vĕr-eŏr,	*I fear.*
		Hort-ārĭs (ārĕ), &c.	*thou exhortest.* &c.	Vĕr-ērĭs (ērĕ), &c.	*thou fearest.* &c.
	Past-Imp.	Hort-ābăr,	*I was exhorting.*	Vĕr-ēbăr,	*I was fearing.*
	Fut.-Imp.	Hort-ābŏr,	*I shall exhort.*	Vĕr-ēbŏr,	*I shall fear.*
	Pres.-Perf.	Hort-ātŭs sum,	*I have exhorted or I exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs sum,	*I have feared or I feared.*
	Past-Perf.	Hort-ātŭs ĕram,	*I had exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs ĕram,	*I had feared.*
	Fut.-Perf.	Hort-ātŭs ĕro,	*I shall have exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs ĕro,	*I shall have feared.*
Subjunctive Mood.	*Pres.-Imp.*	Hort-ĕr,	*I may exhort.*	Vĕr-eăr,	*I may fear.*
	Past-Imp.	Hort-ārĕr,	*I might exhort.*	Vĕr-ērĕr,	*I might fear.*
	Fut.-Imp.	Hort-ātūrŭs sim,	*I may be about to exhort.*	Vĕr-ĭtūrŭs sim,	*I may be about to fear.*
	Pres.-Perf.	Hort-ātŭs sim,	*I may have exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs sim,	*I may have feared.*
	Past-Perf.	Hort-ātŭs essem,	*I might have exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs essem,	*I might have feared.*
Imperative.	*Present.*	Hort-ārĕ,	*Exhort thou.*	Vĕr-ērĕ,	*Fear thou.*
	Future.	Hort-ātŏr,	*thou shalt exhort.*	Vĕr-ētŏr,	*thou shalt fear.*
Infinitive.	*Imperfect.*	Hort-ārī,	*to exhort.*	Vĕr-ērī,	*to fear.*
	Perfect.	Hort-ātum essĕ,	*to have exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtum essĕ,	*to have feared.*
	Future.	Hort-ātūrum essĕ,	*to be about to exhort.*	Vĕr-ĭtūrŭm essĕ,	*to be about to fear.*
Participles.	*Imperfect.*	Hort-ans,	*exhorting.*	Vĕr-ens,	*fearing.*
	Future.	Hort-ātūrŭs,	*about to exhort.*	Vĕr-ĭtūrŭs,	*about to fear.*
	Perfect.	Hort-ātŭs,	*having exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs,	*having feared.*
	Gerundive.	Hort-andŭs,	*fit to be exhorted.*	Vĕr-endŭs,	*fit to be feared.*
Supines.		Hort-ātum,	*to exhort.*	Vĕr-ĭtum,	*to fear.*
		Hort-ātū,	*to be exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtū,	*to be feared.*
Gerund.		Hort-andi, &c.	*of exhorting*, &c.	Vĕr-endi, &c.	*of fearing*, &c.

Besides the Passive forms the Deponents have the two Active Participles, the Supines, and the Gerunds.

Doponents are the only Latin Verbs that can express directly a Perfect Participle Active: as, hortātŭs, *having exhorted.*

but an Active meaning.

III. **Lŏquŏr, lŏcūtŭs sum, lŏquī,** *to speak*, like **rĕgŏr.**
IV. **Partiŏr, partītŭs sum, partīrī,** *to divide*, " **audiŏr.**

	III.		IV.		
Pres.-Imp.	Lŏqu-ŏr,	*I speak.*	Part-iŏr,	*I divide.*	Indicative Mood.
	Lŏqu-ĕrĭs (ĕrĕ), &c.	*thou speakest.* &c.	Part-īrĭs (īrĕ), &c.	*thou dividest.* &c.	
Past-Imp.	Lŏqu-ēbăr,	*I was speaking.*	Part-iēbăr,	*I was dividing.*	
Fut.-Imp.	Lŏqu-ăr,	*I shall speak.*	Part-iăr,	*I shall divide.*	
Pres.-Perf.	Lŏcū-tŭs sum,	*I have spoken or I spoke.*	Part-ītŭs sum,	*I have divided or I divided.*	
Past-Perf.	Lŏcū-tŭs ĕram,	*I had spoken.*	Part-ītŭs ĕram,	*I had divided.*	
Fut.-Perf.	Lŏcū-tŭs ĕro,	*I shall have spoken.*	Part-ītŭs ĕro,	*I shall have divided.*	
Pres.-Imp.	Lŏqu-ăr,	*I may speak.*	Part-iăr,	*I may divide.*	Subjunctive Mood.
Past-Imp.	Lŏqu-ĕrĕr,	*I might speak.*	Part-īrĕr,	*I might divide.*	
Fut.-Imp.	Lŏcū-tūrŭs sĭm,	*I may be about to speak.*	Part-ītūrŭs, sim,	*I may be about to divide.*	
Pres.-Perf.	Lŏcū-tŭs sim,	*I may have spoken.*	Part-ītŭs sim,	*I may have divided.*	
Past-Perf.	Lŏcū-tŭs essem,	*I might have spoken.*	Part-ītŭs essem,	*I might have divided.*	
Present.	Lŏqu-ĕrĕ,	*Speak thou.*	Part-īrĕ,	*Divide thou.*	Imperative.
Future.	Lŏqu-ĭtŏr,	*thou shalt speak.*	Part-ītŏr,	*thou shalt divide.*	
Imperfect.	Lŏqu-ī,	*to speak.*	Part-īrī,	*to divide.*	Infinitive.
Perfect.	Lŏcū-tum essĕ,	*to have spoken.*	Part-ītum essĕ,	*to have divided.*	
Future.	Lŏcū-tūrum essĕ,	*to be about to speak.*	Part-ītūrum essĕ,	*to be about to divide.*	
Imperfect.	Lŏqu-ens,	*speaking.*	Part-iens,	*dividing.*	Participles.
Future	Lŏcū-tūrŭs,	*about to speak.*	Part-ītūrŭs,	*about to divide.*	
Perfect.	Lŏcū-tŭs,	*having spoken.*	Part-ītŭs,	*having divided.*	
Gerundive.	Lŏqu-endŭs,	*fit to be spoken.*	Part-iendŭs,	*fit to be divided.*	
Supines.	Lŏcū-tum,	*to speak.*	Part-ītum,	*to divide.*	
	Lŏcū-tū,	*to be spoken.*	Part-ītū,	*to be divided.*	
Gerund.	Lŏqu-endi, &c.	*of speaking,* &c.	Part-iendi, &c.	*of dividing,* &c.	

The Gerundive, and occasionally the Perf. Participle, are the only forms in the Deponents that ever have a passive meaning.
Intransitive Deponents have no Supine in u and no Gerundive.

VOCABULARY 34.

admīror, āri, ātus, 1,	*I wonder at, I admire.*	mīror, etc., 1,	*I wonder at, admire.*
aspernor, āri, 1,	*I reject, despise.*	vĕnĕror, etc., 1,	*I reverence, worship.*
conor, etc., 1,	*I attempt.*	demum, *adv.*	*indeed.**
contemplor, etc., 1,	*I observe carefully, I contemplate.*	pŏtestas, ātis, *f.* / pŏtentia, ae, *f.*	*power.*†
hortor, etc., 1,	*I urge, exhort, encourage.*	quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *or* quiddam,	*a certain, one, certain.*
mĕdĭtor, etc., 1,	*I meditate on, study.*	tum, *adv.*	*then.*

EXERCISE XXXIV.

Deponent Verbs of the First Conjugation.

1. Admiramur cantum avium illarum. 2. Admiramini Dei potentiam. 3. Animalia quaedam vocem humanam imitantur. 4. Caesar milites hortatus est, ut fortiter pugnarent. 5. Hannibal Alpes superare conatus est. 6. Hortabor patrem ut pueri mentem probe excolat. 7. Quid meditaris, carissime amice? 8. Contemplor pulchram hanc imaginem. 9. Venerare Deum, venerare parentes. 10. Tum demum beatus eris, quum aspernatus eris voluptatem.

1. Who does not admire the song of the nightingale? 2. Meditate-on these things every-day. 3. Observe (carefully) this beautiful image. 4. It does-good to the mind to contemplate lofty things. 5. Contemplate, citizens, the examples of the ancients! 6. Then at last will ye be happy when ye have learnt (*Fut.-Perf.*) to despise pleasure. 7. I will encourage the boy to (ut) contemplate those things. 8. Attempt great things; thou wilt do great things. 9. I will take care that my son may admire those things (ea, *n. pl.*) which are fit-to-be-admired. 10. There is no doubt that the Romans admired Cicero.

VOCABULARY 35.

fătĕor, fassus, 2,	*I confess.*	intŭeor, ĭtus, 2,	*I look upon, into.*
ĭmĭtor, etc., 1,	*I imitate.*	rĕcordor, etc., 1,	*I call to mind.*
polliceor, ĭtus, 2,	*I promise.*	mĭsĕreor, ĭtus, 2,	*I pity, have pity on*

* As tum demum, *then indeed, then and not till then.*

† *Potestas* is the regular power of a magistrate; *potentia*, the power which arises out of personal weight and influence.

accĭpio,* cēpi, cep-tum, 3,	*I receive.*
confĭteor,* fessus, 2,	*I confess.*
dēcĭpio,* cēpi, cep-tum, 3,	*I deceive.*
ejĭcio,* jēci, jec-tum, 3,	*I cast forth.*
tueor, ĭtus, 2,	*I gaze, guard, protect.*
vĕreor, ĭtus, 2,	*I fear, reverence.*
Asia, ae, *f.*	*Asia.*
Darĭus, ii, *m.*	*Darius, a Persian royal name.*
ex, e, *prep. (with abl.),*	*out of, from.*
făcĭnus, ŏris, *n.*	*a bold, daring deed, crime.*
Plĭnius, ii, *m.*	*Pliny, name of two Roman writers (Elder and Younger).*
praetĕrĭtus, a, um,	*past.*
reus, i, *m.*	*an accused man, a defendant.*
sĕnectus, ūtis, *f.*	*old age.*

EXERCISE XXXV.

Deponent Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

RULE 16.—Verbs signifying *to remember, to forget, to pity,* are in Latin commonly followed by the Genitive.

1. Veremini, O pueri, senectutem! 2. Darius Alexandro magnam partem Asiae pollicitus est. 3. Plinius scribit; nunc pueri omnia sciunt, neminem verentur, imitantur neminem. 4. Tuebimur miseros, quorum agros vastavistis. 5. Incolae hoc facinus fatebuntur. 6. Comites, qui salutem regis tuiti erant, maximum praemium acceperunt. 7. Scelerum suorum recordabuntur. 8. Reus facinus confessus est. 9. Jucundum est mare a terra intueri. 10. Semper miserorum hominum miserebimur.

1. We reverence the power of God. 2. Guard the king, soldiers! 3. Confess the truth (true things), boy; it is better to be punished than to deceive. 4. Look-into these things carefully. 5. The general has promised rewards to the soldiers. 6. There is no doubt that the generals have promised (*Subj.*) rewards to the soldiers. 7. He has confessed the crime, and shall be punished. 8. It is pleasant to call-to-mind past dangers. 9. Ye will call these things to mind, citizens, when I am cast forth (*Fut.-Perf.*) from the city. 10. Have-pity-on the accused (man), judges! 11. He reverences the gods.

* Observe the change of *ă* to *ĭ* when a preposition is prefixed in composition; as, accĭpio=ad+căpio; confĭteor=con+făteor, etc.

VOCABULARY 36.

abūtor, ūsus, ūti, 3,	*I abuse.*
adhortor, etc., 1,	*I urge, exhort.*
adĭpiscor, adeptus, 3,	*I acquire, attain to.*
allŏquor, lŏcūtus, 3,	*I speak to, address.*
committo, mīsi, missum, 3,	*I send together, join battle (fight).*
deflāgro, etc., 1,	*to be burnt down.*
fruor, fruĭtus, *and* fructus, 3,	*I enjoy.*
fungor, functus, 3,	*I discharge.*
gero, gessi, gestum, 3,	*I carry on, wage.*
hăbeo, bui, bĭtum, 2,	*I have.*
incūso, etc., 1,	*I accuse, find fault with.*
jŭbeo, jussi, jussum, 2,	*I order, bid.*
lŏquor, lŏcūtus, 3,	*I speak.*
mŏrior, mortuus, 3,	*I die.*
nascor, natus, 3,	*I am born.*
oblīviscor, lītus, 3,	*I forget.*
pătior, passus, 3,	*I endure, suffer.*
prŏfĭciscor, fectus, 3,	*I set out.*
rĕmĭniscor (*no perf.*), 3,	*I remember.*
sĕquor, sĕcūtus, 3,	*I follow.*
ūtor, ūsus, 3,	*I use.*
vescor (*no perf.*), 3,	*I feed, live on.*
ad, *prep.* (*with acc.*),	*to, at, near.*
ălĭquando, *adv.*	*sometimes.*
ăpŭd, *prep.* (*with acc.*),	*at, near.*
bĕnignē, *adv.*	*kindly.*
căro, carnis, *f.*	*flesh.*
cāseus, i, *m.*	*cheese.*
consŭlātus, us, *m.*	*office of consul, consulate.*
crŭcĭātus, us, *m.*	*torture.*
Eurīpĭdes, is, *m.*	*Euripides, an Athenian tragic poet.*
immortālĭtas, ātis, *f.*	*immortality.*
Lăbiēnus, i, *m.*	*Labienus, one of Cæsar's lieutenants.*
lac, lactis, *n.*	*milk.*
lăcus, us, *m.*	*a lake.*
laetĭtia, ae, *f.*	*joy.*
Mĕnăpii, orum, *m.*	*the Menapii, a Gallic tribe.*
mox, *adv.*	*soon, shortly.*
mūnus, ĕris, *n.*	*duty, function.*
nēvē, *conj.* (*with subj.*),	*nor, and lest.*
nĭmĭs, *adv.*	*too, too much.*
pĕr, *prep.* (*with acc.*),	*through.*
poena, ae, *f.*	*punishment.*
Poeni, orum, *m.*	*the Carthaginians.*
pristĭnus, a, um,	*former, olden.*
rāro, *adv.*	*seldom.*
Rēgŭlus, i, *m.*	*Regulus, a Roman commander.*
Sălămis, ĭnis, *f.*	*Salamis, an island near Athens.*
tantum, *adv.*	*only.*
Trăsĭmēnus, i, *m.*	*Trasimenus, a lake in Italy.*

EXERCISE XXXVI.

Deponent Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

RULE 17.—**Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vescor** govern the Ablative Case.

A.—1. Si morimur, corpus tantum moritur, non animus. 2. Dux maximam adeptus est gloriam. 3. Cives, libertatem adepti, summa laetitia fruentur. 4. Virtutis viam semper se-

quemur. 5. Cura ut bene moriaris. 6. Audi multa, loquere pauca. 7. Per multos annos pace usi sunt. 8. Lacte, caseo, carne vescuntur. 9. Munere tuo bene fungĕre! 10. Aliquando oculi non funguntur suo munere.

1. By this death he obtained the freedom of his country. 2. Who doubts that by this death he has obtained immortal glory? 3. It is a small thing to enjoy life; it is a great thing to discharge the duties of life. 4. Take care that you always follow the path (way) of virtue. 5. You will enjoy all these good (things). 6. When the body is dead (*Fut.-Perf.*), then indeed shall we enjoy true life. 7. The Britons used-to-feed (*Past-Imperf.*) on milk, flesh, (and) cheese. 8. He used the utmost freedom in his oration. 9. Use riches, do not abuse them. 10. Follow us; *we* will protect you.

B.—1. Sapienter utimini tempore. 2. Clarissimus hic dux consulatu functus est. 3. Qui nimis cupit honores, raro eos adipiscitur. 4. Caesar duas legiones ad Labienum proficisci jubet, ipse in Menapiorum fines profectus est. 5. Bellum gerimus, ut pace fruamur. 6. Alexander immortalitatis gloriam adeptus est. 7. Augustus omnes cives benigne alloquebatur. 8. Eodem die, quo Dianae templum deflagravit, Alexander Magnus natus est. 9. Regulus omnes cruciatus Poenorum fortiter passus est. 10. Hannibal milites adhortatus est, ut reminiscerentur pristinae virtutis suae, neve liberorum obliviscerentur.

1. Thou hast wisely discharged thine office-of-consul. 2. Generals often exhort their soldiers to (ut) remember their wives and children. 3. Remember (your) ancient valor, soldiers! 4. Caesar orders these two legions to set out. 5. It is a small thing to-speak-kindly-to (one's) fellow-citizens. 6. That most famous (nobilis) battle was fought near the lake Trasimenus. 7. Caesar himself set out for (into) the territories of the Menapii. 8. Now we have peace; shortly we shall-be-carrying-on war. 9. Regulus endured bravely the utmost tortures. 10. On the same day on which that most famous battle was fought, the poet Euripides was born.

VOCABULARY 37.

blandior, ītus, īri, 4 (*with dat.*),	*I flatter, win upon.*	**expĕrior, ertus,** 4,	*I try, experience.*
mĕtior, mensus, 4,	*I measure.*	**cīvīlis, e,**	*belonging to a citizen, civil.*

mentior, ītus, 4,	*I lie.*	**pŏtior, ītus, 4** (*with abl. or gen.*)	*I obtain possession of.*
Epămĭnondas, ae, *m.*	*Epaminondas, a famous Theban.*	**fortūna, ae,** *f.*	*fortune.*
ordior, orsus, 4,	*I begin.*	**frons, ntis,** *f.*	*forehead, brow.*
partior, ītus, 4,	*I share, divide.*	**nunquam,** *adv.*	*never.*
		vultus, us, *m.*	*countenance, looks.*

Exercise XXXVII.

Deponent Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

1. Milites belli fortunam experiuntur. 2. Epaminondas nunquam mentiebatur. 3. Senes multa experti sunt in longa vita. 4. Magnos viros virtute metimur, non fortuna. 5. Voluptas blanditur sensibus nostris. 6. Frons, oculi, vultus saepe mentiuntur. 7. Tarquinius Superbus potitus est regno. 8. Puniemini, quod mentiti estis. 9. Bellum civile in Italia orsum est. 10. Patres bona sua cum liberis partiuntur.

1. We will try the fortune of war. 2. The Romans often tried the fortune of war. 3. There is no doubt that it is extremely-base (*Superl.*) to lie. 4. We will share our goods with our children. 5. There is no doubt that the enemy (pl.) have-obtained-possession-of the city. 6. Let us make-trial-of our valor; let us get-possession-of the camp of the enemy. 7. There is no doubt that pleasure wins-upon our senses. 8. We ought to measure men by (their) virtue, not by (their) fortune. 9. Very many (people) measure all things by fortune. 10. The consuls will measure (out) lands to the soldiers.

XXVIII.—Prepositions.

Of the Prepositions, some govern the Accusative Case, some the Ablative, and some either the Accusative or Ablative.

I. *With the Accusative alone.*

Ăd,	*to.*	**Ergā,**	*toward.*
Adversŭs, Adversum,	*toward.*	**Extrā,**	*outside of.*
Antĕ,	*before.*	**Infrā,**	*below.*
Ăpŭd,	*near, at.*	**Intĕr,**	*between, among.*
Circā, circum,	*around.*	**Intrā,**	*inside of, within.*
Circĭtĕr,	*about.*	**Juxtā,**	*near.*
Cis *and* **citrā,**	*on this side of.*	**Ŏb,**	*on account of.*
Contrā,	*against, contrary to.*	**Pĕnĕs,**	*in the power of.*
		Pĕr,	*through.*

Pōnĕ,	*behind.*	**Sĕcundum,**	*following, in accordance*
Post,	*after.*	**Suprā,**	*above.* [*with.*
Praetĕr,	*beside.*	**Trans,**	*across.*
Prŏpĕ,	*near.*	**Ultrā,**	*on the farther side of.*
Proptĕr,	*on account of.*	**Versŭs,**	*toward.*

Versŭs is put after the word it governs.

VOCABULARY 38.

ĵuo, fluxi, fluxum, 3,	*I flow.*	**mĕtus, us,** *m.*	*fear.*
migro, etc., 1,	*I migrate, depart.*	**occidens, ntis,** *m.*	*the west (the setting* sun).
vīvo, vixi, victum, 3,	*I live.*	**permulti, ae, ă,**	*very many.*
aestas, ātis, *f.*	*summer.*	**prīmō,** *adv.*	*at first.*

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. Exercitus hostium ad portas urbis venit. 2. Multi homines contra naturam vivunt. 3. Judices secundum leges hunc hominem puniverunt. 4. Multae aves ante hiemem in alias terras migrant. 5. Hac aestate extra urbem habitabimus. 6. Romani trans Rhenum multa oppida vastaverunt. 7. Hoc bellum intra paucos dies finitum erit. 8. Vir sapiens non propter metum legibus parebit. 9. Rhodanus primo occidentem versus fluit. 10. Equitatum praeter fluminis ripas contra hostem ducit.

1. Hannibal led (his) army to the gates of the city. 2. Who doubts that it is contrary-to virtue to lie? 3. All these things are in-the-power-of the consuls. 4. The general led his army toward the river. 5. Very many birds migrate into Britain in the summer. 6. The river Rhone flows through the lake. 7. A good judge will judge according to the laws. 8. We shall dwell within the city, but you will depart into the country (agri). 9. The camp of Hannibal was near the walls of the city. 10. The nightingale migrates across the sea in winter.

II. *With the Ablative alone.*

Ā, ăb, *or* **abs,**	*by* or *from.*	**Ex** *or* **ē,**	*out of.*
Absquĕ (rare),	*without.*	**Prae,**	*before, in comparison with.*
Cōram,	*in the presence of.*	**Prō,**	*before, for, in behalf of.*
Cum,	*with.*	**Sīnĕ,**	*without.*
Dĕ,	*down from, from, concerning.*	**Tĕnŭs,**	*reaching to, as far as.*

Tĕnŭs is put after the word it governs.

VOCABULARY 39.

dīvĭdo, vīsi, vīsum, 3,	*I divide, separate.*	**Germāni, orum**, *m.*	*the Germans.*
cētĕri (caet.), **ae, ă**, *pl.*	*the rest, all others.*	**Helvētius, a, um**,	*Helvetian.* [*tenant.*
		lēgātus, i, *m.*	*embassador, lieu-*
		ōcĕănus, i, *m.*	*the ocean.*

EXERCISE XXXIX.

1. Magna cum voluptate avium cantum audivimus. 2. A Cicerone liber de senectute scriptus est. 3. Rhenus agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit. 4. Romani ex Gallia trans Rhenum veniunt. 5. Pro salute reipublicae et pro liberis pugnabimus. 6. Magna gloria nemini venit sine virtute. 7. Coram parentibus dixi, quid scripserim. 8. Incolae urbis de pace legatos ad Caesarem miserunt. 9. Cato in senectute prae ceteris floruit. 10. Alexander omnes terras Oceano tenus vicit.

1. The songs of birds are heard with pleasure by all. 2. Cicero has written a very beautiful book concerning old age. 3. The ocean separates Britain from Gaul. 4. He said these things in-the-presence-of all the soldiers. 5. The general marched (duco) his army out of the city. 6. Before all others Demosthenes and Cicero are the most renowned orators. 7. There is no true glory without virtue. 8. Along with thee (tecum*) we will depart into another land. 9. We are fighting for (pro) our country, for our wives, for our children. 10. He was dwelling in the same city, without-the-knowledge-of his father.

III. *With the Accusative or Ablative.*

Ĭn,	*in, into.*	**Sŭper**,	*over.*
Sŭb,	*up to, under*; of time, *about.*	**Subter**,	*under.*
Clam,	*secretly, without the knowledge of.*		

In and *Sub*, with the *Acc.*, answer to the question *Whither?* with the *Abl.*, the question *Where?*

VOCABULARY 40.

fulgeo, lsi, lsum, 2,	*I shine.*	**Aegyptus, i**, *f.*	*Egypt.*
profĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre,	*I extend.*	**impĕrium, ii**, *n.*	*empire.*
Indi, orum, *m.*	*the Indians, people of India.*	**marmŏr, ŏris**, *n.*	*marble.*
		servĭtus, ūtis, *f.*	*slavery.*
		tăbernācŭlum, i, *n.*	*tent.*
		uxor, oris, *f.*	*wife.*

* *Mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum*, are used instead of *cum me, cum te*, etc.

Exercise XL.

1. Multi homines in varias terras itinera faciunt. 2. In magno flumine magni capiuntur pisces. 3. In hortum meum non venisti, in urbe autem fuisti. 4. Sub terra est magna rerum utilium multitudo. 5. Equitatus hostium sub noctem in castra venit. 6. Plurimae aves sub hiemem in alias terras volant. 7. Pompeius in Aegypto sub oculis uxoris et liberorum mortuus est. 8. Caesar super Indos proferet imperium. 9. Super tabernaculum Darii imago Solis fulgebat. 10. Etiam sub marmore et auro habitat servitus.

1. We were coming into the city; you were dwelling in it. 2. The camp of Hannibal was under the walls of Rome. 3. We were walking in the garden. 4. It is not pleasant to all to dwell in the city. 5. Large fishes are not caught in a small river. 6. The nightingale does not always remain in the same lands. 7. They slay Pompey beneath the very (ipse) eyes of his wife. 8. The Romans will extend their empire beyond the boundaries of Europe. 9. Beneath the earth there are many beautiful things. 10. Toward winter these birds migrate into other lands.

XXIX.—Adverbs.

Adverbs are formed from Adjectives and Participles by means of the terminations **-ō** and **-tĕr**. Adverbs derived from Adjectives and Participles of the First and Second Declension end in **-e**, as **doctē**, *learnedly*, from **doctus**. Adverbs derived from Adjectives and Participles of the Third Declension end in **-tĕr**, as **fortĭtĕr**, *bravely*, from **fortis**.

The *Comparative* of the Adverb is the same as the Neuter Nominative Singular of the Comparative Adjective, and consequently ends in *ius*.

The *Superlative* of the Adverb is formed from the Superlative of the Adjective by changing the final syllable of the latter into *ē*.

Adjectives.		Adverbs.			
		Positive.		*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
doctus,	*learned.*	doctē,	*learnedly.*	doctius	doctissĭmē
lĭber,	*free.*	lĭbĕrē,	*freely.*	lĭbĕrius	lĭberrĭmē
pulcher,	*beautiful.*	pulchrē,	*beautifully.*	pulchrius	pulcherrĭmē
fortis,	*brave.*	fortĭter,	*bravely.*	fortius	fortissĭmē
sĭmĭlis,	*like.*	sĭmĭlĭter,	*alike.*	sĭmĭlius	sĭmillĭmē
ācĕr,	*keen.*	ācrĭter,	*keenly.*	ācrius	ācerrĭmē
fēlix,	*lucky.*	fēlĭcĭter,	*luckily.*	fēlĭcius	fēlĭcissĭmē
prūdens,	*prudent.*	prūdenter,	*prudently.*	prūdentius	prūdentissĭmē

Adverbs are irregular in their Comparison, if the Adjectives from which they are derived are also irregular.

Adjectives.		Adverbs.			
		Positive.		*Comp.*	*Sup.*
bŏnus,	*good.*	bĕnĕ,	*well.*	mĕlius	optĭmē
mălus,	*bad.*	mălĕ,	*ill.*	pējus	pessĭmē
multus,	*much, many.*	multum,	*much.*	plūs	plūrĭmum
magnus,	*great.*	———		măgis	maxĭmē
prŏpinquus,	*near.*	prŏpe,	*near, nearly.*	prŏpius	proxĭmē
(prō),	*before.*	———		prius	prīmum & prīmē

Vocabulary 41.

accēdo, cessi, cessum, 3,	*I approach.*	Hasdrŭbal, ălis, *m.*	*Hasdrubal, the brother of Hannibal* (a common Carthaginian name).
ăgo, ēgi, actum, 3,	*I lead, act, do.*		
excēdo, cessi, cessum, 3,	*I depart from.*		
incĭpio, cēpi, ceptum, 3,	*I begin.*		
perdo, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3,	*I destroy.*	jŭventus, ūtis, *f.*	*youth.*
resisto, stĭti, stĭtum, 3 (*with dat.*),	*I resist.*	lātē, *adv.*	*widely, wide.*
		longē, *adv.*	*far.*
ac, *conj.*	*and.*	Roscius, ii, *m.*	*Roscius, a Roman name.*
atque, *conj.*	*and.*	sătis, *adv.*	*enough, sufficiently.*
attentē, *adv.*	*attentively.*		
audactĕr, *adv.*	*boldly, daringly.*	tigris, is *and* ĭdis, *c.*	*a tiger.*

Exercise XLI.

A.—1. Germani cum Romanis fortiter pugnaverunt. 2. Milites audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare incipiunt. 3. Miles hostibus fortissime restitit. 4. Galli Italiam longe lateque vastaverunt. 5. Cicero Roscium audacissime defendit. 6. Judicem ii timere debent, qui male egerunt. 7. Deus mundum sapientissime regit. 8. Leones facilius vincuntur quam tigres. 9. Nunquam jucundius viximus quam nunc. 10.

Orationes Demosthenis ab Atheniensibus attentissime audiebantur.

1. Fight bravely, soldiers; ye are fighting for your country. 2. Now we shall live most delightfully. 3. The Germans fought very bravely. 4. Hear the speech more attentively, citizens! 5. The Gauls laid waste the lands (ager) of the Romans far and wide. 6. Ye have acted most wisely, citizens! 7. Who doubts that the soldiers have fought most bravely? 8. In this matter (res) Cicero acted most prudently. 9. The Gauls were not easily conquered. 10. Who doubts that God rules the world most wisely?

B.—1. Non satis est vivere, debemus bene vivere. 2. Multum prodest juventuti libros veterum legere. 3. Eo tempore Cicero maxime omnium reipublicae profuit. 4. Quis reipublicae plus quam Cicero profuit? 5. Orator est (*he is*) magis quam poeta. 6. Hannibal, dux Poenorum, proxime ad urbem accessit. 7. Primum Latinam linguam discere incipiam. 8. Propius ad portas urbis accessit Hannibal quam Hasdrubal. 9. Pessime omnium egisti! bonos cives perdidisti; improbis bene fecisti. 10. Prius linguam Latinam quam Graecam didicit.

1. It is easy to write; it is not easy to write well. 2. (He) who does not read attentively, reads ill. 3. It was difficult to approach near to the gates. 4. Hannibal approached very-near to the gates of Rome. 5. There is no doubt that you have acted very-ill. 6. You have acted worse than all the others. 7. It is not a great thing to write much; it is a very-great thing to write well. 8. First of all (things), reverence the celestial gods. 9. We have lived most pleasantly. 10. There is no doubt that to write well is extremely-difficult.

XXX.—Irregular Verbs.

I. Possum, pŏtŭī, possĕ: *to be able, can.*

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	1. *Present-Imperfect.*		2. *Past-Imperfect.*	
S.	Pos-sum	Pos-sim	Pŏt-ĕram	Pos-sem
	Pŏt-ĕs	Pos-sīs	Pŏt-ĕrās	Pos-sēs
	Pŏt-est	Pos-sit	Pŏt-ĕrăt	Pos-sĕt
P.	Pos-sŭmŭs	Pos-sīmŭs	Pŏt-ĕrămŭs	Pos-sēmŭs
	Pŏt-estis	Pos-sītis	Pŏt-ĕrātis	Pos-sētis
	Pos-sunt	Pos-sint	Pŏt-ĕrant	Pos-sent

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
3. *Future-Imperfect.*	
S. Pŏt-ĕro	(wanting.)
Pŏt-ĕrĭs	
Pŏt-ĕrĭt	
P. Pŏt-ĕrĭmŭs	
Pŏt-ĕrĭtis	
Pŏt-ĕrunt	
4. *Present-Perfect.*	
S. Pŏt-uī	Pŏt-uĕrim
Pŏt-uistī	Pŏt-uĕrĭs
Pŏt-uĭt	Pŏt-uĕrĭt
P. Pŏt-uĭmŭs	Pŏt-uĕrimŭs
Pŏt-uistis	Pŏt-uĕritis
Pŏt-uērunt (ērĕ)	Pŏt-uĕrint

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
5. *Past-Perfect.*	
S. Pŏt-uĕram	Pŏt-uissem
Pŏt-uĕrās	Pŏt-uissēs
Pŏt-uĕrăt	Pŏt-uissĕt
P. Pŏt-uĕrāmŭs	Pŏt-uissēmŭs
Pŏt-uĕrātis	Pŏt-uissētis
Pŏt-uĕrant	Pŏt-uissent
6. *Future-Perfect.*	
S. Pŏt-uĕro	(wanting.)
Pŏt-uĕrĭs	
Pŏt-uĕrĭt	
P. Pŏt-uĕrimŭs	
Pŏt-uĕritis	
Pŏt-uĕrint	

Infinitive.

Imperfect—Possĕ. *Perfect*—Pŏtuissĕ. *Future*—wanting.

Vocabulary 42.

infringo, frēgi, fractum, 3,	*I break, impair.*	aequus, a, um,	*level, even, just.*
obscūro, etc., 1,	*I darken, obscure.*	cur, *adv.*	*why.*
rĕlinquo, līqui, lictum, 3,	*I leave, quit.*	impĕtus, us, *m.*	*onset, attack.*
		invĭdia, ae, *f.*	*envy, ill-will.*
		splendor, ōris, *m.*	*brightness, brilliancy.*
		tyrannus, i, *m.*	*despot, tyrant.*

Exercise XLII.

1. Ego possum legere, tu potes scribere, soror potest acu pingere. 2. Tyrannus animum sapientis infringere non poterat. 3. Cur heri nobiscum ambulare non poteras? 4. Cura, ut possis aequo animo vitam relinquere. 5. Nemo dubitat, quin milites urbem defendere possint. 6. Mores tyranni ei amicos parare non potuerunt. 7. Non dubitamus, quin urbs a civibus defendi potuerit. 8. Vix Caesar milites e castris educere potuerat, quum hostes impetum fecerunt. 9. Quid melius hominibus dari potuit quam ratio? 10. Virtutis splendor nunquam obscurari poterit.

1. We are all able to be serviceable to (our) friends. 2. You will not be able to be a friend to all. 3. Hannibal was not able to obtain-possession-of the city. 4. Cornelia was able to train her sons most wisely. 5. No one doubted that the sol-

diers were able to defend the city. 6. We can not all be kings; we can all be good citizens. 7. You will not be able to read Sallust easily: he is a difficult author. 8. Caesar was able to conquer his enemies; he was not able to conquer envy. 9. Those wicked men will not be able to quit life with even mind. 10. Restrain (thy) tongue; so thou wilt be able to restrain also thy temper (animus).

II. Vŏlo, vŏluī, vellĕ: *to be willing, to wish.*
III. Nōlo, nōluī, nollĕ: *to be unwilling, not to wish.*
IV. Mālo, māluī, mallĕ: *to be more willing, to prefer, to have rather.*

INDICATIVE.

1. *Present-Imperfect.*

S.	Vŏlo	Nōlo	Mālo
	Vīs	Nōn vīs	Māvīs
	Vult	Nōn vult	Māvult
P.	Vŏlŭmŭs	Nōlŭmŭs	Mālŭmŭs
	Vultĭs	Nōn vultĭs	Māvultĭs
	Vŏlunt	Nōlunt	Mālunt

2. *Past-Imperfect.*

S.	Vŏl-ēbam	Nōl-ēbam	Māl-ēbam
	Vŏl-ēbās	Nōl-ēbās	Māl-ēbās
	Vŏl-ēbăt	Nōl-ēbăt	Māl-ēbăt
P.	Vŏl-ēbāmŭs	Nōl-ēbāmŭs	Māl-ēbāmŭs
	Vŏl-ēbātĭs	Nōl-ēbātĭs	Māl-ēbātĭs
	Vŏl-ēbant	Nōl-ēbant	Māl-ēbant

3. *Future-Imperfect.*

S.	Vŏl-am	Nōl-am	Māl-am
	Vŏl-ēs	Nōl-ēs	Māl-ēs
	Vŏl-ĕt	Nōl-ĕt	Māl-ĕt
P.	Vŏl-ēmŭs	Nōl-ēmŭs	Māl-ēmŭs
	Vŏl-ētĭs	Nōl-ētĭs	Māl-ētĭs
	Vŏl-ent	Nōl-ent	Māl-ent

4. *Present-Perfect.*

S.	Vŏl-uī	Nōl-uī	Māl-uī
	Vŏl-uistī	Nōl-uistī	Māl-uistī
	Vŏl-uĭt	Nōl-uĭt	Māl-uĭt
P.	Vŏl-uĭmŭs	Nōl-uĭmŭs	Māl-uĭmŭs
	Vŏl-uistĭs	Nōl-uistĭs	Māl-uistĭs
	Vŏl-uērunt *or* -uĕrĕ	Nōl-uērunt *or* -uĕrĕ	Māl-uērunt *or* -uĕrĕ

347451

5. *Past-Perfect.*

S.	Vŏl-uĕram	Nŏl-uĕram	Măl-uĕram
	Vŏl-uĕrās	Nŏl-uĕrās	Măl-uĕrās
	Vŏl-uĕrăt	Nŏl-uĕrăt	Măl-uĕrăt
P.	Vŏl-uĕrāmŭs	Nŏl-uĕrāmŭs	Măl-uĕrāmŭs
	Vŏl-uĕrātis	Nŏl-uĕrātis	Măl-uĕrātis
	Vŏl-uĕrant	Nŏl-uĕrant	Măl-uĕrant

6. *Future-Perfect.*

S.	Vŏl-uĕro	Nŏl-uĕro	Măl-uĕro
	Vŏl-uĕris	Nŏl-uĕris	Măl-uĕris
	Vŏl-uĕrĭt	Nŏl-uĕrĭt	Măl-uĕrĭt
P.	Vol-uĕrimŭs	Nŏl-uĕrimŭs	Măl-uĕrimŭs
	Vŏl-uĕritis	Nŏl-uĕritis	Măl-uĕritis
	Vŏl-uĕrint	Nŏl-uĕrint	Măl-uĕrint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present-Imperfect.*

S.	Vĕl-im	Nŏl-im	Măl-im
	Vĕl-īs	Nŏl-īs	Măl-īs
	Vĕl-ĭt	Nŏl-ĭt	Măl-ĭt
P.	Vĕl-īmŭs	Nŏl-īmŭs	Măl-īmŭs
	Vĕl-ītis	Nŏl-ītis	Măl-ītis
	Vĕl-int	Nŏl-int	Măl-int

2. *Past-Imperfect.*

S.	Vel-lem	Nol-lem	Mal-lem
	Vel-lēs	Nol-lēs	Mal-lēs
	Vel-lĕt	Nol-lĕt	Mal-lĕt
P.	Vel-lēmŭs	Nol-lēmŭs	Mal-lēmŭs
	Vel-lētis	Nol-lētis	Mal-lētis
	Vel-lent	Nol-lent	Mal-lent

3. *Present-Perfect.*

S.	Vŏl-uĕrim	Nŏl-uĕrim	Măl-uĕrim
	Vŏl-uĕris	Nŏl-uĕris	Măl-uĕris
	Vŏl-uĕrĭt	Nŏl-uĕrĭt	Măl-uĕrĭt
P.	Vŏl-uĕrimŭs	Nŏl-uĕrimŭs	Măl-uĕrimŭs
	Vŏl-uĕritis	Nŏl-uĕritis	Măl-uĕritis
	Vŏl-uĕrint	Nŏl-uĕrint	Măl-uĕrint

4. *Past-Perfect.*

S.	Vŏl-uissem	Nŏl-uissem	Măl-uissem
	Vŏl-uissēs	Nŏl-uissēs	Măl-uissēs
	Vŏl-uissĕt	Nŏl-uissĕt	Măl-uissĕt
P.	Vŏl-uissēmŭs	Nŏl-uissēmŭs	Măl-uissēmŭs
	Vŏl-uissētis	Nŏl-uissētis	Măl-uissētis
	Vŏl-uissent	Nŏl-uissent	Măl-uissent

IMPERATIVE.

Present.

(wanting.)	Nōl-ī Nōl-ītĕ	(wanting.)

Future.

S. Nōl-īto
Nōl-īto
P. Nōl-ītōtĕ
Nōl-unto

INFINITIVE.

Imperfect.

Vel-lĕ	Nol-lĕ	Mal-lĕ

Perfect.

Vōl-uissĕ	Nōl-uissĕ	Māl-uissĕ

IMPERFECT PARTICIPLE.

Vōl-ens	Nōl-ens	(wanting.)

VOCABULARY 43.

cŏmĭtor, etc., 1,	*I accompany.*	vĭdeor, vīsus, 2,	*I seem, appear.*
immŏlo, etc., 1,	*I sacrifice.*	Apollo, ĭnis, *m.*	*Apollo, name of a divinity.*
indulgeo, ulsi, ultum, 2 (*with dat.*),	*I indulge.*	hostia, ae, *f.*	*a victim.*
lūdo, si, sum, 3,	*I play.*	nōbĭlis, e,	*noble, distinguished.*
mĕtuo, ui, ūtum, 3,	*I fear.*	Pȳthăgŏras, ae, *m.*	*Pythagoras, a famous Greek philosopher.*
ōro, etc., 1,	*I entreat.*		
salto, etc., 1,	*I dance.*		
sĕdeo, sēdi, sessum, 2,	*I sit.*		

EXERCISE XLIII.

A.—1. Ego volo legere, tu vis scribere, frater vult pingere. 2. Ego domi sedere nolo, tu ambulare non vis. 3. Tu ambulare mavis quam domi sedere. 4. Soror saltare mavult quam ambulare. 5. Oro te, ut mecum ludere velis. 6. Dic, cur me comitari nolis. 7. Orabam te, ut mecum ludere velles. 8. Nesciebam, cur me comitari nolles. 9. Si beati esse volumus, sorte nostra contenti esse debemus. 10. Si vis amari, ama!

1. We do not wish to walk in the fields; we prefer to remain at home. 2. We wished to read, you wished to write, (our) brother wished to paint. 3. I knew-not (how) to dance; I preferred to write and to read. 4. I wished to read; but

my sister wished to sing and to dance. 5. If you wish to be happy, imitate the examples of good men. 6. Alexander wished to extend his empire beyond the Indi. 7. We do not all obtain those-things which we wish. 8. I had-rather (*Pres.*) fight (*Inf.*) against enemies than against envy. 9. Pompey was unwilling to depart from the city. 10. I entreat you to be willing to accompany me.

B.—1. Ego tibi prodesse malo quam obesse. 2. Non dubito, quin mihi prodesse malis quam obesse. 3. Non dubitabam, quin prodesse mihi malles quam obesse. 4. Amicus maluit diligi quam metui. 5. Secundum naturam volent vivere. 6. Cato esse quam videri bonus malebat. 7. Boni esse mavultis quam nobiles et divites. 8. Pythagoras Apollini hostiam immolare noluit. 9. Nolite dolori nimis indulgere. 10. Idem velle et idem nolle, ea demum firma amicitia est.

1. I had-rather be good than seem (so). 2. Do not* deceive; do not lie; those things (res) very greatly injure friendship. 3. Epaminondas would-not lie. 4. You wish the same things as (*Relative Pron.*) I (wish). 5. We had-rather be useful to our country than be rich. 6. A good man will prefer to be loved (rather) than to be feared. 7. I had-rather be loved by true friends than be rich. 8. The ancient Romans sacrificed very many victims to the gods. 9. Pythagoras was unwilling to indulge anger; he preferred to restrain it. 10. Do not* follow bad examples, my son!

V. Fĕro, tŭlī, ferrĕ, lātum: *to bear, carry, endure.*

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
1. *Present-Imperfect.*		2. *Past-Imperfect.*	
S. Fĕr-o	Fĕr-am	*S.* Fĕr-ēbam	Fer-rem
Fer-s	Fĕr-ās	Fĕr-ēbās	Fer-rēs
Fer-t	Fĕr-ăt	Fĕr-ēbăt	Fer-rĕt
P. Fĕr-ĭmŭs	Fĕr-āmŭs	*P.* Fĕr-ēbāmŭs	Fer-rēmŭs
Fer-tĭs	Fĕr-ātĭs	Fĕr-ēbātĭs	Fer-rētĭs
Fĕr-unt	Fĕr-ant	Fĕr-ēbant	Fer-rent

---

* Use the Imperative of *nolle*. Compare No. 9 of the Latin sentences.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
3. *Future-Imperfect.*	
S. Fĕr-am	Lātūrŭs sim
Fĕr-ēs	Lātūrŭs sīs
Fĕr-ēt	Lātūrŭs sĭt
P. Fĕr-ēmŭs	Lātūrī sīmŭs
Fĕr-ētĭs	Lātūrī sītĭs
Fĕr-ent	Lātūrī sint
4. *Present-Perfect.*	
S. Tŭl-ī	Tŭl-ĕrim
Tŭl-istī	Tŭl-ĕris
Tŭl-ĭt	Tŭl-ĕrĭt
P. Tŭl-ĭmŭs	Tŭl-ĕrimŭs
Tŭl-istĭs	Tŭl-ĕritĭs
Tŭl-ērunt *or* ērĕ	Tŭl-ĕrint

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
5. *Past-Perfect.*	
S. Tŭl-ĕram	Tŭl-issem
Tŭl-ĕrās	Tŭl-issēs
Tŭl-ĕrăt	Tŭl-issĕt
P. Tŭl-ĕrāmŭs	Tŭl-issēmŭs
Tŭl-ĕrātis	Tŭl-issētis
Tŭl-ĕrant	Tŭl-issent
6. *Future-Perfect.*	
S. Tŭl-ĕro	(wanting.)
Tŭl-ĕris	
Tŭl-ĕrĭt	
P. Tŭl-ĕrimŭs	
Tŭl-ĕritĭs	
Tŭl-ĕrint	

Imperative.	
Present.	Fĕr
	Fer-tĕ
Future.	Fer-to
	Fer-to
	Fer-tōtĕ
	Fĕr-unto

Participles.	
Imperfect.	Fĕr-ens
Future.	Lātūrŭs (a, um)

Supines.

Lātum
Lātū

Infinitive.	
Imperfect.	Fer-rĕ
Perfect.	Tŭl-issĕ
Future.	Lātūrum essĕ

Gerund.

Gen. Fĕr-endī
etc.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
1. *Present-Imperfect.*	
S. Fĕr-ŏr	Fĕr-ăr
Fer-rĭs	Fĕr-ārĭs
Fer-tŭr	Fĕr-ātŭr
P. Fĕr-ĭmŭr	Fĕr-āmŭr
Fĕr-iminī	Fĕr-āminī
Fĕr-untŭr	Fĕr-antŭr
2. *Past-Imperfect.*	
S. Fĕr-ēbăr	Fer-rĕr
Fĕr-ēbārĭs	Fer-rērĭs
Fĕr-ēbātŭr	Fer-rētŭr
P. Fĕr-ēbāmŭr	Fer-rēmŭr
Fĕr-ēbāminī	Fer-rēminī
Fĕr-ēbantŭr	Fer-rentŭr

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
3. *Future-Imperfect.*	
S. Fĕr-ăr	(wanting.)
Fĕr-ērĭs	
Fĕr-ētŭr	
P. Fĕr-ēmŭr	
Fĕr-ēminī	
Fĕr-entŭr	
4. *Present-Perfect.*	
S. Lātŭs sum	Lātŭs sim
Lātŭs ĕs	Lātŭs sīs
Lātŭs est	Lātŭs sĭt
P. Lātī sumus	Lātī sīmŭs
Lātī estĭs	Lātī sītĭs
Lātī sunt	Lātī sint

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	5. *Past-Perfect.*		6. *Future-Perfect.*	
S.	Lātŭs ĕram	Lātŭs essem	Lātŭs ĕro	(wanting.)
	Lātŭs ĕrās	Lātŭs essēs	Lātŭs ĕris	
	Lātŭs ĕrăt	Lātŭs essĕt	Lātŭs ĕrit	
P.	Lāti ĕrāmŭs	Lāti essēmŭs	Lāti ĕrimŭs	
	Lāti ĕrātis	Lāti essētis	Lāti ĕritis	
	Lāti ĕrant	Lāti essent	Lāti ĕrunt	

Imperative.		Infinitive.	
Present.	Fer-rĕ	*Imperfect.*	Fer-ri
	Fĕr-imĭnī	*Perfect.*	Lātum essĕ
Future.	Fer-tŏr	*Future.*	Lātum īrī
	Fer-tŏr	Participles.	
	Fĕr-untŏr	*Perfect.*	Lātŭs (a, um)
		Gerundive.	Fĕr-endŭs (a, um)

Obs. The compounds of fĕro are conjugated in the same way: *e. g.*

Affĕro	(ad, fero),	attŭlī,	allātum,	afferrĕ,	*bring to.*
Aufero	(ab, fero),	abstŭlī,	ablātum,	auferrĕ,	*carry away.*
Effero	(ex, fero),	extŭlī,	ēlātum,	efferrĕ,	*carry out.*
Infero	(in, fero),	intŭlī,	illātum,	inferrĕ,	*carry into.*
Offĕro	(ob, fero),	obtŭlī,	oblātum,	offerrĕ,	*present.*
Perfĕro	(per, fero),	pertŭlī,	perlātum,	perferrĕ,	*bear through, endure.*
Praefĕro	(prae, fero),	praetŭlī,	praelātum,	praeferrĕ,	*prefer.*
Rĕfĕro	(re, fero),	rŭtŭlī, rettŭlī,	rĕlātum,	rĕferrĕ,	*bring back.*

Vocabulary 44.

sĕro, sēvi, sătum, 3,	*I plant, sow.*	ŏnus, ĕris, *n.*	*load, burden.*
aerumna, ae, *f.*	*trouble, affliction.*	pătienter, *adv.*	*patiently.*
auxilium, ii, *n.*	*help, assistance.*	paupertas, ātis, *f.*	*poverty.*
frūges, um (*pl.*), *f.*	*fruits, a crop.*	prūdentia, ae, *f.*	*knowledge, prudence.*
inops, ŏpis, *adj.*	*needy, destitute.*	Phrase:	
		Auxilium ferre,	*to render assistance.*

Exercise XLIV.

1. Senectus affert prudentiam. 2. Laudo vos, quod misero atque inopi auxilium fertis. 3. Ferre laborem consuetudo docet. 4. Nihil potest praeferri virtuti. 5. Curabamus, ut vobis auxilium ferremus. 6. Rex curabat, ut inopibus civibus auxilium ferretur. 7. Non omnis ager, qui seritur, fert fruges. 8. Agricola paupertatis onus patienter tulit. 9. Fer patienter laborem. 10. Milites in itineribus multas aerumnas pertulerunt.

1. Socrates bore hardships most patiently. 2. Learn thou

to bear well pleasure and pain. 3. Cato bore old age excellently well (*superl.* of bene). 4. There is no doubt that old age brings many sorrows with it (secum). 5. Caesar ordered two cohorts to bring assistance to the cavalry. 6. I have learned to bring assistance to the wretched. 7. A sailor ought to be able to bear patiently the hardships of the sea. 8. A good man is able to bear with even mind the hardships of life. 9. Who can endure the discourse of this unlearned man? 10. The Romans knew (how) to bear with even mind the greatest disasters.

VI. Ĕo, īvī, ĭrĕ, ĭtum: *to go.*

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	1. *Present-Imperfect.*	
S.	Ĕ-o	E-am
	Ĭ-s	E-ās
	Ĭ-t	E-ăt
P.	Ĭ-mŭs	E-āmŭs
	Ĭ-tis	E-ātis
	E-unt	E-ant
	2. *Past-Imperfect.*	
S.	Ĭ-bam	Ĭ-rem
	Ĭ-bās	Ĭ-rēs
	Ĭ-băt	Ĭ-rĕt
P.	Ĭ-bāmŭs	Ĭ-rēmŭs
	Ĭ-bātis	Ĭ-rētis
	Ĭ-bant	Ĭ-rent
	3. *Future-Imperfect.*	
S.	Ĭ-bo	Ĭ-tūrŭs sim
	Ĭ-bis	Ĭ-tūrŭs sis
	Ĭ-bit	Ĭ-tūrŭs sit
P.	Ĭ-bimŭs	Ĭ-tūrī sīmŭs
	Ĭ-bitis	Ĭ-tūrī sītis
	Ĭ-bunt	Ĭ-tūrī sint

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	4. *Present-Perfect.*	
S.	Ĭ-vī *or* Ĭ-ī	Ĭ-vĕrim *or* Ĭ-ĕrim
	Ĭ-vistī etc.	Ĭ-vĕris etc.
	Ĭ-vit etc.	Ĭ-vĕrit etc.
P.	Ĭ-vimŭs etc.	Ĭ-vĕrimŭs etc.
	Ĭ-vistis etc.	Ĭ-vĕritis etc.
	Ĭ-vērunt etc. *or* Ĭ-vērĕ	Ĭ-vĕrint etc.
	5. *Past-Perfect.*	
S.	Ĭ-vĕram *or* Ĭ-ĕram	Ĭ-vissem, Ĭ-issem *or* I-ssem
	Ĭ-vērās etc.	Ĭ-vissēs etc.
	Ĭ-vērăt etc.	Ĭ-vissĕt etc.
P.	Ĭ-vērāmŭs etc.	Ĭ-vissēmŭs etc.
	Ĭ-vērātis etc.	Ĭ-vissētis etc.
	Ĭ-vĕrant etc.	Ĭ-vissent etc.
	6. *Future-Perfect.*	
S.	Ĭ-vĕro *or* Ĭ-ĕro	(wanting.)
	Ĭ-vĕris etc.	
	Ĭ-vĕrit etc.	
P.	Ĭ-vĕrimŭs etc.	
	Ĭ-vĕritis etc.	
	Ĭ-vĕrint etc.	

Imperative.	
Present.	Ĭ
	I-tĕ
Future.	Ĭ-to
	Ĭ-to
	Ĭ-tōtĕ
	Ĕ-unto

Infinitive.	
Imperfect.	Ĭ-rĕ
Perfect.	Ĭ-vissĕ, Iissĕ *or* issĕ
Future.	Ĭ-tūrum essĕ

Participles.	
Imperfect.	Ĭ-ens (*Gen.* ĕ-untĭs)
Future.	Ĭ-tūrŭs, (ă, um)

	Gerund.	Supine.
Gen.	Ĕ-undi, etc.	Ĭ-tum

The Compounds of *ĕo* are conjugated in the same way. The following are the principal:

ăb-ĕo, ăb-ĭi,	ăb-ĭtum,	*to go away.*
ăd-eo,	etc.	*to go to.*
cŏ-eo,	etc.	*to join together.*
ex-eo,	etc.	*to go out.*
ĭn-eo, intro-eo,	etc.	*to go into, enter.*
intĕr-eo,	etc.	*to perish.*
ŏb-eo,	etc.	*to meet;* esp. *to meet death; to die.*
pĕr-eo,	etc.	*to perish.*
prae-eo,	etc.	*to go before.*
praetĕr-eo,	etc.	*to pass by.*
rĕd-eo,	etc.	*to return.*
sŭb-eo,	etc.	*to go up to.*
trans-eo,	etc.	*to cross over.*

N.B.—In the Compounds the form *ii* is used in preference to *ivi*.

Vocabulary 45.

occīdo, īdi, īsum, 3,	*I kill, slay.*	**hĭlăris, e,**	*cheerful.*
stătuo, ui, ūtum, 3,	*I fix, determine.*	**ōrăcŭlum, i,** *n.*	*oracle.*
atrox, ōcis,	*stern, sanguinary, cruel.*	**silentium, ii,** *n.*	*silence.*
		suprēmus, a, um,	*highest, last.*
făcĭlĕ, *adv.*	*easily.*	**unquam,** *adv.*	*at any time, ever.*
fāmes, is, *f.*	*hunger.*		

Exercise XLV.

1. Ego abeo, tu ex itinere redis. 2. Post mortem corpus interit, animus nunquam interibit. 3. Quum animi nostri ex corporibus exierint, non interibunt. 4. In pugna atrocissima multi fortissimi milites perierunt. 5. Curare debemus, ne vitam silentio transeamus. 6. Milites e castris redeuntes occisi sunt. 7. Socrates aequo atque hilari animo diem supremum obiit. 8. Magna pars militum fame et frigore interiit. 9. Alpes nemo unquam ante Hannibalem cum exercitu transierat. 10. Alexander adire ad Jovis oraculum statuit.

1. Very many (persons) pass their life in silence. 2. Let us go-out from the camp; let us return into the city. 3. Caesar threw a bridge over the river, in-order-that his soldiers might cross on foot (pedibus). 4. A brave man will meet his last day with even mind. 5. Fifteen thousand of the Romans perished in that desperate battle. 6. We ought all to be able

to meet our last day with even mind. 7. After the battle very many perished of hunger (*Abl.*) and cold (*Abl.*). 8. Let us go to the temples of the gods. 9. I pass by very many things in silence. 10. Italy is fortified by the Alps, (those) most lofty mountains, which an army will not easily cross.

VII. **Fĭo, factŭs sum, fĭĕrī**: *to become* or *be made, to happen.*

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
1. *Present-Imperfect.*	
S. **Fī-o**	**Fī-am**
Fī-s	**Fī-ās**
Fī-t	**Fī-ăt**
P. **[Fī-mŭs]**	**Fī-āmŭs**
[Fī-tĭs]	**Fī-ātĭs**
Fī-unt	**Fī-ant**
2. *Past-Imperfect.*	
S. **Fī-ēbam**	**Fī-ĕrem**
Fī-ēbās	**Fī-ĕrēs**
Fī-ēbăt	**Fī-ĕrĕt**
P. **Fī-ēbāmŭs**	**Fī-ĕrēmŭs**
Fī-ēbātĭs	**Fī-ĕrētĭs**
Fī-ēbant	**Fī-ĕrent**

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
3. *Future-Imperfect.*	
S. **Fī-am**	(wanting.)
Fī-ēs	
Fī-ĕt	
P. **Fī-ēmŭs**	
Fī-ētĭs	
Fī-ent	
4. *Present-Perfect.*	
Factŭs sum, etc.	**Factŭs sim, etc.**
5. *Past-Perfect.*	
Factŭs ĕram, etc.	**Factŭs essem, etc.**
6. *Future-Perfect.*	
Factŭs ĕro, etc.	(wanting.)

Imperative.	
Present.	**Fī, Fī-tĕ**
Participles.	
Perfect.	**Factŭs** (a, um)
Gerundive.	**Făciendŭs** (a, um)

Infinitive.	
Imperfect.	**Fī-ĕrī**
Perfect.	**Factum essĕ**
Future.	**Factum īrī**

Fio is used as the Passive of fácio.

Vocabulary 46.

adjŭvo, jūvi, jūtum, 1,	*I assist.*
nequeo, quīvi *and* **quii ĭtum**, 4 (*irreg.*, like eo),	*I am unable, can not.*
casus, us, *m.*	*chance, accident.*
consĭlium, ii, *n.*	*advice, counsel, plan.*
infectus, a, um,	*undone.*
grăvis, e,	*heavy, severe.*
noxius, a, um,	*guilty.*
sŏcius, ii, *m.*	*partner, ally, companion.*
Thĕmistocles, is, *m.*	*Themistocles, a famous Athenian.*

Exercise XLVI.

1. Nemo fit casu bonus. 2. Ex amico inimicus, ex inimico amicus fieri potest. 3. Senectute prudentior fis. 4. Nemo

ignavia immortalis factus est. 5. Deus dixit: fiat, et factus est mundus. 6. Apud veteres Romanos ex agricolis fiebant consules. 7. Themistoclis consilio factum est, ut Athenienses urbem relinquerent. 8. Onus, quod bene fertur, leve fit. 9. Quod factum est, infectum fieri nequit. 10. Qui noxium adjuvabit, fiet socius culpae.

1. No one becomes altogether-base (*Sup.*) by chance. 2. This heavy burden was made light by patience. 3. There is no doubt that the heaviest sorrows become lighter by patience. 4. Bear these things through, citizens: (things) done can not be made undone. 5. In time our soldiers will be made more daring. 6. Two consuls were appointed (made). 7. There is no doubt that the danger has become more severe with time. 8. In the winter time the days become shorter and the nights longer. 9. In the time of Philip, the Athenians had become the allies of the Romans. 10. Do not assist a guilty-person; in-that-way you will become a partner in (=of) his fault.

VIII. Neuter Passive Verbs.

Besides Fio several other Intransitive Verbs form their Perfect Tenses after the manner of Passives. The principal of these are the following:

Audeo, ausus sum, audēre,	*to dare, venture.*
Fīdo, fīsus sum, fīdĕre (with *Dat.* or *Abl.*),	*to trust.*
Gaudeo, gāvīsus sum, gaudēre (with *Abl.*),	*to rejoice.*
Sŏleo, sŏlĭtus sum, sŏlēre,	*to be accustomed.*

So, too, coeno, *to sup* or *dine*, often takes coenātus sum, and jūro, *to swear*, jurātus sum, instead of coenāvi, jurāvi. Such Verbs are called Neuter-Passives.

Vocabulary 47.

addisco, dĭdĭci (*no sup.*), 3,	*I learn in addition.*	**nāvālis, e,**	*naval.*
bĭbo, bĭbi, bĭbĭtum, 3,	*I drink.*	**Nīlus, i,** *m.*	*the Nile, the river of Egypt.*
conservo, etc., 1,	*I preserve.*	**nonnullus, a, um,**	*some.*
curro, cŭcurri, cursum, 3,	*I run.*	**quŏtīdiē,** *adv.*	*every day, daily.*
interfĭcio, fēci, fectum, 3,	*I put to death, kill.*	**tam,** *adv.*	*so, to such a degree.*
ălĭquis, qua, quid, *pron.*	*someone, something.*		
Carthāginiensis, e,	*Carthaginian.*		

Phrase:

In legem jurare, *to swear to a law.*

Exercise XLVII.

1. Nonnullae aves prope ad domicilia hominum accedere audent. 2. Optimus ille vir mori ausus est; non autem mentiri. 3. Canes solebant currentes bibere in flumine Nilo. 4. Jam coenati eramus, et in horto ambulabamus. 5. Maxime gavisi sunt cives quod urbs servata erat. 6. In has leges jurati estis, et debetis jusjurandum vestrum conservare. 7. Solitus est Solon aliquid quotidie addiscere. 8. Multum gavisi sunt Romani quod Carthaginienses navali praelio vicerant. 9. Caesar fisus est rebus suis. 10. Gavisus est consul quod illum tam fidelem socium repererat.

1. The ancient Britons were accustomed to clothe themselves with skins. 2. Some animals are accustomed to dwell both (et) in the water and on (in) land. 3. The Helvetii were accustomed to receive hostages, not to give (them). 4. The Romans rejoiced when Cicero returned to the city. 5. The general trusted in himself (*Dative*). 6. Dare to die, citizens! 7. When you return (*Fut.-Perf.*) we shall already have dined. 8. All the magistrates had sworn to the laws. 9. We ought to rejoice because the war has been brought-to-an-end. 10. The whole city rejoiced that (quod) the conspiracy had been discovered.

XXXI.—Impersonal Verbs.

Impersonal Verbs are such as can not have a Personal subject (I, thou, he), and are used only in the Third Person Singular.

The following are the principal Impersonal Verbs:

I. Verbs which denote Mental States.

Dĕcĕt, dĕcŭit, dĕcĕrĕ,	*it is seemly.*
Dēdĕcĕt, dēdĕcŭit, dēdĕcĕrĕ,	*it is unseemly.*
Lĭbĕt, lĭbŭit *and* **lĭbĭtum est, lĭbĕrĕ,**	*it pleases.*
Licĕt, lĭcŭit *and* **lĭcĭtum est, licĕrĕ,**	*it is lawful, it is allowed.*
Liquĕt, liquĕrĕ,	*it is clear.*
Miserĕt *or* **miserētŭr, miserĭtum est, miserĕrĕ,**	*it excites pity.*
Oportĕt, oportŭit, oportĕrĕ,	*it behooves.*
Pigĕt, pigŭit *and* **pigĭtum est, pigĕrĕ,**	*it vexes.*
Placĕt, placŭit *or* **placĭtum est, placĕrĕ,**	*it pleases.*
Poenĭtĕt, poenĭtŭit, poenĭtĕrĕ,	*it causes sorrow, repents*
Pŭdĕt, pŭdŭit *or* **pŭdĭtum est, pŭdĕrĕ,**	*it shames.*
Taedĕt, (pertaesum est), taedĕrĕ,	*it disgusts, wearies.*

The Persons are expressed in the following way in the Present Indicative, and similarly in the other Tenses:

Pŭdĕt mē,	*it shames me,* or *I am ashamed.*
Pŭdĕt tē,	*it shames thee,* or *thou art ashamed.*
Pŭdĕt eum,	*it shames him,* or *he is ashamed.*
Pŭdĕt nōs,	*it shames us,* or *we are ashamed.*
Pŭdĕt vōs,	*it shames you,* or *you are ashamed.*
Pŭdĕt eōs,	*it shames them,* or *they are ashamed.*

All these Verbs govern the subject in the Accusative Case, except lĭbet, lĭcet, lĭquet, and plăcet, which govern the Dative; as, mĭhi lĭbĕt, *it pleases me;* mĭhi lĭcĕt, *it is lawful for me, I am at liberty,* etc.

II. VERBS WHICH DENOTE ATMOSPHERICAL PHENOMENA.

Grandĭnăt, 1,	*it hails.*
Ningĭt, ninxĭt, ningĕrĕ,	*it snows.*
Plŭĭt, plŭĭt *or* **plūvĭt, pluĕrĕ,**	*it rains.*
Tŏnăt, tŏnuĭt, tŏnārĕ,	*it thunders.*
Lūcescĭt, (illuxit), **lūcescĕrĕ,**	*it becomes light.*
Vespĕrascĭt, vespĕrāvĭt, vespĕrascĕre,	*evening approaches.*

VOCABULARY 48.

deploro, etc., 1,	*I lament over, deplore.*	**Ariovistus, i,** *m.*	*Ariovistus, a German king.*
īrascor, īrātus, 3, *dep.*	*I am angry.*	**fortĕ,** *adv.*	*by chance.*
mitto, mīsi, missum, 3,	*I send.*	**infāmia, ae,** *f.*	*infamy.*
tăceo, ui, ĭtum, 2,	*I am silent.*	**mĭnĭmē,** *adv.*	*in the least degree, by no means.*
trĭbuo, ui, ūtum, 3,	*I give, assign.*	**nĕc, nĕquĕ,** *conj.*	*neither, nor.*
		stultĭtia, ae, *f.*	*folly.*

EXERCISE XLVIII.

1. Me pudet poenitetque stultitiae meae. 2. Homines infamiae suae neque pudet neque taedet. 3. Nos oportet hoc facere. 4. Nobis non licebit castris exire. 5. Me civitatis morum piget taedetque. 6. Oratorem irasci minime decet. 7. Non libet mihi deplorare vitam. 8. Placuit Caesari, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret. 9. Pueros decet tacere. 10. Si forte tonuerat, veteres tribuere solebant Jovi.

1. That wicked man (*Acc.*) repents not of his crime (scelus). 2. What does it behoove us to do? 3. It behooved you to maintain the laws. 4. It-is-unbecoming-in a citizen to de-

ceive his fellow-citizens. 5. I am vexed and disgusted at the folly (*Gen.*) of these men. 6. In the winter it seldom thunders; in the summer it seldom snows. 7. Evening-is-coming-on; let us go-out from the fields and let us return to the city. 8. On the same day it thundered, hailed, snowed, (and) rained. 9. You may (it is allowed to you) go forth (*Inf.*) from the city, citizens! 10. Dare to be free, Romans! it is allowed to all to die!

XXXII.—Defective Verbs.

Defective Verbs are such as want many Tenses and Persons.

I. **Coepi,** *I begin* or *began.*
II. **Mĕmĭni,** *I remember.*
III. **Ōdi,** *I hate.*

These three are called *Preteritive Verbs*, as being used generally in only the Preterit or Perfect Tenses.

Indicative.—*Pres.-Perf.*	**Coepi**		**Mĕmĭni**	**Ōdi**
Past-Perf.	**Coepĕram**		**Mĕmĭnĕram**	**Oderam**
Fut.-Perf.	**Coepĕro**		**Mĕmĭnĕro**	**Oderō**
Subjunctive.—*Pres.-Perf.*	**Coepĕrim**		**Mĕmĭnĕrim**	**Oderim**
Past-Perf.	**Coepissem**		**Mĕmĭnissem**	**Odissem**
Imperative.—*Future.*	(wanting.)	*S.*	**Mĕmento**	(wanting.)
		P.	**Mementōte**	
Infinitive.—*Perfect.*	**Coepisse**		**Mĕmĭnisse**	**Odisse**
Participle.—*Future.*	**Coeptūrus**		(wanting.)	**Osūrus**
Perfect.	**Coeptus**		(wanting.)	**Ōsus**

IV. Aio, *I say.*

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Present-Imperfect.		*Past-Imperfect.*	
S. **Aio**	——	*S.* **Aiēbam**	(wanting.)
Ais	**Aiās**	**Aiēbās**	
Ait	**Aiăt**	**Aiēbăt**	
P. ——	——	*P.* **Aiēbāmus**	
——	——	**Aiēbātis**	
Aiunt	**Aiant**	**Aiēbant**	

Participle.—*Imperfect.* **Aiens.**

V. **Inquam**, *say I.*

Indicative.		Indicative.	
Pres.-Imperf.	*Past-Imperf.*	*Fut.-Imperf.*	*Pres.-Perfect.*
S. **Inquam**	———	*S.* ———	———
Inquis	———	**Inquiēs**	**Inquisti**
Inquit	**Inquiēbăt**	**Inquiēt**	**Inquit**
P. **Inquĭmus**	———		
Inquĭtis	———		
Inquiunt	**Inquiēbant**		

Imperative.

Present.	*Future.*
S. **Inquĕ**	*2d Sing.* **Inquĭto**

Obs. Inquam, like the English *say I, says he*, is always used after other words in a sentence.

VI. **Fāri**, *to speak* (a Deponent).

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imperative.	Infinitive.
Present-Imperfect.		*Present.*	*Imperfect.*
S. **Fātur**	(wanting.)	*S.* **Fārĕ**	**Fāri**
Future-Imperfect.			
S. **Fābor**	(wanting.)		
Fābĭtur			

Present-Perfect.
Fātus sum, etc. **Fātus sim**, etc.

Past-Perfect.
Fātus ĕram, etc. **Fātus essem**, etc.

Participles.
Imperfect. **Fantis**, etc. (without a *Nom.*)
Perfect. **Fātus** (ă, um)
Gerundive. **Fandus** (ă, um)

Supine. **Fātu**
Gerund. **Fandi**, do, etc.

XXXIII.—The Genders of Substantives.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Males, Mountains, Months, Winds, and Rivers, are *Masculine.*

2. Females, Countries, Islands, Towns, and Trees, are *Feminine.*

3. Indeclinable Substantives, as fās, *permitted by heaven*, nĕfas, *not permitted by heaven*, nĭhĭl, *nothing*, are *Neuter.*

4. Substantives denoting both the male and the female, as conjux, *husband* or *wife*, are *Common.*

SPECIAL RULES RELATING TO THE DECLENSIONS.

I. First Declension.—All Substantives of the First Declension are Feminine; unless they designate males, as, nauta, *a sailor.*

II. Second Declension.—Substantives in **us** and **er** are Masculine; those in **um** are Neuter.

A few Substantives in **us** are Feminine; as, alvus, *the belly;* cŏlus, *a distaff;* hŭmus, *the ground;* vannus, *a winnowing fan;* arctus, *the constellation Bear;* carbăsus, *fine flax.*

A few Substantives in **us** are Neuter; as, vīrus, *poison;* pĕlăgus, *the sea;* vulgus, *the common people.*

III. Third Declension.—Substantives of the Third Declension are Masculine, Feminine, or Neuter. Their gender must be learned by practice. But the following terminations indicate genders:

1. *Masculine.*—(*a*) Substantives in **or** derived from verbs; as, ăm-or, *love,* from ămo, *I love.*

   (*b*) Substantives in **tor** derived from verbs; as, ămā-tor, *a lover,* from ămo, *I love;* vic-tor, *a conqueror,* from vinco, *I conquer.*

2. *Feminine.*—(*a*) Substantives in **io** and **tio** derived from verbs; as, audī-tio, *hearing,* from audio, *I hear.*

   (*b*) Substantives in **tūs** derived from Substantives; as, vir-tus, *manliness,* from vir, *a man.*

   (*c*) Substantives in **tās** derived from Substantives and Adjectives; as, cīvī-tas, *citizenship,* from cīvis, *a citizen;* crūdēlī-tas, *cruelty,* from crūdēlis, *cruel.*

   (*d*) Substantives in **tūdo** derived from Adjectives; as, longī-tūdo, *length,* from longus, *long.*

   (*e*) Substantives in **trix** derived from Substantives in *tor;* as, vic-trix, *a female conqueror,* from vic-tor.

3. *Neuter.*—(*a*) Substantives in **e**; as, mărĕ, *the sea.*

   (*b*) Substantives in **mĕn** derived from Verbs; as, flū-men, *a river,* from flu-ere, *to flow.*

   (*c*) Substantives in **ŭs** and **ŭr**; as, ŏpus, *a work;* fulgur, *lightning.*

IV. Fourth Declension.—Substantives in **ŭs** are Masculine: those in **u** are Neuter.

A few Substantives in **us** are Feminine: viz., trĭbus, *a tribe* (a division of the Roman people); ăcus, *a needle;* portĭcus, *a portico;* dŏmus, *a house;* nŭrus, *a daughter-in-law;* ănus, *an old woman;* socrus, *a mother-in-law;* īdūs (*pl.*), *the Ides* (a division of the Roman month); mănŭs, *a hand.*

V. Fifth Declension.—All are Feminine except *dies* (*mĕrīdies*), which in the Plural is always Masculine, and in the Singular either Masculine or Feminine.

Additional Rules of Quantity.

1. A vowel resulting from contraction is long; as, *cōgo*, from *cŏăgo.*

2. Derivatives follow the quantity of the words from which they are derived; as, *nāvālis*, from *nāvis*, etc.

3. Words adopted from the Greek generally retain the quantity of the original; as, *Pallās, ădis*, from Παλλάς, ἄδος.

Remark.—Sometimes they fall under the ordinary Latin rules, as *rhĕtŏr*, from ῥήτωρ, where the final vowel is short before *r* final.

4. Compound words generally retain the quantity of the simple words of which they are compounded; as, *dēmitto*, from *dē; quālibet* or *quīvis*, from *quī*, etc.

5. Monosyllables ending in a vowel have that vowel long, as *ā, dā, mē, prō, tū*, etc., except enclitics; as, *quĕ, nĕ* (interrog.), etc.

6. Final *a* in words that are not declined is long, as *frustrā*, etc., except *ităque* and *quiăque* (also *eiăque* and *putăque*, which do not frequently occur).

7. Final *e* in words of more than one syllable is usually short; as, *temporĕ, creditĕ, tristĕ*, etc.

Exceptions.—In the cases of the First and Fifth Declensions (as *Phoebē, diē*), in the Second Singular of Imperative of the Second Conjugation (as *monē, salvē*), in Adverbs in *e* from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions (as *justē, pulchrē*), and in *fermē, ferē, olē*, the final *e* is long.

PART II.

SOME SYNTACTICAL RULES.

The pupil should repeat the Syntactical Rules already given:

	Page		Page		Page
Rule 1.....	3	Rule 7.....	14	Rule 13.....	60
" 2.....	4	" 8.....	25	" 14.....	61
" 3.....	4	" 9.....	31	" 15.....	77
" 4.....	4	" 10.....	45	" 16.....	89
" 5.....	7	" 11.....	57	" 17.....	90
" 6.....	10	" 12.....	59		

XXXIV.—The Ablative after the Comparative.

Rule 18.—After Adjectives in the Comparative degree *quam* may be omitted and the Ablative used instead of the Nominative or Accusative; as, vīliŭs argentum est auro, *silver is more common than gold.*

Vocabulary 49.

cunctus, a, um,	*all, all together.*	**Phīdias, ae,** *m.*	*Phidias, a famous Athenian sculptor.*
dissīmĭlis, e,	*unlike.*	**proxĭmus, a, um,**	*nearest, next.*
fĕrox, ōcis,	*fierce, spirited.*	**scientia, ae,** *f.*	*knowledge.*
ignōrātio, onis, *f.*	*ignorance.*	**sĕd,** *conj.*	*but.*
infĕrĭŏr, ŭs (*comp.*),	*lower, inferior.*	**sĭmĭlis, e,**	*like.*
mălum, i, *n.*	*an evil.*	**sĭmŭlācrum, i,** *n.*	*image, statue.*
perfectus, a, um,	*finished, perfect.*	**vīlis, e,**	*cheap, common.*
praestābĭlis, e,	*excellent.*		

Exercise XLIX.

1. Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum. 2. Deus major et potentior est cunctis. 3. Nihil est majus amicitiā, nihil jucundius. 4. Homini Deus nihil mente praestabilius dedit. 5. Ignoratio futurorum malorum utilior scientiā esse

videtur. 6. Elephanto belluarum nulla prudentior est. 7 Tullus Hostilius non solum proximo regi dissimilis, sed ferocior etiam Romulo fuit. 8. Humana omnia inferiora sunt virtute. 9. Phidiae simulacris nihil est perfectius. 10. Sol major et splendidior est lunā.

1. What is brighter than the sun? what more excellent than virtue? 2. Who doubts that the sun is larger than the moon? 3. The earth is greater than the moon; the sun than the earth. 4. Silver and gold are brighter than iron. 5. The elephant is more sagacious than all (other) beasts. 6. There is no doubt that the knowledge of these things is better than the ignorance (of them). 7. Caesar was more powerful than all (the rest of) the citizens. 8. What is commoner than water? yet (autem) what is more useful? 9. Hatred is better than pretense of friendship. 10. No-one of the Athenians is more renowned than Socrates.

XXXV.—Ablative Absolute.

Rule 19.—When a secondary clause contains a different subject from the subject of the principal clause, the Verb in the secondary clause is in Latin frequently changed into a Participle, and agrees with its subject in the Ablative Case. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute; as, sōlĕ ortō, Rōmānī hostēs vīdērunt, *when the sun had risen, the Romans saw the enemy.*

The Latin language possesses no Perfect Participle Active except in the case of Deponent Verbs; hence in English the Perfect Participle Active, which agrees with the subject of the Verb, is in Latin put in the Ablative Case together with its own object; as, Caesăr, expŏsĭtō exercĭtū, ăd hostēs contendĭt, *Cæsar, having landed the army, hastens against the enemy.*

Vocabulary 50.

cognosco, nōvi, nĭtum, 3, *I learn, ascertain.*	**conflĭcio, fēci, fectum, 3,** *I finish, accomplish.*
comprĕhendo, di, sum, 3, *I seize.*	**convŏco,** etc., 1, *I call together.*

conscendo, di, sum, 3,	*I mount, go on board (ship).*
contendo, di, sum *and* tum, 3,	*I strain, hasten.*
efflōresco, flōrŭi, *no sup.*, 3,	*to blossom forth.*
expōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, 3,	*I put forth, disembark (troops).*
intŭmesco, tŭmŭi, *no sup.*, 3,	*to swell.*
lăbor, lapsus, 3, *dep.*	*I glide, pass away, fall.*
ŏrior, ortus, 4, *dep.*	*I rise.*
perlĕgo, lēgi, lectum, 3,	*I read through.*
perrumpo, rūpi, ruptum, 3,	*I burst through.*
præmitto, mīsi, missum, 3,	*I send on before.*
rĕcīto, etc., 1,	*I read aloud.*
recŭpĕro, etc., 1,	*I recover, get back.*
regno, etc., 1,	*I reign, am king.*
sentio, sensi, sensum, 4,	*I feel, perceive.*
salvo, lvi, lŭtum, 3,	*I loosen, melt.*
subsĕquor, secūtus, 3, *dep.*	*I follow up.*
suscipio, cēpi, ceptum, 3,	*I undertake.*
vexo, etc., 1,	*I vex, harass.*
ætas, ātis, *f.*	*age, time of life.*
Arbēla, ōrum, n. *and* æ, *f.*	*Arbela, a town in Assyria.*
Cassivellaunus, i, m.	*Cassivellaunus, a British chief*
dēlectus, us, m.	*a levy.*
infirmus, a, um,	*infirm, feeble.*
nix, nivis, *f.*	*snow.*
Pisistrātus, i, m.	*Pisistratus, a despot of Athens.*
sĕnātus, us, m.	*senate.*
statim, *adv.*	*immediately.*

PHRASES:

Delectum habēre,	*to hold a levy.*
Maxima itinĕra,	*forced marches.*
Navem (naves) conscendĕre,	*to embark.*

EXERCISE L.

A.—1. Sole oriente, nox fugit. 2. Recuperata pace, artes efflorescunt. 3. Alpibus superatis, Hannibal in Italiam venit. 4. Labitur aetas, nobis non sentientibus. 5. Pompeius, ineunte vere, bellum suscepit. 6. His paratis rebus, Caesar milites naves conscendere jubet. 7. Cognito hostium adventu, Caesar naves ex portu educit. 8. Caesar, exposito exercitu, ad hostes contendet. 9. Nivibus solutis, intumescere solent flumina. 10. Solon et Pisistratus, Servio Tullio regnante, vixerunt.

NOTE.—The words which are to be expressed by the Ablative Absolute are put in Italics.

1. *When the sun rises (the sun rising)*, all (things) become brighter. 2. *When the moon had risen*, the night was made brighter. 3. *When Cato was slain*, the commonwealth perished. 4. *When these things were done*, Caesar orders his soldiers to embark. 5. Caesar, *after he had overcome the Gauls*, waged war with Pompeius. 6. *Having heard these things*, he led his army to the banks of the river. 7. *Whilst Servius Tullius was*

king (*Serv. Tull. being-king*), the city was fortified with a wall of-stone. 8. *Having learned these things*, he hastened into the territory of the enemy. 9. *Having thrown a bridge across the river* (*the river being joined by a bridge*), he orders the soldiers to cross. 10. *Having disembarked his soldiers*, he began to lay waste the lands of the enemy.

B.—1. Bello Punico confecto, triumphavit Scipio cum summo honore. 2. Dario apud Arbela victo, Alexander Asia potitus est. 3. His literis perlectis, consul comprehendi eos jubet. 4. Conjuratione detecta, jam servata esse videbatur civitas. 5. Senatu convocato, Cicero literas recitat quas de conjuratione acceperat. 6. His rebus paratis, contendit Caesar maximis itineribus in agros Helvetiorum. 7. Delectu habito, consul ad exercitum statim proficiscitur. 8. Catone mortuo nulla jam erat respublica. 9. Caesare occiso, gravissime vexata est respublica bello civili. 10. Proelio commisso, conantur Galli aciem Romanorum perrumpere.

1. *Having learned these things*, Caesar orders his soldiers to embark immediately. 2. *Having learned their plan*, Caesar led his army into the territories of Cassivellaunus. 3. Caesar, *having sent forward his cavalry*, ordered the legions immediately to follow up. 4. Our men, *having slain many of* (ex) *the enemy*, returned to the camp. 5. Cassivellaunus, *having heard of this disaster*, sends embassadors to (ad) Caesar concerning peace. 6. *Having extended* (*his*) *empire* as far as the Indus, Alexander returned toward the west. 7. *When this war is finished*, we shall be safe to enjoy peace. 8. (*With*) *you* (*for*) *our leader*, we shall be safe. 9. *When old age is attained* (adeptus*), our bodies become more feeble. 10. *Having slain many of* (ex) *the enemy*, he led his army into winter quarters.

* N.B.—*Adeptus*, with a few other Perfect Participles of Deponent Verbs, is used both in an Active and Passive sense.

XXXVI.—The Accusative expressing Duration or Extent of Time, Distance, and Dimension.

Rule 20.—The answers to the questions, *How long? How far? How high? How deep? How broad? How old?* are put in Latin in the Accusative Case; as, sex et vīgintī annōs regnāvĭt, *he reigned twenty-six years;* aggĕ-

rem lātum pĕdēs trĕcentōs, altum pĕdēs quinquāgintā exstruxērunt, *they heaped up a mound* 300 *feet broad and* 50 *feet high.*

The Accusative, answering the question *How long?* is called the Accusative of *duration of time.*

VOCABULARY 51.

extruo, uxi, uctum, 3,	*I heap up.*
pōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum, 3,	*I place.*
obsĭdeo, sēdi, sessum, 2,	*I blockade, lay siege to.*
Athēnae, ārum, *f.* (*only pl.*)	*Athens.*
bestiŏla, ae, *f.*	*a small animal, insect.*
campus, i, *m.*	*a plain.*
dŏmĭnātus, us, *m.*	*sovereignty, rule.*
hōra, ae, *f.*	*an hour.*
Hanno, ōnis, *m.*	*Hanno, a common Carthaginian name.*
Mărăthon, ōnis, *m.*	*Marathon, a plain near Athens.*
nātus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.*	*born, aged.*
passus, us, *m.*	*a pace* (about five feet).
Plăto, ōnis, *m.*	*Plato, a famous Greek philosopher.*
Săguntini, ōrum, *m.*	*the Saguntines, people of Saguntum, in Spain.*

PHRASES:

Castra ponĕre,	*to pitch a camp.*
Murum, aggĕrem ducĕre,	*to carry a wall* or *mound along,* i. e., *to construct.*

EXERCISE LI.

1. Romulus septem et triginta annos regnavit. 2. Quaedam bestiolae unum diem vivunt. 3. Augustus septem horas dormiebat. 4. Troja decem annos a Graecis obsessa est. 5. Cato annos quinque et octoginta natus excessit e vita. 6. Dionysius annos quinque et viginti natus dominatum occupavit. 7. Turris pedes ducentos alta est. 8. Saguntini aggerem duxerunt trecentos pedes longum et viginti pedes altum. 9. Hanno tria passuum millia ab ipsa urbe castra posuit. 10. Campus Marathon abest ab oppido Atheniensium circiter millia passuum decem.

1. Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh king of the Romans, reigned twenty-four years. 2. They build a wall fifty feet high and eight feet broad. 3. The walls of Athens were-distant about four thousand paces (*Gen.*) from the sea. 4. The towers were about a hundred feet high. 5. Socrates was put-to-death, aged seventy years. 6. Plato lived eighty-one years.

7. It is not enough to have lived many years; it behooves (us) to have lived (them) well. 8. The city (of) Troy was besieged ten years on-account-of (ob) a single (unus) woman. 9. Socrates lived seventy years. 10. Some men live more than one hundred years.

XXXVII.—Construction of the Names of Towns.

Rule 21.—In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative Case without prepositions; as, Consul Rōmam prŏfectŭs est, *the Consul set out for Rome.*

In answer to the question *Whence?* towns and small islands are put in the Ablative Case without prepositions; as, Consŭl Rōmā Athēnās prŏfectŭs est, *the Consul set out from Rome to Athens.*

Vocabulary 52.

cēdo, ssi, ssum, 3,	*I yield, retire.*
confĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre,	*I bring together, betake.*
oppōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum, 3,	*I set against, oppose.*
pervĕnio, vēni, ventum, 4,	*I arrive at.*
pĕto, tīvi *and* **tii, tītum, 3,**	*I seek.*
rĕverto, verti, versum, 3,	*I turn back, return.*
rĕvertor, versus, *dep.*, 3,	
Alcĭbiădes, is, *m.*	*Alcibiades, a celebrated Athenian.*
Aeschĭnes, is, *m.*	*Æschines, an orator, the rival of Demosthenes.*
Cūrius, ii, *m.*	*Curius, a Roman general.*
Cănŭsium, ii, *n.*	*Canusium* (now Canosa), *a town in Apulia.*
Capua, ae, *f.*	*Capua, a city of Campania.*
exĭlium, ii, *n.*	*banishment, exile.*
Crēta, ae, *f.*	*Crete* (now Candia), *an island of Greece.*
Ĭbi, *adv.* (*from* **is, id**),	*there.*
Lăcēdaemon, ŏnis, *f.*	*Lacedæmon* (or *Sparta*), *a city of the Peloponnesus.*
Leōnĭdas, ae, *m.*	*Leonidas, a king of Sparta.*
Lūcēria, ae, *f.*	*Luceria, a town of Apulia.*
Lūcius, ii, *m.* (*abbrev.* L.)	*Lucius, a common Roman forename.*
mandātum, i, *n.*	*charge, commission.*
perpĕtuus, a, um,	*continual.*
Rhŏdus, i, *f.*	*Rhodes, an island of Greece.*
Sparta, ae, *f.*	*Sparta, a city of the Peloponnesus.*

Phrase:

Exilium agĕre,	*to live in exile.*

Exercise LII.

1. Curius primus Romam elephantos quattuor duxit. 2. Pompeius Luceria proficiscitur Canusium. 3. Lycurgus Cretam profectus est, ibique perpetuum exilium egit. 4. Aeschines cessit Athenis et se Rhodum contulit. 5. Legati Atheniensium Lacedaemonem profecti sunt, ut auxilium contra Persas peterent. 6. Acceptis mandatis, Roscius cum Lucio Caesare Capuam pervenit. 7. Alcibiades, maximis rebus gestis, Athenas reversus est. 8. Leonidas cum trecentis iis, quos eduxerat Sparta, se opposuit hostibus. 9. Tiberius Rhodo cessit, et se Romam contulit. 10. Alexander, Dario apud Arbela victo, Babylonem profectus est.

1. In the summer I shall set out for Venusia. 2. He departed from Athens and returned to Rome. 3. We will go to Crete, you to Rhodes, but the others will remain in the city. 4. Caesar having done these things (*Ablative Absolute*), returned immediately to Rome. 5. He departed from Rome and set out for Luceria. 6. I will betake myself to Lacedaemon; there I shall be safe. 7. Do not set out for Capua. 8. The consuls had already arrived at Luceria. 9. The embassadors of the Carthaginians came to Rome in-order-to (ut) seek-for peace. 10. Pompeius having been slain (*Abl. Absol.*), Caesar was unwilling to return immediately to Rome.

Rule 22.—In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Dative (Locative) Case; as, ut Rōmae consŭlēs, sīc Carthāgĭnī bīnī rēgēs crĕābantur, *as at Rome consuls, so at Carthage two kings were appointed.*

Note.—In the Second Declension an old Dative Singular in *i* is used in this construction; as, Cŏrinthī multōs annos vixit, *he lived many years at Corinth.* So also, dŏmī, *at home;* hūmī, *on the ground.* Also in the Third Declension the Ablative Singular is used as well as the Dative; as, Carthāgĭnī or Carthāgĭnĕ, *at Carthage.*

Vocabulary 53.

constĭtuo, ui, ūtum, 3,	*I settle, determine.*	**Apollōnia, ae,** *f.*	*Apollonia, a town in Epirus.*
consūmo, mpsi, mptum, 3,	*I consume, waste away.*	**Aristīdes, is,** *m.*	*Aristides, an Athenian statesman.*
expello, pŭli, pulsum, 3,	*I drive out.*	**Arpīnum, i,** *n.*	*Arpinum, a town of Latium.*
hiĕmo, etc., 1,	*I winter.*	**Bābўlon, ōnis,** *f.*	*Babylon, a city of Assyria.*
jăceo, cui, 2,	*I lie.*		

Cannae, ārum, *f. pl.* } *Cannæ, a village of Apulia.*
Cŏnon, ōnis, *m.* *Conon, an Athenian general.*
Cūmae, ārum, *f. pl.* } *Cumæ, a city of Campania.*
Cyprus, i, *f.* *Cyprus, an island off Cilicia.*
Delphi, ōrum, *m. pl.* } *Delphi, a city of Greece.*
Diŏnȳsius, ii, *m.* *Dionysius, name of two tyrants of Syracuse.*
Dyrrachium, ii, *n.* *Dyrrachium, a town in Epirus.*
Fabrĭcius, ii, *m.* *Fabricius, a noble Roman.*
Hŏrātius, ii, *m.* *Horace, a Roman poet.*
Lesbus, i, *f.* *Lesbos, an island in the Ægean Sea.*
Mărius, ii, *m.* *Marius, a famous Roman general.*
morbus, i, *m.* *disease, illness.*
ōrăcŭlum, i, *n.* *an oracle.*
permulti, ae, a, *very many.*
quālis, e, *of what sort, as.*
tālis, e, *of that sort, such.*
Timŏtheus, i, *m.* *Timotheus, a famous Greek.*
Vĕnŭsia, ae, *f.* *Venusia* (now *Venosa*), *a town in S. Italy.*

PHRASE:

Morbo consŭmi, *to be carried off by illness.*

EXERCISE LIII.

1. Pompeius hiemare Dyrrachii et Apolloniae constituerat. 2. Delphis Apollinis oraculum fuit. 3. Conon plurimum Cypri vixit, Timotheus Lesbi. 4. Multos annos domi nostrae vixit. 5. Alexander Magnus Babylone morbo consumptus est. 6. Dionysius multos annos Corinthi vixit. 7. Horatius Venusiae natus est. 8. Catilina humi jacet. 9. Talis Romae Fabricius, qualis Aristides Athenis fuit. 10. Lycurgus Cretae perpetuum exilium egit.

1. Marius and Cicero were born at Arpinum. 2. Atticus, a friend of Cicero, lived many years at Athens. 8. Your friend lived many years at my house. 4. Dionysius, having been driven-out-of Syracuse, used-to-teach (*Past-Imp.*) boys at Corinth. 5. Many apples and pears lay on the ground. 6. At Cannae a sanguinary battle was fought (committo) between the Romans and Hannibal. 7. I had-rather dwell at Cumae than at Rome. 8. Tiberius retired from Rome and lived in exile at Rhodes. 9. Very many great generals, few poets were born at Rome. 10. At Lacedaemon, both (et) boys and girls were most carefully trained up (*Past-Imp.*).

XXXVIII.—The Accusative Case and Infinitive Mood.

Rule 23.—The Accusative Case and the Infinitive Mood are used:

I. After words of *saying, hearing, seeing, feeling, perceiving, thinking, knowing;* as, hist**ŏ**ria narrat R**ō**mam ā R**ō**m**ū**l**ō** condĭtam essĕ, *history relates that Rome was founded by Romulus;* sentīmus cālērĕ ignem, nĭvem essĕ albam, dulcĕ (essĕ) mĕl, *we perceive that fire is hot, that snow is white, that honey is sweet.*

II. After such expressions as nōtum est, *it is known;* justum est, *it is just;* vērīsĭmĭlĕ est, *it is probable;* certum est, constăt, *it is agreed, it is certain,* etc.; as, constat R**ō**mam ā R**ō**m**ū**l**ō** condĭtam essĕ, *it is certain that Rome was founded by Romulus.*

Vocabulary 54.

advĕnio, vēni, ventum, 4,	*I arrive.*	caecus, a, um,	*blind.*
animadverto, ti, sum, 3,	*I observe.*	Dēlos, i, *f.*	*Delos, an island of Greece.*
confŭgio, fūgi, fŭgĭtum, 3,	*I flee to.*	Dĭāna, ae, *f.*	*Diana, a Roman goddess.*
constat, stĭtit, *imp.* 1,	*it is evident, it is agreed,* etc.	flōrens, ntis,	*flourishing.*
contĭneo, tinui, tentum, 2,	*I hold together.*	Hŏmērus, i, *m.*	*Homer.*
nĕgo, etc., 1,	*I deny.*	imprūdentia, ae, *f.*	*ignorance, imprudence.*
părio, pĕpĕri, partum, 3,	*I bring forth.*	Lātōna, ae, *f.*	*Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana.*
prōdo, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3,	*I hand down, I betray.*	mănĭfestus, a, um,	*evident, manifest.*
pŭto, etc., 1,	*I think.*	nĭsĭ, *conj.*	*unless, except.*
sentio, sensi, sensum, 4,	*I feel, perceive.*	quondam, *adv.*	*some time, formerly.*
trādo, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3,	*I hand down, deliver.*	stella, ae, *f.*	*a star.*
vĭdeo, vīdi, vīsum, 2,	*I see.*	Thălēs, ētis, *m.*	*Thales, a famous philosopher.*
causā (*abl.*),	*for the sake of.*	Trōjānus, a, um,	*Trojan, of Troy.*
crēdĭbĭlis, e,	*credible.*	vērīsĭmĭlis, e,	*likely, probable.*

Exercise LIV.

A.—1. Equitatum Caesaris advenire videmus. 2. Thales aquam dixit esse initium rerum. 3. Solon rempublicam praemiis et poenis contineri dixit. 4. Nemo negabit mundum a Deo conservari. 5. Vox quondam audita est, Romam a Gallis captum iri. 6. Epaminondas animadvertebat, totum ex-

ercitum propter ducum imprudentiam periturum esse. 7. Pollicebaris te venturum esse. 8. Helvetii polliciti sunt se Caesari obsides daturos. 9. Videmus aves auctumno in alias terras migrare. 10. Scio haec vera esse.

1. We know that the sun is larger than the moon. 2. Caesar learns that the enemy are-gathering-together all their forces. 3. The oracle of Delphi said that Socrates was (*Imp.*) the wisest of all men. 4. We see that the flowers blossom forth. 5. We know that the body perishes, but that the soul is immortal. 6. Socrates thought (*Past-Imp.*) that knowledge was more excellent than all (other) things. 7. Who has not heard that the Romans were conquered by Hannibal at (*apud*) Cannae? 8. We see that all things are done by the wisdom of God. 9. We know that the sun is very-far distant (*absum*) from the earth. 10. We promise that we will be faithful to you.

B.—1. Credibile est hominum causâ factum esse mundum. 2. Verum est, amicitiam nisi inter bonos esse non posse. 3. Traditum est, Homerum caecum fuisse. 4. Hannibalem in Asia mortuum esse constat. 5. Bestiis rationem deesse manifestum est. 6. Omnes cives legibus parere aequum est. 7. Certum est, liberos a parentibus amari. 8. Sororem tuam hac aestate reversuram esse non verisimile est. 9. Constat, Romanos eodem anno duas urbes florentissimas, Carthaginem et Corinthum, delevisse. 10. Memoriae proditum est, Latonam confugisse Delum atque ibi Apollinem Dianamque peperisse.

1. It is just that you (should) punish me. 2. It is probable that the stars are suns. 3. It is true that we have been conquered. 4. It has been handed down to us that Socrates was the wisest of all the Greeks. 5. It is manifest that the world was not made by chance. 6. It is agreed among all writers that Romulus was (*Perf.*) the first king of the Romans. 7. It is manifest that you are-making-a-mistake. 8. It is handed down (*Pres.-Perf.*) to us by the poets that a woman was the cause of the Trojan war. 9. It is certain that the soul ought to obey reason. 10. It is manifest that we shall be conquered unless we remain (*Fut.-Perf.*) in the city.

XXXIX.—Direct Questions.

Rule 24.—Questions are usually put in Latin with the help of Interrogative words or particles; as, Quĭd ăgĭs? *What are you doing?* Pŭtas-nĕ? *Do you think?* Nonnĕ-pŭtās? *Do you not think?*

The principal Interrogative particles are **nĕ, num, utrum, ăn.** Of these **nĕ** is always written as an enclitic, like the Conjunction **que. Utrum** and **an** are used only when two alternatives are spoken of; and **an** always with the second alternative.

Num has a negative force, as Num ĭtă pŭtās = *You don't think so, do you?* and is to be used when the answer *No* is looked for. **Utrum . . . ăn** may be translated by *whether . . . or;* as, Utrum sōl ăn lūnă mājŏr est? *Whether is the sun or the moon the greater?* **Nĕ** does not need to be expressed by any English word; as, Visnĕ? *Do you wish?* Nonnĕ pŭtās? *Do you not think?*

Vocabulary 55.

consentio, nsi, nsum, 4,	*I agree.*	**eloquens, ntis,**	*eloquent.*
crēdo, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3,	*I believe.*	**igneus, a, um,**	*fiery, made of fire.*
dīrĭpio, rĭpui, reptum, 3,	*I plunder, pillage.*	**Lucrētius, ii,** *m.*	*Lucretius, a Roman poet.*
intellĭgo, lexi, lectum, 3,	*I understand*	**mălēvŏlus, a, um,**	*ill-wishing, malevolent.*
respondeo, ndi, nsum, 2,	*I answer.*	**mendax, ācis,**	*lying, a liar.*
antīquus, a, um,	*ancient.*	**prīmārius, a, um,**	*first-rate, eminent.*
bĕnēvŏlus, a, um,	*well-wishing, benevolent.*	**stultus, a, um,**	*foolish.*
bŏnum, i, *n.*	*a good, a blessing.*	**sŭpĕrus, a, um.** *Comp.* **supĕrior, ius;** *Superl.* **suprēmus** *and* **summus, a, um.**	*upper, on high.*
cārus, a, um,	*dear, precious.*		
dīvīnus, a, um,	*of the gods, divine.*	**turpĭtūdo, ĭnis,** *f.*	*disgrace.*

Exercise LV.

A.—1. Estne voluptas summum bonum? 2. Nonne fuit Socrates antiquorum sapientissimus? 3. Nonne sol longe

major est quam luna? 4. Num ita audes dicere? 5. Utrum est aurum gravius an argentum? 6. Utrum Socrates an Plato sapientior fuit? 7. Suntne haec vera bona? 8. Num tu has res melius quam magister tuus intelligis? 9. Nonne omnes discere oportet vitam tranquillo animo relinquere? 10. Num putas argentum et aurum cariora esse virtute et prudentia?

1. Are these things true? 2. Do you believe that pain is the greatest evil? 3. Was not (begin with *nonne*) Pythagoras a very great (*summus*) philosopher? 4. You don't think that I am a liar, do you? 5. Is gold more excellent than wisdom? (No). 6. Are you wiser than (your) father? (No). 7. Whether is iron or gold more useful? 8. Is not (begin with *nonne*) iron far more useful than gold? 9. Whether do you prefer this or that? 10. Is not (begin with *nonne*) the world governed by the Divine wisdom?

B.—1. Nonne urbs Roma a Gallis capta et direpta est? 2. Nonne omnes consentiunt Scipionem primarium fuisse virum? 3. Num audes dicere haec benevolo animo facta esse? 4. Utrum Romae an in agris hibernis mensibus manere mavis? 5. Utrum est turpitudo omnium malorum maximum an non? 6. Utrum haec benevolo an malevolo animo fecisti? 7. Utrum Cato an Caesar tibi praestantior et clarior vir esse videtur? 8. Utrum esse an videri bonus mavis? 9. Num audes dicere, Lucreti, haec casu facta esse? tune ita credis? 10. Estne verum, quod nonnulli dicunt, animos ex aliis (*corporibus*) in alia corpora migrare?

1. Is it true that the sun is made-of-fire? 2. Is not Plato the most eloquent of philosophers? 3. Are not Livy and Sallust most elegant writers? 4. Does it not do good to all to read the works [books] of that (*ille*) most excellent writer? 5. Are you so foolish that (*ut*) you should believe all these things to have been made by chance? 6. Is the body mortal? Is the soul immortal? 7. Are not the books of Plato full of these subjects (*res*)? 8. Is Sallust or Livy (begin with *utrum*) the more elegant writer? Are-you-able to answer? 9. Does it (*num*) become a philosopher to lament-over his life? Does it not behoove him to act bravely? 10. Do all the philosophers agree concerning these subjects?

XL.—Indirect Questions.

Rule 25.—Indirect Questions are those which are quoted as having been asked, or are dependent upon some word expressing doubt, uncertainty, or wonder, in the former part of the sentence; as, Rŏgābo quid factum sĭt, *I will ask what has been done;* Mīrum est quae fŭĕrit causă, *It is strange what the reason may have been;* Vĭdēbo num rĕdĭĕrĭt, *I will see whether he has returned.* The dependent verb is always put in the Subjunctive Mood.

Rule 26.—The Tense of the Verb in the Subjunctive Mood is determined by that of the Verb in the former part of the sentence upon which it depends. (1.) If the Verb in the former clause expresses *Present* or *Future Time*, the Verb in the dependent clause is put in the Present or Future Tense Subjunctive. (2.) If the Verb in the principal clause expresses *Past Time*, the Verb in the dependent clause is put in the Past Tense Subjunctive.

Present and Future Time.

Present Imperf.	Scio quĭd ăgās,	*I know what you are doing.*
	Scio quĭd ēgĕrĭs,	*I know what you have done.*
	Scio quĭd actūrus sīs,	*I know what you are going to do.*
Present Perfect.	Cognōvī quĭd ăgās,	*I have learnt what you are doing.*
	Cognōvī quĭd ēgĕrĭs,	*I have learnt what you have done.*
	Cognōvī quĭd actūrus sīs,	*I have learnt what you are going to do.*
Future Imperf.	Audiam quĭd ăgās,	*I shall hear what you are doing.*
	Audiam quĭd ēgĕrĭs,	*I shall hear what you have done.*
	Audiam quĭd actūrus sīs,	*I shall hear what you are going to do.*

Past Time.

Past Imperf.	Sciēbam quĭd ăgĕrēs,	*I knew what you were doing.*
	Sciēbam quĭd ēgissēs,	*I knew what you had done.*
	Sciēbam quĭd actūrŭs essēs,	*I knew what you were going to do.*
Past Indefin.	Cognōvī quĭd ăgĕrēs,	*I learnt what you were doing.*
	Cognōvī quĭd ēgissēs,	*I learnt what you had done.*
	Cognōvī quĭd actūrŭs essēs,	*I learnt what you were going to do.*

PAST PERFECT.

Cognōvĕram quĭd ăgĕrēs, *I had learnt what you were doing.*
Cognōvĕram quĭd ēgissēs, *I had learnt what you had done.*
Cognōvĕram quĭd actūrūs essēs, *I had learnt what you were going to do.*

The same Rule is applicable to the sequence of Tenses in the Subjunctive Mood universally. See Exercises XXV., XXVI., XXVII., XXVIII. (the Subjunctive Mood.)

N.B.—In single Indirect Questions *whether* is generally expressed by **num**, which then ceases to have a negative force. In double Indirect Questions it is expressed either by **utrum** or **-ne**.

VOCABULARY 56.

abjĭcio, jēci, jectum, 3,	*I cast away.*	**incertus, a, um,**	*uncertain.*
antepōno, pōsui, pŏsĭtum, 3,	*I prefer.*	**infāmis, e,**	*infamous.*
conjĭcio, jēcī, jectum, 3,	*I fling (together).*	**injustus, a, um,**	*unjust.*
ēvĕnio, vēni, ventum, 4,	*to happen.*	**Laeca, ae,** *m.*	*Læca, a Roman family name.*
nŭmĕro, etc., 1,	*I count.*	**mortuus, a, um,**	*dead.*
quaero, quaesīvi, quaesītum, 3,	*I seek, inquire.*	**nŏvus, a, um,**	*new.*
rŏgo, etc., 1,	*I ask.*	**philŏsŏphus, i,** *m.*	*philosopher.*
spĕcŭlor, etc., *dep.* 1,	*I spy out.*	**plānē,** *adv.*	*altogether.*
vīso, vīsi, vīsum, 3,	*I go to see, visit.*	**quaestio, ōnis,** *f.*	*question.*
Blaesus, i, *m.*	*Blaesus, a Roman name.*	**quantus, a, um,**	*how great.*
Chaerĕphon, ntis, *m.*	*Chaerephon, a disciple of Socrates.*	**quārē,** *adv.*	*why, on what account.*
Croesus, i, *m.*	*Crœsus, a king of Lydia.*	**quŏt,** *indecl.*	*how many.*
cūr, *adv.*	*why, to what end.*	**saepĕnŭmĕro,** *adv.*	*oftentimes, very often.*
fēlĭcĭter, *adv.*	*luckily.*	**subdifficĭlis, e,**	*somewhat difficult.*
		tēlum, i, *n.*	*a dart, weapon, missile.*
		ŭbĭ, *adv.*	*where.*
		Xĕnŏphon, ntis, *m.*	*Xenophon, a famous Athenian writer and commander.*

EXERCISE LVI.

A.—1. Rogo quid agatis. 2. Rogavit quid agerent. 3. Rogavit quid egissent. 4. Roga tu quid acturi sint. 5. Nescio quare me ex civitate expuleritis. 6. Cognoscere non potuit quantae essent hostium copiae. 7. Speculabimur quot homines in urbem ineant et quot exeant. 8. Dic mihi, Catilina, cur patriam prodere volueris. 9. Dic mihi, Blaese, ubi

corpus abjeceris. 10. Chaerephon ex oraculo quaesivit quis omnium Graecorum sapientissimus esset.

1. I will ask how great the forces of the enemy are. 2. Xenophon inquired of (*ex*) the oracle what it behooved him to do. 3. I wish to learn where the camp of the enemy is. 4. I do-not-know what it behooves me to do. 5. Tell me, my son, what you are going to do. 6. The son was unwilling to tell what he was going-to-do. 7. Count how many darts have been thrown (*conjicio*) into the tent. 8. I will inquire which-of-the-two has conquered. 9. Socrates used-to-inquire (*Past-Imp.*) what was just, what unjust. 10. It is a great thing to know what things are just, what unjust.

B.—1. Quaeram num omnia feliciter evenerint. 2. Jussit eos speculari num hostes ex castris exirent. 3. Visam num adventent hostes. 4. Subdifficilis est quaestio num unquam novi amici sint veteribus anteponendi. 5. Rogavit nonne haec improba et infamia essent? 6. Rogabo num credat omnia casu facta esse. 7. Quaesivit ex oraculo Croesus, utrum ipse an Cyrus superaturus esset. 8. Saepenumero quaerebant antiqui philosophi mortalisne esset animus an immortalis. 9. Num dubium est casune an consilio factus sit mundus? 10. Plane incertum est vicerintne hostes an victi sint.

1. Inquire of (*ex*) him whether he knows these things. 2. It is doubtful whether these things are true. 3. It is uncertain whether (*utrum* or *ne*) he is a good man or a wicked (one). 4. It is doubtful whether he deserve praise (*laudemne*) or blame. 5. He asked whether the dead felt cold and hunger. 6. I know not whether you are-sleeping or waking. 7. I doubt whether he will return immediately. 8. He asked whether the city was not (*nonne*) very strongly fortified. 9. This I ask you, whether you were on that (*ille*) night in the house of M. Laeca. 10. Do you doubt whether it behooves a good citizen to side-with his country in time of danger?

XLI.—Additional Exercises on the Subjunctive Mood.

Rule 27.—Besides **ŭt**, **nē**, and **quīn** (see Exercise XXV., etc.), the Conjunctions **quō**, *that*, and **quōmĭnus**, *that not*, are constructed with the Subjunctive Mood.

1. **Ut**=*that, in order that, granting that*, is used to express either a *purpose* or a *consequence;* as, ĕo ut spectem lūdos, *I am going in order that I may look at the games;* accĭdĭt ut nōn dŏmī essem, *it happened that I was not at home.*

2. **Nē**=*that not*, is used to express a *purpose*, but not a mere consequence; as, Haec făcĭo nē mē ĭnĭmīcum tĭbi pŭtēs, *these things I do that you may not think me your enemy;* but, sĕquĭtŭr *ut* haec *nōn* vera sint, *it follows that these things are not true.*

Obs. After verbs of *fearing*, **ŭt** has the meaning of *that not*, and **nē** of *that;* as, tĭmĕo ut dux mīlĭtēs ē castrīs ēdūcăt, *I fear that the general may not lead the soldiers out of the camp;* tĭmĕo nē dux mīlĭtēs ē castrīs ēdūcăt, *I fear that the general will lead* the soldiers out of the camp.

3. **Quīn** is used after *negative propositions and propositions expressing doubt;* as, dĭēs nullŭs est, quīn littĕras scrībam, *there is no day that I do not write a letter;* nōn dŭbĭto quīn vērum dixĕris, *I do not doubt you have spoken the truth.* (See Exercise XXV, C, etc.)

4. **Quō** is used for **ŭt ĕō**, and signifies *that thereby, in order that, so that:* haec lex dătă est, quō mălĕfĭcī dēterrērentŭr, *this law was given (enacted) that thereby evil-doers might be deterred;* portās oppĭdī obstruxit, quō făcĭlĭŭs impĕtum hostium rĕtardārĕt, *he barricaded the gates of the town in order that he might more easily retard the attack of the enemy.*

5. **Quōmĭnŭs**, *that not*, is used after Verbs of *hindering, preventing, resisting*, etc., and must be frequently translated in English by *from* and a verbal substantive; as, aetās nōs non impĕdit quōmĭnus littĕras tractēmus, *age does not prevent us from cultivating literature.*

VOCABULARY 57.

accĭdo, ĭdi, *no sup.*, 3, *to happen.*	**cōhortor**, etc., *dep.*, 1, *I encourage.*
cerno, crēvi, crētum, 3, *I see, discern.*	**dīmitto, mīsi, mis-sum**, 3, *I let go, dismiss.*
dēterreo, rui, rĭ-tum, 2, *I frighten, deter.*	**ēnarro**, etc., 1, *I relate.*

confīdo,* fīsus sum, 3, *I trust.*
diffīdo,* fīsus, sum, 3, *I distrust.*
ēnītor, nīsus *and* **nixus sum,** *dep.*, **3,** *I strive hard.*
exclāmo, etc., **1,** *I cry out.*
intrŏeo, īvi *and* **ii, ĭtum** (*irreg.*), **4,** *I enter.*
nītor, nīsus *and* **nixus sum,** *dep.*, **3,** *I strive.*
obsto,* stĭti, stĭtum, 1, *I oppose, prevent.*
opprĭmo, pressi, pressum, 3, *I press upon, overwhelm, crush.*
persŭādeo,* ăsi, ăsum, 2, *I persuade.*
praevĕnio, vēni, ventum, 4, *I anticipate.*
prĕmo, pressi, pressum, 3, *I press.*
prohĭbeo, bui, bĭtum, 2, *I keep off, prohibit.*
recūso, etc., **1,** *I object, refuse.*
spĕro, etc., **1,** *I hope.*
sto, stĕti, statum, 1, *I stand.*
suādeo,* ăsi, ăsum, 2, *I advise.*
tĕneo, nui, ntum, 2, *I hold, retain.*
transdūco, duxi, ductum, 3, *I lead across.*
ventĭto, etc., **1,** *I come frequently.*
Bĭbŭlus, i, *m.* *Bibulus, a Roman family name.*

fŏrum, i, *n.* *a market-place, forum.*
impĕrītus, a, um, *unskillful.*
impransus, a, um, *without having had breakfast, not having breakfasted.*
infirmĭtas, ātis, *f.* *weakness.*
lătro, ōnis, *m.* *a robber.*
lūdus, i, *m.* *play, game, school.*
magnŏpĕrĕ, *adv.* *greatly, earnestly.*
mīrus, a, um, *wonderful.*
mŏdus, i, *m.* *measure, manner.*
moenia, ium, *n. pl.* *fortifications.*
Nervii, orum, *m. pl.* *the Nervii, a Gallic tribe.*
praealtus, a, um, *very high.*
Satrius, ii, *m.* *Satrius, a Roman name.*
signum, i, *n.* *a sign, signal,*
Trĕbōnius, ii, *m.* *Trebonius, one of Cæsar's lieutenants.*
vălētūdo, ĭnis, *f.* *health.*

PHRASES:

Sĕquĭtur, *it follows* (with *acc.* and *inf.*, or *ut* and *subj.*).—**Făcĕre non possum quīn,** *I can not but* (with *subj.*).—**Per me (te) stĕtit (quominus),** *it was owing to me* or *you.*—**Minimum ăbest quīn sim,** *very little is wanting that I should be; I am very near being.*

EXERCISE LVII.

A.—1. Enitar ut in omnibus rebus tibi prosim. 2. Hoc te rogo atque oro, ne rempublicam deseras. 3. Contendit Caesar maximis itineribus in fines Nerviorum ut consilia eorum praeveniret. 4. Magnopere tibi suadeo ne improbis illis hominibus confidas. 5. Accidit ut milites impransi essent quum signum datum est. 6. Milites cohortatus est ut fortiter castra defenderent. 7. Nonne omnes cives oportet eniti ut reipublicae prosint? 8. Accidit ut inter Labienum et

* With the Dative.

hostes esset flumen praealtum. 9. Sequitur ut non possim tibi confidere. 10. Enitar ne possis mihi diffidere.

1. I will strive hard to (*ut*) persuade him. 2. It follows that pleasure is not the highest good. 3. I entreat you to (*ut*) learn to bear patiently bad fortune. 4. We ought to strive-hard that we may not pass (our) lives in silence. 5. The Helvetii determined to depart from their own territories, in order that they-might-obtain possession of all Gaul. 6. Does it not follow that these things are unjust? 7. So it came to pass (*fio*) that out of (them) all, no one returned to the city. 8. The Helvetii have been so trained (*instituo*) by their ancestors that they are accustomed to receive hostages, not to give them. 9. I will strive earnestly that you may be able to think me a friend. 10. The Carthaginians sent embassadors to Rome to (*ut*) beg-for peace.

N.B.—In future the pupil will be left to himself to discover when the English Infinitive denotes a purpose, and must therefore be translated with **ut**.

B.—1. Constituit Caesar pontem in flumine Rheno facere, quo copias suas transduceret. 2. Milites cohortatus est quo mortem fortius obirent. 3. Quid obstat quominus moenia statim oppugnemus? 4. Nullo modo introire possum quin me videant. 5. Nullo modo exire potuit quin eum viderent. 6. Minimum abest quin sim miserrimus. 7. Dies fere nullus est quin Satrius domum meam ventitet. 8. Facere non possum quin tibi dolores meos enarrem. 9. Quis dubitat quin omnes oporteat patriae suae adesse? 10. Recusare non possum quin me comiteris.

1. He resolved to carry a wall round the camp that (*quo*)* the army might be more secure (*tutus*). 2. He fortified the camp that he might the more easily keep off the enemy. 3. There is no day that I do not hear many wonderful things. 4. Who can doubt that Hannibal was a very great (*summus*) general? 5. There was nobody who did not (*quin*) rejoice greatly. 6. I can not but hope that we shall be conquerors. 7. Nobody is so brave but (*quin*) he sometimes feels fear. 8. We are preparing arms, not that (*ut*) we may attack others, but that (*quo*) we may better defend our country. 9. There was nothing wanting *that* I should be very wretched. 10. Our soldiers could not go forth from the camp *but* they were overwhelmed with missiles.

* N.B.—**Quo** is used in preference to **ut** when there is a comparative in the clause which it introduces.

C.—1. Per Trebonium stetit quominus oppido potirentur. 2. Me infirmitas valetudinis tenuit quominus ad ludos venirem. 3. Hiems prohibuit quominus a te literas haberemus. 4. Bibulum deterruerunt quominus domo exiret. 5. Deterrent me latrones quominus in illam partem urbis eam. 6. Quid tibi obstabat quominus nobiscum adesses? 7. Quis audebit miseros prohibere quominus fleant? 8. Legem brevem esse oportet quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur. 9. Unum vereor ne senatus Pompeium nolit dimittere. 10. Quis est quin cernat quanta vis sit in sensibus?

1. It was owing to you that we did not obtain-possession-of the town. 2. No weakness of health shall prevent me *from* coming to you. 3. Nothing ought to deter a citizen *from* siding with his country in time of danger. 4. They attempted to deter Cato *from* appearing (*adsum*) in the forum. 5. Nothing shall prevent me *from* siding-with you. 6. Nobody can prohibit us *from* worshiping God. 7. Nothing ought to deter children *from* obeying their parents. 8. I fear *that* we may be cast out of the city. 9. I fear *that* we may *not* be able to defend ourselves and our country. 10. I can not but think that Caesar was the greatest of the Romans.

XLII.—USE OF THE SUPINES.

RULE 28.—The Supine in **um** is used after verbs of motion; as, Lăcĕdaemŏnĭī Ăgēsĭlāum *bellātum* ĭn Ăsiam mīsērunt, *the Lacedaemonians sent Agesilaus into Asia to make war.*

The Supine in **ū** is used after many adjectives; as, făcĭlĭs, *easy;* difficĭlĭs, *difficult;* dulcĭs, *sweet*, etc.; and with fās est, *it is lawful;* nĕfās est, *it is unlawful;* ŏpŭs est, *it is necessary;* as, rēs difficĭlis factū est, *the thing is difficult to be done.*

VOCABULARY 58.

ăquor, etc., *dep.*, 1,	*I fetch water.*	**convĕnio, vēni, ventum**, 4,	*to assemble.*
bello, etc., 1,	*I wage war.*	**pābŭlor**, etc., *dep.*, 1,	*I forage.*
consŭlo, ŭlui, ultum, 3,	*I consult.*	**postŭlo**, etc., 1,	*I demand.*
gusto, etc., 1,	*I taste.*	**progrĕdior, essus**, 3,	*I advance.*

Aedui, orum, *m. pl.* } *the Ædui, a Gallic tribe.*
Agēsĭlāus, i, *m.* *Agesilaus, a famous king of Sparta.*
Divitĭăcus, i, *m.* *Divitiăcus, an Æduan chief.*
Fabius, ii, *m.* *Fabius, a noble Roman name.*
Lacĕdaemŏnii, orum, *m.* } *the Lacedaemonians.*
longius, *adv.* (*comp.*) } *farther, too far.*
lūdi, orum, *m. pl.* *games.*
Maximus, i, *m.* *Maximus, a surname of Fabius.*
nĕfas, *n. indecl.* *wickedness, impiety.*
ŏpus, *n. indecl.* (*with abl.*) } *need, necessity.*
publĭcus, a, um, *public.*
Veientes, um, *m. pl.* *the people of Veii, near Rome; the Veientes.*
quisnam, quaenam, quidnam, etc., *like* **quis,** } *who? what?*

PHRASES:

Nĕfas est, *it is* or *would be an impiety.*
Ŏpus est, *there is need (of).*

EXERCISE LVIII.

1. Ingens hominum multitudo in urbem convenit, ludos publicos spectatum. 2. Veientes, pacem petitum, oratores Romam mittunt. 3. Aedui legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, rogatum auxilium. 4. Milites pabulatum et aquatum longius progressi erant. 5. Divitiacus Romam ad senatum venit, auxilium postulatum. 6. Athenienses miserunt Delphos consultum, quidnam facerent de rebus suis. 7. Pira dulcia sunt gustatu. 8. Difficile dictu est. 9. Quod optimum factu videbitur, facies. 10. Nefas est dictu, miseram fuisse Fabii Maximi senectutem.

1. We will set out for Rome, to look-at the games. 2. Croesus sent embassadors to Delphi to inquire concerning the fortune of the war. 3. Chaerephon went to Delphi to ask who was (*Subj.*) the wisest of men. 4. The general dismissed the soldiers to forage and get-water. 5. These things are very difficult to be done. 6. Very many things are easier to be said than done. 7. Old wines are not always sweet to taste. 8. The Romans sent embassadors to Carthage to inquire concerning Hannibal and the Saguntines. 9. It would be impious to say that the life of a good man can be miserable. 10. We have come to consult you (as to) what may be best to be done.

XLIII.—Use of the Gerund.

Rule 29.—The Gerund is a Verbal Neuter Substantive, governing the same case as the Verb from which it comes. It corresponds to the English Verbal Substantives in *ing;* as, *writing, walking.*

It is declined in the Singular only, and is not used in the Nominative Case, the Imperfect of the Infinitive Mood taking the place of the Nominative; as,

Nom. Lĕgĕre pulchra carmĭna suāve est, { *reading (to read) beautiful poems is delightful.*
Gen. Ars pŭĕrōs ēdūcandi difficĭlĭs est, { *the art of educating boys is difficult.*
Dat. Scrībendō ŏpĕram dăt, *he devotes his care to writing.*
Acc. Nātūs ăd ăgendum, *born for acting.*
Abl. Littĕras tractandō mens ăcŭĭtŭr, { *the wits are sharpened by dealing with letters.*

Obs. The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions; otherwise the Imperfect Infinitive is used; as, disco nātāre. *I learn swimming.*

Vocabulary 59.

ăcuo, ui, ūtum, 3,	*I sharpen.*	**haud,** *adv.*	*not.*
ălo, ui, ĭtum, 3,	*I nourish.*	**jŭvĕnis, is,** *c.*	*a youth.*
ardeo, arsi, arsum, 2,	*I burn, am on fire.*	**lĭbĕrē,** *adv.*	*freely.*
cōgĭto, etc., 1,	*I think, meditate.*	**mărīnus, a, um,**	*of the sea; sea-.*
colloquor, locūtus, *dep.*, 3,	*I converse.*	**ŏpĕra, ae,** *f.*	*pains, labor.*
compăro, etc., 1,	*I get together.*	**plūs, ūris,** *n. only in sing.; pl.* **plures, plura.**	*more.*
ĕdo, ēdi, ēsum, ēdĕre *or* **esse,**	*I eat.*	**studiōsus, a, um,**	*eager after, zealous.*
vēnor, etc., *dep.*, 1,	*I hunt.*		
beātē, *adv.*	*happily.*		
grātia, ae, *f.*	*favor.*		
grātiā, *abl.*	*for the sake of.*		

Phrases:

Opĕram dăre, *to give one's whole energies to any thing, to devote one's self to it.*—**Inter bibendum,** etc., *whilst drinking,* etc.

Exercise LIX.

1. Saepissime perniciosa est plura habendi cupiditas. 2. Vehementer ardebat juvenis studio omnia cognoscendi et experiendi. 3. Quidam canes venandi gratia comparantur. 4. Beate vivendi studiosi sumus omnes. 5. Aqua marina haud

utilis est bibendo. 6. Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detegunt. 7. Hominis mens discendo et cogitando alitur. 8. Caesari dare jucundissimum erat. 9. Inter bibendum de variis rebus colloquebamur. 10. Quid potest esse jucundius quam inter ambulandum libĕre de variis rebus colloqui?

1. Very many persons burn with the desire of having more (pl.). 2. Epaminondas was eager-after hearing (*Gen.*). 3. All are not zealous of living well. 4. He got together very many horses and (que) dogs for the sake of hunting. 5. Do not attempt to obtain friends by flattering. 6. Do not attempt to preserve your life by lying. 7. Bodies are nourished by eating and drinking. 8. The soul is nourished by thinking (cogito), feeling, acting. 9. Conversing about (de) these things is most delightful. 10. It is becoming a youth to burn with a zeal for knowledge (*Gerund*).

XLIV.—USE OF THE GERUNDIVE.

RULE 30.—The Gerundive is a Passive Verbal Adjective; as, scrībendus, a, um, *to be written, necessary* or *fit to be written.*

When the Verb from which the Gerundive comes governs an Accusative Case, the Gerundive agrees with the Nominative Case of its Substantive; as, scrībenda est mihi ĕpistŏla, *a letter must be* or *ought to be written by me*, or *I must* or *ought to write a letter.*

The person by whom the thing is *to be done* is put in the Dative (see preceding example).

VOCABULARY 60.

adhĭbeo, etc., 2,	*I employ.*	**arduus, a, um,**	*lofty, steep, difficult.*
gĕro, gessi, gestum, 3,	*I carry on, manage.*	PHRASE:	
observo, etc., 1,	*I observe, respect.*	**Agĕre aetātem,**	*to spend one's life.*
provĭdeo, vīdi, vīsum, 2,	*I foresee, provide.*		

EXERCISE LX.

1. Diligenter sunt emendandi puerorum mores. 2. Sapi-

entia non solum paranda est nobis, sed etiam fruenda. 3. Prae omnibus rebus adhibenda est prudentia. 4. Agenda est omnibus aetas non sine periculis. 5. Ciceroni in arduis temporibus gerenda erat respublica. 6. Summe nobis excolenda sunt corpus, mens, animus. 7. Habendus est delectus, comparandae sunt naves. 8. Non sunt ea nobis contemnenda; sunt diligentissime providenda. 9. Prae omnibus aliis observandi et colendi sunt pueris parentes. 10. Utrum amandi an timendi reges sunt?

1. Virtue must be cultivated. 2. Who doubts that the gods are to be feared? 3. A parent (*Dat.*) ought so to train-up (his) son that he may obey the laws of virtue. 4. Those persons are to be admired who have dared to die for (pro) their country. 5. (We) must preserve the state; (we) must crush the conspiracy. 6. Virtue must not only be cultivated, but also loved. 7. These things must not be passed over by us (*Dat.*). 8. Before (prae) all other things (res) the war must be carried on vigorously. 9. We (*Dat.*) ought to read the orators and poets. 10. A man (*Dat.*) should not despise death.

RULE 31.—When the Verb from which the Gerundive comes governs any other Case than the Accusative, the Gerundive is used impersonally in the Nominative Case Singular Neuter. The Object is put in the Case which the Verb governs, and the agent or doer is put in the Dative Case; as, obtempĕrandum est (nōbīs) virtūtis praeceptīs (*Dative*), *we must obey the lessons of virtue;* suo cuīque jūdĭcio (*Ablative*) utendum est, *each one must use his own judgment.* N.B.—The Dative of the Agent is not always expressed.

VOCABULARY 61.

ingrĕdior, gressus, 3,	*I enter.*	**jūdĭcium, ii,** *n.*	*judgment.*
intercludo, si, sum, 3,	*I shut off, intercept.*	**părātus, a, um,**	*prepared, ready.*
obtempĕro, etc., 1,	*I obey, comply with.*	**quisque, quaeque, quidque & quodque; *gen.* cujusque, etc.,**	*every one.*
commeātus, us, *m.*	*provisions, supplies.*	**quō,** *adv.*	*whither.*
commīlĭto, ōnis, *m.*	*fellow-soldier, comrade.*	PHRASE:	
istūc, *adv.* (*from* **iste**),	*thither, where you are.*	**Fĭĕri de ălĭquo,** *to become of one;* **as, quid factum est de illo,** *what has become of that man?*	

Exercise LXI.

1. Omnibus moriendum est. 2. Ita bellandum est ut pax peti videatur. 3. Mihi utendum est judicio meo. 4. Nobis quoque ingrediendum est quam confecisti viam. 5. Ita nobis vivendum est ut ad mortem parati simus. 6. Non longius progrediendum est, commilitones, ne commeatibus nostris intercludamur. 7. Non dubium est quin bono civi legibus sit obtemperandum. 8. Proficiscendum mihi erat illo ipso die. 9. Magnopere est curandum ne nobis consilium defuisse videatur. 10. Cognoscendum est quid de illo homine factum sit.

1. Must (we) not (nonne) all die? 2. We must die bravely, fellow-soldiers! 3. Boys ought to strive-hard to please their parents. 4. We must strive with (our) utmost zeal that the commonwealth may be preserved. 5. We must not believe all men in every thing. 6. We must set out immediately. 7. It is greatly to be desired that the war may be brought-to-an-end. 8. We must take great care (see No. 9 above) *that* we are *not* (ne) shut off from all help. 9. What must we do, citizens? Which-of-the-two (*Dat.*) should we trust? 10. We ought so to learn as (ut) not immediately to forget.

Rule 32.—The Gerundive is frequently used instead of the Gerund.

1. The Accusative is put in the same case as the Gerund.

2. The Gerund is then changed into the Gerundive.

3. The Gerundive is made to agree with the Substantive in gender, number, and case; thus

Gen. Ars puĕrōs ēdūcandī difficĭlĭs est

becomes

Ars puĕrōrum ēdūcandōrum difficĭlĭs est

in the following way: (1.) The Accusative *pueros* is put in the same case as the Gerund *educandi;* consequently *puerorum.* (2.) The Gerund *educandi* is changed into the Gerundive *educandus, a, um.* (3.) The Gerundive is put in the same case, gender, and number, as *puerorum;* consequently, *educandorum.*

Dat. Opĕram dăt ăgro cŏlendō, { *he devotes himself to cultivating land.*

Acc. Ad pĕtendam pācem vēnērunt lēgātī, { *embassadors came to seek for peace.*

Abl. Littĕris tractandis mens ăcuĭtŭr, { *the wits are sharpened by dealing with letters.*

Obs. The Gerundive is employed more frequently than the Gerund. The Gerund is chiefly used where an ambiguity would be occasioned by the use of the Gerundive; as, stŭdium plūrĭs cognoscendī, *the desire of learning more*, rather than stŭdium plūrium cognoscendōrum, which would leave it doubtful whether *things* or *men* were meant.

VOCABULARY 62.

concēdo, cessi, cessum, 3,	*I yield, retire.*	**Campānia, ae,** *f.*	*Campania, a province of Italy.*
incendo, di, sum, 3,	*I burn* (trans.).	**occŭpātus, a, um,**	*engaged, busy.*
percĭpio, cēpi, ceptum, 3,	*I perceive.*	**pĕrītus, a, um,**	*experienced, skilled in.*
affectus, a, um,	*made, disposed.*	**quăsĭ,** *conj.*	*as if, just as.*
Brūtus, i, *m.*	*Brutus, name of a famous Roman.*	PHRASES:	
Cassius, ii, *m.*	*Cassius, a friend of Brutus.*	**Consĭlium īnīre,**	*to enter on, form a design.*
		In spem venire,	*to conceive a hope.*

EXERCISE LXII.

1. Bellum suscepit Catilina reipublicae delendae causa. 2. Timotheus erat civitatis regendae peritus. 3. Consilium iniit Catilina urbis incendendae. 4. Conservandae libertatis gratia initio creabantur consules. 5. Tiberius quasi ad firmandam valetudinem in Campaniam concessit. 6. Occupatus sum in litteris scribendis. 7. Studiosi solent esse juvenes equorum canumque alendorum. 8. Consilium inierunt Brutus et Cassius libertatis recuperandae. 9. Hostes in spem venerant potiendorum castrorum. 10. Oculus probe affectus est ad suum munus fungendum.

1. The Roman youth (pl.) were trained-up for (ad) managing the commonwealth. 2. Cicero formed a plan for crushing the conspiracy (*Gen.*). 3. Nature has endowed (instruo) the mind with senses prepared for perceiving objects (res). 4. He burned with the desire of destroying his country. 5. Those wicked men formed a design of slaying the consul. 6. Virtue is especially (maxime) discerned in despising pleasure. 7. The first book is written (*Pres.-Perf.*) on-the-subject-of (de) despising death. 8. The utmost pleasure is derived (capio) from (ex) reading books. 9. A husbandman ought (oportet) to devote himself to cultivating his lands. 10. Cicero devoted himself with the utmost zeal to preserving the commonwealth.

Additional Rules of Quantity
(and exceptions to some previous rules).

Final Consonants. Polysyllables.

1. Words of more than one syllable ending in a consonant, except *c* or *s*, have the vowel preceding that consonant short; as, *illŭd*, *semĕl*, *agmĕn*, *calcăr*, etc.

2. Final *c* has the preceding vowel long, except *donĕc*.

3. Final *as*, *es*, *os* are long; as, *terrās*, *finēs*, *vĭrōs*, etc.

Exceptions.—**Es** final is short in *penĕs*, and in nouns of the Third Declension, which increase short in the Genitive, as *milĕs*, *ĭtis*, except *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *Cĕrēs*, and *pariēs*.

Os final is short in *compŏs* and *impŏs*.

4. Final *is* and *us*; see p. 7 and 38; monosyll., p. 15.

Other exceptions fall chiefly under Rules 3 and 4, p. 114.

Final Vowels (see p. 7 and 114).

5. I final is long, except in *nĭsĭ* and *quăsĭ*.

Exception.—**I** final in *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ibi*, and *ubi*, is common.

6. O final is long, except in *citŏ*, *duŏ*, *egŏ*, *modŏ*, and *octŏ*.

Exception.—**O** final is short also in the verbs *sciŏ*, *nesciŏ*, *putŏ*, *volŏ*.

Penults of Perfects and Supines.

7. Perfects of two syllables have the penult long; as, *vēni*, *vīdi*, *vīci*.

Exception.—The seven following Perfects have the penult short: *lĭbi*, *dĕdi*, *fĭdi*, *scĭdi*, *stĕti*, *stĭti*, and *tŭli*.

8. The syllable of reduplication in the Perfect is always short; as, *cĕcidi*, *tŭtudi*, etc.; and the vowel of the penult, if before a single consonant, is short also, as *dĭdĭci* (from *disco*), *tŭtŭdi* (from *tundo*), except *cĕcīdi* (from *cædo*), and *pĕpēdi* (from *pedo*).

9. Supines of two syllables have the penult long; as. *cāsum*, *mōtum*, *vīsum*, etc.

Exception.—The following Supines have the penult short: *cĭtum* (from *cieo*), *dătum*, *ĭtum*, *lĭtum*, *quĭtum*, *rŭtum*, *sătum*, *sĭtum*, and the part. *rătus*, from dep. *reor*.

10. Supines in *utum* of more than two syllables have the penult long; as, *acūtum*, *minūtum*, etc.

Note.—The forms *condĭtum*, *dirŭtum*, etc., belong under rule for compounds (p. 114).

EXTRACTS FROM CÆSAR.

VOCABULARY 63.

appello, etc., 1,	*I call, name.*	**institūtum**, i, *n.*	*institution, custom.*
Aquitāni, orum, *m.* (*pl.*),	*the Aquitani, a people of Gaul.*	**incŏlo**, lui, cultum, 3,	trans., *to inhabit*, with acc.; intr., *to dwell.*
Belgae, arum, *m.* (*pl.*),	*the Belgæ* or *Belgians, a people of Gaul.*	**Matrŏna**, ae, *m.*	*Matrona (Marne), a river of Gaul.*
Celtae, arum, *m.* (*pl.*),	*the Celtæ* or *Celts, inhabiting one of the divisions of Gaul.*	**praecēdo**, cessi, cessum, 3,	*I surpass, excel.*
continenter, *adv.*	*always, incessantly.*	**propterea quod**, *conj.*	*because.*
differo, distŭli, dīlātum, differre,	*I differ.*	**reliquus**, a, um,	*remaining, rest.*
Galli, orum, *m.* (*pl.*),	*the Galli* or *Gauls.*	**qui, quae, quod**, *rel. pron.*	*who, which, what.*
Garumna, ae, *m.* or *f.*	*Garumna (Garonne), a river of Gaul.*	**quotidiānus**, a, um,	*daily.*
hic, haec, hoc,	*this.*	**Sēquāna**, ae, *f.*	*the Sequana (Seine), a river of Gaul.*
		tertius, a, um,	*third.*
		tres, tria,	*three.*

I. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres. Unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam Celtae, qui lingua nostra Galli appellantur.

II. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus, inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen dividit, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana.

III. Fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod proximi sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

IV. Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere quotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt.

VOCABULARY 64.

Aquitania, ae, *f.*	*the country of the Aquitani, Aquitania.*
attingo, tĭgi, tactum, 3,	*I touch upon, reach to.*
căpio, cēpi, captum, 3,	*I take.*
contĭneo, tĭnui, tentum, 2,	*I contain, confine, bound.*
extrēmus, a, um,	*outermost, farthest; last.*
is, ea, id,	*he, she, it, that.*
Hispānia, ae, *f.*	*Spain.*
Jura, ae, *m.*	*Mt. Jura, in Gaul.*
Lemānus, i, *m.* (lăcus),	*Lake Leman,* or *Lake of Geneva.*
Orgĕtŏrix, ĭgis, *m.*	*Orgetorix, a chief of the Helvetii.*
nobĭlĭtas, ātis, *f.*	*nobility, the nobility* (collectively).
occāsus, us, *m.*	*the going down, setting;* occ. solis = *the west.*
pertĭneo, tĭnui, tentum, 2,	intr., *I reach, extend; tend.*
provincia, ae, *f.*	*province.*
Pyrenaei, orum, *m.* (montes),	*the Pyrenees, between Gaul and Spain.*
septemtriones, um, *m.*	*the north.*
Sequāni, orum, *m.*	*the Sequani.*
Sēquānus, a, um,	*of the Sequani, Sequanian.*
undĭque, *adv.*	*on every side.*
vergo, ĕre, 3, *def.*	*I turn, incline.*

V. Una pars initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumine, oceano, finibus Belgarum. Attingit etiam flumen Rhenum. Vergit ad septemtriones.

VI. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in septemtriones et orientem solem.

VII. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam partem oceani, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septemtriones.

VIII. Apud Helvetios, nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetorix. Is conjurationem nobilitatis fecit; et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent.

IX. Facilius eis persuasit, quod undique, loci natura, Helvetii continentur; una ex parte, flumine Rheno, latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; altera ex parte, monte Jura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertia, lacu Lemano, et flumine Rhodano, qui Provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit.

VOCABULARY 65.

acceptus, a, um,	*acceptable, agreeable.*	**Aeduus, a, um,**	*Æduan; pl., the Ædui.*
adductus, a, um,	*induced.*	**ante,** *as adv.*	*before, previously.*

carrus, i, *m.*	*a car, wagon.*
Casticus, i, *m.*	*Casticus, a Sequanian chief.*
cliens, ntis, *c.*	*a client, retainer.*
coĕmo, ēmi, emptum, 3,	*I buy up.*
cōgo, coēgi, coactum, 3,	*I compel.*
condūco, duxi, ductum, 3,	*I bring together, collect.*
confirmo, are, etc., 1,	*I confirm, ratify.*
crĕmo, āre, etc., 1,	*I burn.*
damno, āre, etc., 1,	*I condemn.*
dēlĭgo, lēgi, lectum, 3,	*I choose, select.*
Dumnŏrix, igis, *m.*	*Dumnorix, an Æduan chief.*
enuncio, āre, etc., 1,	*I announce, report.*
jūmentum, i, *n.*	*a beast of burden.*
erĭpio, rĭpui, reptum, 3,	*I snatch away, rescue.*
fămilia, ae, *f.*	*a body of slaves* (of one house); *a household.*
īdem, eădem, ĭdem,	*the same.*
ignis, is, *m.*	*fire.*
ĭtem, *adv.*	*also.*
lēgātio, onis, *f.*	*an embassy.*
maxime, *adv.*	*most.*
obaeratus, i, *m.*	*a debtor.*
plebs, ēbis, *f.*	*the common people; the commons.*
prōfectio, onis, *f.*	*a setting out, departure.*
quam maximus,	*the greatest possible, as great as possible.*
que, *conj.* (*enclitic*),	*and.*
regnum, i, *n.*	*sovereign power.*
sēmentis, is, *f.*	*a sowing* (*of seed*).

X. His rebus adducti constituerunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent, comparare; jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coemere; sementes quam maximas facere; cum proximis civitatibus amicitiam confirmare. In tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant.

XI. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Sequano, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat. Itemque Dumnorigi, Aeduo, qui maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur, persuadet. Inter se jusjurandum dant, et totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

XII. Ea res ut Helvetiis enunciata, Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coegerunt. Damnatum poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur. Die constituta Orgetorix ad judicium omnem suam familiam, et omnes clientes obaeratosque conduxit. Per eos se eripuit.

VOCABULARY 66.

Allobrŏges, um, *m. pl.*	*the Allobroges, a people of Gaul.*	**arbitror, āri, ātus,** *dep.*, 1,	*I think, suppose.*
duo, ae, o,	*two.*	**Geneva, ae,** *f.*	*Geneva.*

cĭbāria, orum, *n. pl.* } *provisions, supplies.*
dŏmus, us (*or* i), *f.* } *a house, home; domi, at home.*
expĕdītus, a, um, *ready, expeditious, light-armed.*
incito, āre, etc., 1, *I arouse, provoke.*
mātūro, āre, etc., 1, } *I hasten.*
mŏlo, lui, lĭtum, 3, } *I grind.*
multo, *adv.* *much.*
nihilōmĭnus, *adv.* *none the less, nevertheless.*
nuncio, āre, etc., 1, } *I announce, declare.*
omnĭno, *adv.* *on the whole, altogether.*
privātus, a, um, *private.*
rescindo, scidi, scissum, 3, } *I cut down.*
ultĕrior, us, *comp. adj.* } *farther.*
vădum, i, *n.* *a ford.*
vīcus, i, *m.* *a village.*

XIII. Quum civitas, ob eam rem incitata, armis jus suum exsequi conaretur, Orgetorix mortuus est. Post ejus mortem nihilominus Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facere conantur. Ubi se paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia, vicos, privata aedificia incendunt.

XIV. Trium mensium molita cibaria quemque domo efferre jubent. Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent; unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodanum; alterum per provinciam nostram multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod Rhodanus nonnullis locis vado transitur.

XV. Extremum oppidum Allobrogum est Geneva. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet. Omnibus rebus ad profectionem comparatis, diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant. Caesari quum id nunciatum esset, maturat ab urbe proficisci, et in Galliam ulteriorem contendit. Pontem jubet rescindi.

VOCABULARY 67.

Ambarri, orum, *m. pl.* } *the Ambarri.*
angustiae, arum, *f.* *narrowness, narrow passes; straits.*
consanguĭneus, a, um, } *related, connected by blood; subst., a relative.*
conscrībo, psi, ptum, 3, } *I enroll, enlist.*
dēpŏpŭlo, āre, etc., 1, } *I lay waste.*
deprĕcātor, oris, *m.* } *an intercessor.*
expecto, āre, etc., 1, *I await, expect.*
fŭga, ae, *f.* *flight.*
hīberna, orum, *n. pl.* } *winter quarters.*
impetro, āre, etc., 1, } *I obtain by request.*
inde, *adv.* *thence.*

invītus, a, um,	*unwilling.*
ĭtăque, *adv.*	*therefore, accordingly.*
mălĕfĭcium, ii, *n.*	*wrong-doing, injury.*
mātrimōnium, ii, *n.*	*marriage, matrimony.*
perdūco, duxi, ductum, 3,	*I prolong, extend.*
pŏpŭlor, ārī, ātus, *dep.*, 1,	*I lay waste.*
possessio, ōnis, *f.*	*a possession.*
prīmus, a, um,	*first.*
rĕcĭpio, cēpi, ceptum, 3,	*I take back, betake.*
Santŏni, orum, *m. pl.*	*the Santoni, or Santones.*
Segusiāni, orum, *m. pl.*	*the Segusiani.*
septĭmus, a, um,	*the seventh.*
sese, *pron.*	*redupl. from se,* p. 41.
vis, *f.*, *def.* p. 26,	*strength, force.*
Vocontii, orum, *m. pl.*	*the Vocontii.*

PHRASES:

Esse sibi in animo,	*that it was their intention.*
Certior fio,	*I am informed.*
Certiorem (aliquem) facere,	*to inform (any one).*
Plurimum posse, *or* valēre,	*to be very powerful, to have very great influence.*

XVI. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, qui dicerent: Sibi esse in animo, sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere. Caesar a lacu Lemano ad montem Juram murum fossamque perducit. Negat se posse iter ulli per provinciam dare. Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua, Sequanis invitis, propter angustias ire non poterant.

XVII. His quum persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem mittunt, ut, eo deprecatore, impetrarent. Dumnorix apud Sequanos plurimum poterat, et Helvetiis erat amicus, quod Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat. Itaque rem suscipit, et a Sequanis impetrat, ut, per fines suos, Helvetios ire patiantur.

XVIII. Caesar in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit, duasque ibi legiones conscribit, et tres ex hibernis educit, et in ulteriorem Galliam, per Alpes, ire contendit. In fines Vocontiorum die septimo pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusianos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt, extra provinciam, trans Rhodanum primi.

XIX. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias transduxerat, et Aeduorum agros populabantur. Aedui, quum se defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, rogatum auxilium. Eodem tempore Ambarri, consanguinei Aeduorum, Caesarem certiorem faciunt, sese, depopulatis agris, non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere. Item

Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fuga se ad Caesarem recipiunt. Caesar non expectandum sibi statuit, dum in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent.

VOCABULARY 68.

abdo, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3,	*I conceal, hide.*
ac, *conj.*	*and.*
aggrĕdior, grĕdi, gressus, *dep.*, 3,	*I attack.*
Arar, ăris, *m.*	*the Arar* (now *Saone*), *a river of Gaul.*
călămĭtas, ātis, *f.*	*loss, misfortune, injury.*
Cassiānus, a, um,	*of* or *with Cassius, Cassian.*
commŏveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2,	*I excite, alarm.*
concīdo, cīdi, cīsum, 3 (*from* caedo),	*I cut to pieces, destroy.*
consĕquor, sĕqui, sĕcūtus, *dep.*, 3,	*I pursue, overtake.*
consisto, stĭti, stĭtum, 3,	*I take my stand, halt, am stationed.*
Divĭco, ōnis, *m.*	*Divico, a Helvetian.*
dŏlus, i, *m.*	*stratagem, deceit, fraud.*
eo, īre, īvi, ĭtum (*irreg.* 4, p. 105).	*I go.*
impĕdio, īvi, ĭtum, 4,	*I entangle, embarrass.*
incommŏdum, i, *n.*	*loss, disadvantage, defeat.*
incrēdĭbĭlis, e,	*incredible.*
influo, uxi, uxum, 3,	*to flow* (*into*).
jŭgum, i, *n.*	*yoke*; **mittere sub j.**, *to send under the yoke* (*a military disgrace*).
lēnĭtas, ātis, *f.*	*gentleness, slowness.*
linter, tris, *f.*	*a boat.*
nam, *conj.*	*for.*
nondum, *adv.*	*not yet.*
pāgus, i, *m.*	*a canton, district.*
persĕquor, sĕqui, sĕcūtus, *dep.*, 3,	*I pursue, follow through.*
persĕvĕro, āre, etc., 1,	*I persevere, continue.*
persolvo, lvi, lūtum, 3,	*I pay*; **p. poenas**, *to pay the penalty.*
pŏpŭlus, i, *m.*	*people.*
princeps, ipis,	*first, chief*; subst., *a chief.*
quartus, a, um,	*fourth.*
quātuor, *indecl.*	*four.*
rătis, is, *f.*	*a raft, float.*
rĕpertīnus, a, um,	*sudden.*
sīn, *conj.*	*but if.*
Tigŭrīnus, a, um,	*of the Tigurini, Tigurine*, or *Tigurian.*
vero, *adv.*	*indeed, however.*
vigĭlia, ae, *f.*	*watch.*

XX. Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat judicari non possit. Id Helvetii, ratibus et lintribus junctis, transibant. Ubi Caesar certior factus est, tres copiarum partes Helvetios transduxisse, quartam vero partem citra flumen esse, de tertia vigilia e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum transierat.

XXI. Eos impeditos aggressus, magnam eorum partem con-

cĭdit. Reliqui sese in proximas silvas abdiderunt. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus: nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quatuor pagos divisa est. Hic pagus Lucium Cassium, consulem, interfecerat, et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat. Ita, quae pars calamitatem populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps poenas persolvit.

XXII. Hoc proelio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciundum curat, atque ita exercitum transducit. Helvetii, repentino ejus adventu commoti, legatos ad eum mittunt, cujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare agit:

XXIII. Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros, ubi Caesar eos esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani, et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Se ita a patribus majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute quam dolo contenderent. Quare, ne committeret, ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi Romani nomen caperet.

VOCABULARY 69.

agmen, ĭnis, *n.* *a moving body, line.*
aliēnus, a, um, *another's, foreign, unfavorable.*
amplius (*comp.*) *more.*
aut, *or.*
averto, ti, sum, 3, *I turn away.*
coepi (*def.* p. 111), *I begin.*
commĕmŏro, āre, etc., 1, *I relate, mention.*
consuesco, suēvi, suētum, 3, *I am accustomed.*
contŭmēlia, ae, *f.* *insult, affront.*
depōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum, 3, *I lay aside.*
discēdo, cessi, cessum, 3, *I depart, retire.*
dŭbĭtātio, onis, *f.* *doubt.*
flāgĭto, āre, etc., 1, *I demand.*
frūmentum, i, *n.* *grain.*
injuria, ae, *f.* *injury, wrong.*
interim, *adv.* *in the mean time, meanwhile.*
ipse, a, um (p. 44), *self.*
lăcesso, sīvi, sītum, 3, *I provoke, assail, harass.*
mātūrus, a, um, *ripe.*
mille, millia (p. 33), *thousand.*
minus (*comp.*), *less.*
mŏdŏ, *adv.* *only.*
ne . . . quidem, *not even.*
nonnunquam, *adv.* *sometimes.*
novissimus, a, um, *newest, rearmost;* **n. agmen**, *the rear.*
num, *whether? sometimes only asks a question.*
pābŭlum, i, *n.* *fodder.*
postĕrus, a, um, *following, next.*
praesentia, ae, *f.* *presence;* **in praesentia**, *at present, for the present.*
publicē, *adv* *in the name of the state, publicly.*

quindĕcim, *indecl.* *fifteen.*
quīni, ae, a, *five a piece, by fives.*
răpīna, ae, *f.* *a plundering, rapine.*
recens, ntis, *fresh, recent.*
responsum, i, *n.* *an answer.*
sătisfăcio, fēci, factum, 3, *I satisfy (with dat.).*
sēni, ae, a, *six each, by sixes.*
subsisto, stĭti, stĭtum, 3, *I make a stand, stand.*
subvĕho, vexi, vectum, 3, *I bring up, convey.*
suppĕto, tŭi, tum, 3, *to be supplied, to be at hand.*
tămen, *conj.* *still, nevertheless.*
testis, is, *c.* *a witness.*

XXIV. His Caesar ita respondit: Sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas commemorassent, memoria teneret. Si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num recentium injuriarum memoriam deponere posse? Tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea, quae polliceantur, facturos intelligat, et, si Aeduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem facturum.

XXV. Divico respondit: Ita Helvetios a majoribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare consueverint; ejus rei populum Romanum esse testem. Hoc responso dato, discessit. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar. Equitatum omnem praemittit, qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt, et pauci de nostris cadunt. Helvetii audacius subsistere, nonnunquam nostros lacessere coeperunt.

XXVI. Caesar suos a proelio continebat; ac satis habebat in praesentia hostem rapinis prohibere. Ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt, uti, inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum, non amplius quinis aut senis millibus passuum interesset. Interim quotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum, quod essent publice polliciti, flagitare. Nam, propter frigora, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat. Eo autem frumento, quod flumine Arare navibus subvexerat, minus uti poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolebat.

VOCABULARY 70.

accūso, āre, etc., 1, *I accuse, inveigh against.*
affīnĭtas, ātis, *f.* *marriage, alliance.*
audācia, ae, *f.* *boldness, daring.*
augeo, auxi, auctum, 2, *I increase.*
celĕrĭter, *adv.* *quickly.*

complūres, ia, *a good many, very many.*
comporto, āre, etc., 1, } *I bring together, collect.*
concĭlium, ii, *n.* *a council.*
cupĭdus, a, um, *desirous, coveting* (*with* gen.).
dēsigno, āre, etc., 1, } *I mark out, designate.*
despēro, āre, etc., 1, } *I despair* (*with* de *and* abl.).
diminuo, ui, ūtum, 3, } *I diminish.*
diutius, *adv.* (*comp.*) } *longer* (*than is reasonable*), *too long.*
dūco, duxi, ductum, 3, { *I lead out, prolong* (*time*), *put off, delay.*
fămiliāris, e, *of one's family, private;* **res f.,** *private property.*
fāveo, fāvi, fautum, 2, } *I favor* (*with* dat.).
insto, stiti, 1, *irreg.* } *I press on, approach, am at hand.*
jacto, āre, etc., 1, } *I toss over, discuss; boast.*
lĭbĕrālitas, ātis, *f.* } *liberality.*
licĕor, licĭtus, licēri, 2, *dep.* } *I bid* (at auction).
Liscus, i, *m.* *Liscus, an Æduan chief.*
magistrātus, us, *m.* } *magistracy, office.*
obtĭneo, tinui, tentum, 2, } *I obtain, secure.*
ōdi (*def.*, p. 111), *I hate.*
plūres, ia *and* **a,** *more, several.*
praesertim, *adv.* *especially.*
prĕces, um, *f. pl.* *prayers.*
prĕtium, ii, *n.* *price, value, sum.*
propōno, pōsui, pōsĭtum, 3, } *I put before, set forth, state.*
quamdiu (*or sep.*), } *how long;* i. e., *as long as.*
quinetiam (*or sep.*), } *nay too, moreover.*
rĕdĭmo, ēmi, emptum, 3, } *I buy back, buy up, contract for, farm.*
res nōvae, *new affairs;* i. e., *a revolution.*
restĭtuo, ui, ūtum, 3, } *I restore, re-establish.*
retĭneo, tĭnui, tentum, 2, } *I retain, detain.*
secrēto, *adv.* *in private, secretly.*
sēdĭtiosus, a, um, } *seditious.*
sublĕvo, āre, etc., 1, } *I aid, support.*

XXVII. Diem ex die ducere Aedui; conferri, comportari, adesse dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit, et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his Divitiaco et Lisco, qui summo magistratui praeerat, graviter eos accusat, quod ab iis non sublevetur; praesertim quum, magna ex parte, eorum precibus adductus bellum susceperit.

XXVIII. Tum demum Liscus proponit: Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat; hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem deterrere, ne frumentum conferant. Ab iisdem nostra consilia hostibus enunciari; hos a se coerceri non posse. Quin etiam, quod rem Caesari enunciârit, intelligere sese, quanto id cum periculo fecerit; et, ob eam causam, quamdiu potuerit, tacuisse.

XXIX. Caesar hac oratione Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem, designari sentiebat; sed, quod, pluribus praesentibus, eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit; Liscum retinet; dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vera: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum novarum rerum; complures annos, omnia Aeduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere; propterea quod, illo licente, contra liceri audeat nemo.

XXX. His rebus suam rem familiarem auxisse, magnum numerum equitatus semper circum se habere. Favere Helvetiis propter affinitatem; odisse Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu potentia ejus diminuta, et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis summam in spem regni per Helvetios obtinendi venire; imperio populi Romani, non modo de regno, sed etiam de ea, quam habeat, gratia desperare.

VOCABULARY 71.

abstĭneo, nui, ntum, 2,	*I hold back, refrain.*
accurro, cŭcurri, cursum, 3,	*I run up to, hasten.*
adhĭbeo, hĭbui, hĭbitum, 2,	*I have present, invite to be present.*
admitto, mīsi, missum, 3,	*I send to, urge forward.*
adscendo, ndi, nsum, 3,	*I climb, ascend.*
adscensus, us, *m.*	*ascent.*
anĭmadverto, verti, versum, 3, *and* **animum adverto,**	*I turn my attention to, perceive;* anim. in, *I punish, proceed against.*
circuĭtus, us, *m.*	*circuit, a going round.*
collis, is, *m.*	*a hill.*
commŏnefacio, fēci, factum, 3,	*I admonish, remind of.*
Consĭdius, ii, *m.*	*Considius, a Roman officer.*
consīdo, sēdi, sessum, 3,	*I encamp.*
dēnĭque, *adv.*	*lastly, at last.*
dextra, ae, *f.*	*right hand.*
existimātio, onis, *f.*	*opinion, estimation.*
existĭmo, āre, etc., 1,	*I think, believe.*
explōrātor, ōris, *m.*	*a scout, spy.*
frāternus, a, um,	*brotherly.*
Gallĭcus, a, um,	*Gallic.*
insigne, is, *n.*	*a standard, an ensign.*
intervallum, i, *n.*	*distance, interval.*
jugum (montis),	*summit.*
justitia, ae, *f.*	*justice.*
lacrĭma, ae, *f.*	*a tear.*
neque, *conj.*	*nor;* **neque . . . neque,** *neither . . nor.*
obsecro, āre, etc., 1,	*I beg, entreat.*
octo,	*eight.*
offendo, ndi, nsum, 3,	*I offend, displease.*
ostendo, ndi, ntum *or* **sum, 3,**	*I point out, show.*

perterreo, rui, rĭtum, 2, *I frighten greatly.*
praecĭpio, cēpi, ceptum, 3, *I command, enjoin.*
prendo (*or* **prehendo**), **ndi, nsum**, 3, *I take, grasp.*
priusquam, *sooner than, before that, before.*
quingenti, ae, a, *five hundred.*
quisquam (**quaequam**), **quidquam**, *or* **quicquam**, *any one, any thing.*
renuncio, āre, etc., 1, *I bring back word, announce.*
reprehendo, ndi, nsum, 3, *I blame, find fault with.*
rĕpugno, āre, etc., 1, *I oppose, fight against.*
sēpărātim, *adv.* *separately.*
subdūco, duxi, ductum, 3, *I lead down, withdraw.*
supplĭcium, ii, *n.* *punishment.*
suspĭcio, onis, *f.* *suspicion.*
temperantia, ae, *f.* *temperance, moderation.*
vīto, āre, etc., 1, *I avoid, shun.*
vŏco, āre, etc., 1, *I call, summon.*
vŏluntas, ātis, *f.* *good will, affection.*

PHRASES:

Mille passus, *a* (Roman) *mile; pl.* **millia passuum**, *miles.*
Summus mons, *the top of the mountain.*
Equo admisso, *at full speed.*

XXXI. Quum ad has suspiciones certissimae res accederent, satis esse causae arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere juberet. His omnibus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in Populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam, ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet, verebatur. Itaque, priusquam quidquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet; simul commonefacit, quae, ipso praesente, in concilio Gallorum sint dicta; et ostendit, quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit.

XXXII. Divitiacus multis cum lacrimis obsecrare coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: Scire se, illa esse vera; sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, quum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur. Caesar ejus dextram prendit; Dumnorigem ad se vocat; fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat, ostendit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet.

XXXIII. Eodem die, ab exploratoribus certior factus, hostes sub monte consedisse millia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura montis, et qualis in circuitu adscen-

sus, qui cognoscerent, misit. Renunciatum est, facilem esse. De tertia vigilia Titum Labienum, legatum, cum duobus legionibus summum jugum montis adscendere jubet. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit; equitatumque omnem ante se mittit.

XXXIV. Prima luce, quum summus mons a Tito Labieno teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque aut ipsius adventus, aut Labieni, cognitus esset, Considius, equo admisso, ad eum accurrit; dicit montem, quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri; id se ex Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instrŭit.

XXXV. Labienus, ut erat ei praeceptum (ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret), monte occupato, nostros expectabat, proelioque abstinebat. Multo denique die, per exploratores Caesar cognovit, montem a suis teneri, et Considium perterritum, quod non vidisset, pro viso renunciasse. Eo die, quo consuerat intervallo, hostes sequitur; et millia pas suum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

VOCABULARY 72.

bĭduum, i, *n.*	*space of two days.*
Bibracte, is, *n.* (*abl.* **Bibracte**)	*Bibracte, a town of the Ædui.*
Boii, orum, *m. pl.*	*the Boii, a people in Gaul.*
circumvĕnio, vēni, ventum, 4,	*I surround.*
claudo, si, sum, 3,	*I shut, close in.*
colligo, āre, etc., 1,	*I bind together.*
commŏde, *adv.*	*conveniently, advantageously.*
confertus, a, um,	*crowded, dense.*
conspĭcor, āri, ātus, *dep.*, 1,	*I behold.*
converto, ti, sum, 3,	*I change about.*
cōpiosus, a, um,	*wealthy, abundant.*
defessus, a, um,	*exhausted, worn out.*
deinde,	*then.*
disjĭcio, jēci, jectum, 3,	*I disperse, scatter.*
distringo, inxi, ictum, 3,	*I draw.*
duodēvīginti (*indecl.*),	*eighteen.*
eo, *adv.*	*thither, to it.*
evello, li, vulsum, 3,	*I pull out.*
frūmentārius, a, um,	*of* or *relating to grain.*
res frumentaria,	*a supply of grain, provisions.*
ictus, us, *m.*	*a stroke, blow.*
impĕdīmentum, i, *n.*	*hinderance; in pl., baggage.*
inflecto, exi, exum, 3,	*I bend.*
insequor, qui, secūtus, *dep.*, 3,	*I follow up, attack.*
interclūdo, clūsi, clūsum, 3,	*I shut* or *cut off from.*
mĕdius, a, um,	*middle, intervening;* **medius collis,** *the middle of the hill.*
pīlum, i, *n.*	*a javelin.*

perfringo, frēgi, fractum, 3,	*I break through.*
phălanx, ngis, *f.*	*a phalanx, compact mass.*
postquam,	*after that, when.*
postrīdie, *adv.*	*on the day after* (*with* gen.); *next day.*
pro, *prep.*	*for, instead of, as.*
prospĭcio, spexi, spectum, 3,	*I look out for, provide.*
redintĕgro, āre, etc., 1,	*I renew.*
refĕro, ferre, etc., *irreg.*; **pedem referre,**	*to retreat, fall back.*
rejĭcio, jēci, jectum, 3,	*I cast* or *drive back.*
remŏveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2,	*I move out of the way, remove.*
rursus, *adv.*	*again.*
sarcĭna, ae, *f.*	*baggage.*
seu *or* **sive,**	*whether*; **sive ... sive** *or* **seu ... seu,** *whether ... or.*
sinistra, ae, *f.*	*left hand.*
succēdo, cessi, cessum, 3,	*I come up to, approach.*
supĕrior, us,	*higher, upper.*
sustĭneo, tĭnui, tentum, 2,	*I sustain, withstand.*
tandem, *adv.*	*at length.*
tollo, sustŭli, sublātum, 3,	*I take away, remove.*
transfīgo, fixi, fixum, 3,	*I pierce through.*
trĭplex, ĭcis,	*three-fold, triple.*
Tulingi, orum, *m. pl.*	*the Tulingi, a people in Gaul.*

XXXVI. Postridie ejus diei, quod omnino biduum supererat, quum exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret, et quod a Bibracte, oppido Aeduorum longe maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius millibus passuum duodeviginti aberat, rei frumentariae prospiciendum existimavit, ac Bibracte ire contendit. Helvetii, seu quod perterritos Romanos discedere existimarent, sive quod re frumentaria intercludi posse confiderent, itinere converso, nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacessere coeperunt. Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit; equitatumque, qui sustineret hostium impetum, misit.

XXXVII. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit. Sarcinas in unum locum conferri, et eum ab iis, qui in superiore acie constiterant, muniri jussit. Helvetii, cum omnibus suis carris secuti, impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt. Ipsi confertissima acie, rejecto nostro equitatu, phalange facta, sub primam nostram aciem successerunt. Caesar, primum suo, deinde omnium remotis equis, ut spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus suos, proelium commisit. Milites, e loco superiore pilis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfregerunt. Ea disjecta, gladiis districtis in eos impetum fecerunt.

XXXVIII. Gallis magno erat impedimento, quod, pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et colligatis, quum

ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere, neque, sinistra impedita, satis commode pugnare poterant. Tandem vulneribus defessi et pedem referre, et, quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eo se recipere coeperunt. Capto monte, et succedentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, qui agmen hostium claudebant, ex itinere nostros aggressi, circumvenere; et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem se receperant, rursus instare et proelium redintegrare coeperunt.

VOCABULARY 73.

ācrĭter, *adv.*	*sharply, vigorously.*	**occīsus, a, um,**	*slain.*
āmitto, mīsi, missum, 3,	*I lose.*	**perfŭgio, fūgi, fŭgĭtum, 3,**	*I flee across for safety, take refuge, desert.*
anceps, cĭpĭtis,	*doubtful, critical.*	**pēs, pĕdis,** *m.*	*foot.*
āversus, a, um,	*turned away;* av. **hostis,** *the back of an enemy.*	**posco, pŏposci, poscĭtum, 3,**	*I call for, demand.*
bĭpartīto, *adv.*	*in two parts.*	**projĭcio, jēci, jectum, 3,**	*I throw* or *cast (forward).*
bŏnĭtas, ātis, *f.*	*goodness, excellence.*	**rătio, onis,** *f.*	*plan, design; account.*
centum,	*a hundred.*	**sĕcundus, a, um,**	*second.*
conficio, fēci, fectum, 3,	*I make up, draw out; finish.*	**sĕnex, is,** *m.*	*an old man.*
copiam facere,	*to furnish an opportunity; afford a supply.*	**sĕpultūra, ae,** *f.*	*burial.*
dĕcem (*indecl.*),	*ten.*	**sexāgintā** (*indecl.*),	*sixty.*
dēdĭtio, onis, *f.*	*surrender.*	**signum, i,** *n.*	*standard.*
excipio, cēpi, ceptum, 3,	*I receive.*	**submŏveo, mōvi, motum, 2,**	*I remove, withdraw.*
grātŭlor, ārī, ātus, *dep.*, 1,	*I congratulate.*	**summa, ae,** *f.*	*amount, sum total.*
inŏpia, ae, *f.*	*want.*	**suppliciter,** *adv.*	*suppliantly.*
intermitto, mīsi, missum, 3,	*I send* or *put between;* in pass. *to intervene.*	**tabŭla, ae,** *f.*	*a tablet, register.*
jŭvo, jūvi, jūtum, 1,	*I aid.*	**trĕcenti, ae, a,**	*three hundred.*
Lingŏnes, um, *m. pl.*	*the Lingones, a people in Gaul.*	**trīduum, i,** *n.*	*a space of three days.*
nōmĭnātim, *adv.*	*by name.*	**trīgintā** (*indecl.*),	*thirty.*
objĭcio, jēci, jectum, 3,	*I throw in the way of, oppose.*	**vāco, āre,** etc., 1,	*to lie idle, unoccupied.*
		vallum, i, *n.*	*a rampart.*
		vespĕrus, i, *m.*	*evening.*

PHRASE:

Conversa signa inferre,	*to wheel about and advance.*

XXXIX. Romani conversa signa bipartito intulerunt; prima et secunda acies, ut victis ac submotis resisteret; tertia.

ut venientes exciperet. Ita, ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius quum nostrorum impetus sustinere non possent, alteri se, ut coeperant, in montem receperunt; alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt. Nam hoc toto proelio, quum ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est; propterea quod pro vallo carros objecerant.

XL. Impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. Ex eo proelio circiter millia hominum centum et triginta superfuerunt, eaque tota nocte ierunt; in fines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt; quum, et propter vulnera militum et sepulturam occisorum, nostri eos sequi non potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas literas nunciosque misit, ne eos frumento neve alia re juvarent. Ipse, triduo intermisso, cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.

XLI. Helvetii, omnium rerum inopia adducti, legatos de deditione ad eum miserunt. Qui quum se ad pedes projecissent, suppliciterque locuti pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco, quo tum essent, adventum suum exspectare jussisset, paruerunt. Eo postquam pervenit, obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, poposcit. Helvetios in fines suos reverti jussit; et quod, omnibus frugibus amissis, domi nihil erat, Allobrogibus imperavit, ut iis frumenti copiam facerent; ipsos oppida vicosque, quos incenderant, restituere jussit, quod noluit eum locum vacare, ne, proper bonitatem agrorum Germani in Helvetiorum fines transirent.

XLII. In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt, literis Graecis confectae, quibus in tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum, qui arma ferre possent; et item separatim pueri, senes, mulieresque. Summa omnium fuerat ad millia trecenta sexaginta et octo. Eorum, qui domum redierunt, repertus est numerus millium centum et decem.

Bello Helvetiorum confecto, totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt.

Additional Rules of Quantity

(and exceptions to some previous rules).

I. A vowel before another vowel is short.

Exceptions.

1. The vowel *e* before final *i* in the Genitive and Dative of the 5th Declension is long; as, *diēi*.

But in *fidei* and *rei* the *e* is common; in *spei* it is short.

2. The *i* in Genitives in *ius* is to be pronounced long in prose; is common in poetry, except *alius*, and *alterius*.

3. The *i* in *fio* and its tenses is long, except when followed by *er*.

4. The *a* and *e* are long in proper names in *āius* and *ēius*.

Increments.

II. In the singular Increment of Nouns and Adjectives *a* and *o* are long; as, *aetas, ātis; soror, ōris.*

Exceptions.

1. All words in *bs* and *ps* increasing in *a* or *o* have the increase short; as, *trabs, ăbis; ops, ŏpis.*

2. Names of persons ending in *al* and *ar* increase short; as, *Hannibal, ălis; Caesar, ăris.*

3. The Nouns *sal, jubar, lar, par, anas, mas, vas* (*vădis*), and *fax* also increase short.

Note.—Words adopted directly from the Greek, like *hepar*, etc., retain the Greek quantity in the increment.

4. *O* is short in the Increment of Neuter Nouns; as, *corpus, ŏris;* and in *arbor, memor, bos, lepus, compos,* and *impos.*

III. In the singular Increment of Nouns, etc., *e, i,* and *u* are short; as, *hiems, ĕmis; lapis, ĭdis; murmur, ŭris.*

Exceptions.

1. In *e*. The following Nouns increase in *e* long: *halec, heres, locuples, mansues, merces, quies, plebs, lex, rex, vervex.*

(Many Greek Nouns, as *tapes, etis*, etc., have the *e* long, but they follow the Greek.)

2. In *i*. a. The Nouns *Dis, glis, lis, Quiris, Samnis,* and *vibex* increase in *i* long.

b. All Adjectives in *ix* increase in *i* long, and all Nouns in *ix*, except monosyllables, as *nix, pix*, etc., and *calix, filix, larix, fornix, salix,* and *varix.*

3. In *u*. a. Words which make *udis, uris, utis,* in the Genitive from Nominatives in *us* have *u* long in the increase.

b. *Fur, lux* (*frux*), and *Pollux* also increase long.

IV. The inseparable prepositions *di* and *se* are long; *re* is short.

NOTE.—*Rĕfert* (where the *re* is from *res*) has the *e* long.

The Rules for Penults and Antepenults, and exceptions to other rules, will not be given here; the quantity must be learned from the Dictionary, and the rules reserved for a more advanced Grammar.

WORDS HAVING A DIFFERENT SIGNIFICATION IN THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Aedes,	*a temple.*	**Aedes,**	*a house.*
Aqua,	*water.*	**Aquae,**	*medicinal springs.*
Auxilium,	*aid.*	**Auxilia,**	*auxiliary forces.*
Bonum,	*a good.*	**Bona,**	*property, goods.*
Carcer,	*a prison.*	**Carcĕres,**	*the barriers of a race-course.*
Cera,	*wax.*	**Cerae,**	*a (waxen) tablet.*
Comitium,	*the Comitium (a part of the Roman Forum).*	**Comitia,**	*an assembly for election.*
Copia,	*plenty.*	**Copiae,**	*forces.*
Epulum,	*a sacred feast.*	**Epulae,**	*dishes, a banquet.*
Făcultas,	*power of doing, facility.*	**Făcultates,**	*property.*
Finis,	*end.*	**Fines,**	*boundaries, territories.*
Fortuna,	*fortune.*	**Fortunae,**	*the gifts of fortune.*
Gratia,	*favor.*	**Gratiae,**	*thanks.*
Hortus,	*a garden.*	**Horti,**	*pleasure-grounds.*
Littĕra,	*a letter (of the Alphabet).*	**Litterae,**	*an epistle, literature.*
Ludus,	*play.*	**Ludi,**	*public games.*
Lustrum,	*a period of five years.*	**Lustra,**	*haunts of wild beasts.*
Marmor,	*marble.*	**Marmŏra,**	*marbles, statues.*
Mos,	*a custom.*	**Mŏres,**	*manners, character.*
Nātālis,	*a birthday.*	**Nātales,**	*lineage.*
Opera,	*work.*	**Operae,**	*workmen.*
(Ops),	*help.*	**Opes,**	*resources, power.*
Pars,	*a part.*	**Partes,**	*the part (of an actor), a side or party.*
Rostrum,	*a beak, bill.*	**Rostra,**	*the rostra, raised stage for orators in the Roman Forum (adorned with the beaks of captured ships).*
Sal,	*salt.*	**Sălĕs,**	*witticisms.*
Tempus,	*time.*	**Tempŏra,**	*the temples of the head.*

PRESENT-PERFECTS AND SUPINES.

I. The First Conjugation.

The Present-Perfects and the Supines of the First Conjugation end regularly in āvi, ātum: as, ămo, ămāvi, ămātum, ămāre, *to love*. The following are exceptions:

Crĕpo,	crĕpui,	crĕpĭtum,	crĕpāre,	*to creak.*
Cŭbo,	cŭbui,	cŭbĭtum,	cŭbāre,	*to lie.*
Dŏmo,	dŏmui,	dŏmĭtum,	dŏmāre,	*to tame.*
Sŏno,	sŏnui,	sŏnĭtum,	sŏnāre,	*to sound.*
Vĕto,	vĕtui,	vĕtĭtum,	vĕtāre,	*to forbid.*
Tŏno,	tŏnui,	———	tŏnāre,	*to thunder.*
Mĭco,	mĭcui,	———	mĭcāre,	*to glitter.*
Plĭco,	plĭcui,	plĭcĭtum, / plĭcātum,	plĭcāre,	*to fold.*
Frĭco,	frĭcui,	frictum,	frĭcāre,	*to rub.*
Sĕco,	sĕcui,	sectum,	sĕcāre,	*to cut.*
Jŭvo,	jūvi,	jūtum,	jŭvāre,	*to assist.*
Lăvo,	lāvi,	lăvātum, / lautum,	lăvāre,	*to wash.*
Do,	dĕdi,	dătum,	dāre,	*to give.*
Sto,	stĕti,	statum,	stāre,	*to stand.*

II. The Second Conjugation.

The Present-Perfects and Supines of the Second Conjugation end regularly in ŭi and ĭtum; as, mŏneo, mŏnui, mŏnĭtum, mŏnēre, *to advise*. The following are exceptions:

1. *Present-Perfect*—ŭi. *Supine*—tum.

Dŏceo,	dŏcui,	doctum,	dŏcēre,	*to teach.*
Tĕneo,	tĕnui,	tentum,	tĕnēre,	*to hold.*
Misceo,	miscui,	mixtum, / mistum,	miscēre,	*to mix.*
Torreo,	torrui,	tostum,	torrēre,	*to roast.*
Sorbeo,	sorbui, / sorpsi,	———	sorbēre,	*to suck up.*
Censeo,	censui,	censum,	censēre,	*to assess, think.*

2. *Present-Perfect*—ēvi. *Supine*—ētum.

Dēleo,	dēlēvi,	dēlētum,	dēlēre,	*to blot out, destroy.*
Fleo,	flēvi,	flētum,	flēre,	*to weep.*
Neo,	nēvi,	nētum,	nēre,	*to spin.*
Pleo only in composition.				
Compleo,	complēvi,	complētum,	complēre,	*to fill up.*

Abŏleo,	ăbŏlēvi,	ăbŏlĭtum,	ăbŏlēre,	*to abolish.*
Adŏleo,	adolēvi,	adultum,	adolēre,	*to increase.*

3. *Present-Perfect*—i (di). *Supine*—sum.

Prandeo,	prandi,	pransum,	prandēre,	*to breakfast.*
Sĕdeo,	sēdi,	sessum,	sĕdēre,	*to sit.*
Vĭdeo,	vīdi,	vīsum,	vĭdēre,	*to see.*
Strīdeo.	strīdi,	———	strīdēre,	*to creak.*

With Reduplication in the Perfect Tenses.

Mordeo,	mŏmordi,	morsum,	mordēre,	*to bite.*
Pendeo,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	pendēre,	*to hang.*
Spondeo,	spŏpondi,	sponsum,	spondēre,	*to promise.*
Tondeo,	tŏtondi,	tonsum,	tondēre,	*to shear.*

4. *Present-Perfect*—i (vi). *Supine*—sum.

Căveo,	cāvi,	cautum,	căvēre,	*to guard one s self.*
Făveo,	fāvi,	fautum,	făvēre,	*to favor.*
Fŏveo,	fōvi,	fōtum,	fŏvēre,	*to cherish.*
Mŏveo,	mōvi,	mōtum,	mŏvēre,	*to move.*
Vŏveo,	vōvi,	vōtum,	vŏvēre,	*to vow.*

Without Supine.

Păveo,	pāvi,	———	păvēre,	*to fear.*
Ferveo,	fervi, / ferbui,	———	fervēre,	*to boil.*
Connīveo,	connīvi, / conn̆ixi,	———	connīvēre,	*to wink.*

5. *Present-Perfect*—si. *Supine*—tum *and* sum.

Augeo,	auxi,	auctum,	augēre,	*to increase.*
Indulgeo,	indulsi,	indultum,	indulgēre,	*to indulge.*
Torqueo,	torsi,	tortum,	torquēre,	*to twist.*
Ardeo,	arsi,	arsum,	ardēre,	*to blaze.*
Haereo,	haesi,	haesum,	haerēre,	*to stick.*
Jŭbeo,	jussi,	jussum,	jŭbēre,	*to order.*
Măneo,	mansi,	mansum,	mănēre,	*to remain.*
Mulceo,	mulsi,	mulsum,	mulcēre,	*to stroke.*
Mulgeo,	mulsi,	mulctum,	mulgēre,	*to milk.*
Rīdeo,	rīsi,	rīsum,	rīdēre,	*to laugh.*
Suādeo,	suāsi,	suāsum,	suādēre,	*to advise.*
Tergeo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergēre,	*to wipe.*
Algeo,	alsi,	———	algēre,	*to be cold.*
Frigeo,	frixi,	———	frĭgēre,	*to be cold.*
Fulgeo,	fulsi,	———	fulgēre,	*to shine.*
Lūceo,	luxi,	———	lūcēre,	*to be light.*
Lūgeo,	luxi,	———	lūgēre,	*to grieve.*
Turgeo,	(tursi),	———	turgēre,	*to swell.*
Urgeo,	ursi,	———	urgēre,	*to press.*

6. *The Neuter-Passives.*

Audeo,	ausus sum,	———	audēre,	*to dare.*
Gaudeo,	gāvīsus sum,	———	gaudēre,	*to rejoice.*
Sŏleo,	sŏlĭtus sum,	———	sŏlēre,	*to be accustomed.*

III. The Third Conjugation.

Verbs of the Third Conjugation are best classified according to the final consonants of the Stems.

1. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Labials* B, P.

(*a*). *Present-Perfect*—**si.** *Supine*—**tum.**

Note.—*B* becomes *p* before *s* and *t*.

Carpo,	carpsi,	carptum,	carpĕre,	*to pluck.*
Glūbo,	glupsi,	gluptum,	glūbĕre,	*to peel.*
Nūbo,	nupsi,	nuptum,	nūbĕre,	*to marry.*
Rēpo,	repsi,	reptum,	rēpĕre,	*to creep.*
Scalpo,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	scalpĕre,	*to scratch.*
Scrībo,	scripsi,	scriptum,	scrībĕre,	*to write.*
Serpo,	serpsi,	serptum,	serpĕre,	*to crawl.*

(*b*). *Present-Perfect*—**ui.** *Supine*—**tum** *or* **ĭtum.**

Cumbo, Incumbo,	incŭbui,	incŭbĭtum,	incumbĕre,	*to lie upon.*
Strĕpo,	strĕpui,	strĕpĭtum,	strĕpĕre,	*to make a noise.*

(*c*). *Present-Perfect*—**i.** *Supine*—**tum,** *or* wanting.

Rumpo,	rūpi,	ruptum,	rumpĕre,	*to burst.*
Bĭbo,	bĭbi,	———	bĭbĕre,	*to drink.*
Lambo,	lambi,	———	lambĕre,	*to lick.*
Scăbo,	scābi,	———	scăbĕre,	*to scratch.*

2. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Gutturals* C, G, H, Q, X.

(*a*). *Present-Perfect*—**si.** *Supine*—**tum.**

Note.—*Cs* and *gs* become *x*. *G* becomes *c* before *t*.

Dīco,	dixi,	dictum,	dīcĕre,	*to say.*
Dūco,	duxi,	ductum,	dūcĕre,	*to lead.*
Cŏquo,	coxi,	coctum,	cŏquĕre,	*to cook.*
Cingo,	cinxi,	cinctum,	cingĕre,	*to surround.*
(Flīgo)	not used	———	———	*to strike.* [*ground.*
Afflīgo,	afflixi,	afflictum,	afflīgĕre,	*to strike to the*
Frīgo,	frixi,	frictum, frixum,	frīgĕre,	*to parch, to fry.*
Jungo,	junxi,	junctum,	jungĕre,	*to join.*
Lingo,	linxi,	linctum,	lingĕre,	*to lick.*
(Mungo, not used.)				
Ēmungo,	ēmunxi,	ēmunctum,	ēmungĕre,	*to blow the nose.*

Plango,	planxi,	planctum,	plangĕre,	*to beat.*
Rĕgo,	rexi,	rectum,	rĕgĕre,	*to direct, rule.*
Sūgo,	suxi,	suctum,	sūgĕre,	*to suck.*
Tĕgo,	texi,	tectum,	tĕgĕre,	*to cover.*
Tingo, / Tinguo,	tinxi,	tinctum,	tingĕre. / tinguĕre.	*to dip.*
Ungo, / Unguo,	unxi,	unctum,	ungĕre, / unguĕre,	*to anoint.*
(Stinguo, not used.)				
Exstinguo,	exstinxi,	exstinctum,	exstinguĕre,	*to extinguish.*
Trăho,	traxi,	tractum,	trăhĕre,	*to drag.*
Vĕho,	vexi,	vectum,	vĕhĕre,	*to carry, to draw.*
Ango,	anxi,	———	angĕre,	*to vex.*
Ningit,	ninxit,	———	ningĕre,	*to snow.*
Fingo,	finxi,	fictum,	fingĕre,	*to form, to invent.*
Pingo,	pinxi,	pictum,	pingĕre,	*to paint.*
Stringo,	strinxi,	strictum,	stringĕre,	*to grasp.*

(*b*). *Present-Perfect*—**si**. *Supine*—**sum** *and* **xum**.

Mergo,	mersi,	mersum,	mergĕre,	*to sink.*
Spargo,	sparsi,	sparsum,	spargĕre,	*to scatter.*
Tergo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergĕre,	*to wipe.*
Figo,	fixi,	fixum,	fīgĕre,	*to fix.*
Flecto,	flexi,	flexum,	flectĕre,	*to bend.*
Necto,	nexi,	nexum,	nectĕre,	*to bind.*
Pecto,	pexi,	pexum,	pectĕre,	*to comb.*
Plecto,	plexi,	plexum,	plectĕre,	*to plait.*

(*c*). *Present-Perfect*—**i** (*with Reduplication*). *Supine*—**sum** *and* **tum**.

Pango,	pĕpĭgi,	pactum,	pangĕre,	*to fix.*
Parco,	pĕperci,	parsum,	parcĕre,	*to spare.*
Pungo,	pŭpŭgi,	punctum,	pungĕre,	*to prick.*
Tango,	tĕtĭgi,	tactum,	tangĕre,	*to touch.*
Disco,	dĭdĭci,	———	discĕre,	*to learn.*
Posco,	pŏposci,	———	poscĕre,	*to demand.*

(*d*). *Present-Perfect*—**i** (*with vowel of Stem lengthened*).

Ăgo,	ēgi,	actum,	ăgĕre,	*to do.*
Frango,	frēgi,	fractum,	frangĕre,	*to break.*
Īco,	īci,	ictum,	īcĕre,	*to strike* (a treaty).
Lĕgo,	lēgi,	lectum,	lĕgĕre,	*to read.*
Linquo,	līqui,	(lictum),	linquĕre,	*to leave.*
Vinco,	vīci,	victum,	vincĕre,	*to conquer.*

(*e*). *Present-Perfect*—**ui**. *Supine*—**tum**.

Texo,	texui,	textum,	texĕre,	*to weave.*

(*f*). *Guttural Stem disguised.*

Fluo,	fluxi,	fluctum,	fluĕre,	*to flow.*
Struo,	struxi,	structum,	struĕre,	*to pile up.*
Vīvo,	vixi,	victum,	vīvĕre,	*to live.*

3. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Dentals* D, T.

(*a*). *Present-Perfect*—si. *Supine*—tum.

NOTE.—*D* and *t* are generally dropped before *s*, but are sometimes changed into *s*.

Claudo,	clausi,	clausum,	claudĕre,	*to shut.*
Dīvĭdo,	dīvīsi,	dīvīsum,	dīvĭdĕre,	*to divide.*
Laedo,	laesi,	laesum,	laedĕre,	*to strike, to injure.*
Lūdo,	lūsi,	lūsum,	lūdĕre,	*to play.*
Plaudo,	plausi,	plausum,	plaudĕre,	*to clap the hands.*
Rādo,	rāsi,	rāsum,	rādĕre,	*to scrape.*
Rōdo,	rōsi,	rōsum,	rōdĕre,	*to gnaw.*
Trūdo,	trūsi,	trūsum,	trūdĕre,	*to thrust.*
Vādo,	———	———	vādĕre,	*to go.*
Invādo,	invāsi,	invāsum,	invādĕre,	*to go against.*
Cēdo,	cessi,	cessum,	cēdĕre,	*to yield.*
Mitto,	mīsi,	missum,	mittĕre,	*to send.*

(*b*). *Present-Perfect with Reduplication.*

Cădo,	cĕcĭdi,	cāsum,	cădĕre,	*to fall.*
Caedo,	cĕcīdi,	caesum,	caedĕre,	*to strike, to cut.*
Pendo,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	pendĕre,	*to hang, to weigh.*
Tendo,	tĕtendi,	tensum, tentum,	tendĕre,	*to stretch.*
Tundo,	tŭtŭdi,	tunsum, tūsum,	tundĕre,	*to beat.*
Do in compos.				*to put.*
Abdo,	abdĭdi,	abdĭtum,	abdĕre,	*to put away, to hide.*
Addo,	addĭdi,	addĭtum,	addĕre,	*to put to, to add.*
Condo,	condĭdi,	condĭtum,	condĕre,	*to put together, to build, conceal.*
Dēdo,	dēdĭdi,	dēdĭtum,	dēdĕre,	*to put down, to surrender.*
Edo,	ēdĭdi,	ēdĭtum,	ēdĕre,	*to put forth, to publish.*
Indo,	indĭdĭ,	indĭtum,	indĕre,	*to put on.*
Perdo,	perdĭdi,	perdĭtum,	perdĕre,	*to ruin, to lose.*
Prōdo,	prōdĭdi,	prōdĭtum,	prōdĕre,	*to betray.*
Reddo,	reddĭdi,	reddĭtum,	redděre,	*to put back, to restore.*
Subdo,	subdĭdi,	subdĭtum,	subdĕre,	*to put under, to substitute.*
Trādo,	trādĭdi,	trādĭtum,	trādĕre,	*to put across, to deliver.*
Crēdo,	crēdĭdi,	crēdĭtum,	crēdĕre,	*to believe.*
Vendo,	vendĭdi,	vendĭtum,	vendĕre,	*to sell.*
Sisto,	stĭti,	stătum,	sistĕre,	*to cause to stand.*

(*c*). *Present-Perfect*—i. *Supine*—sum.

Accendo,	accendi,	accensum,	accendĕre,	*to set on fire.*
Cūdo,	cūdi,	cūsum,	cūdĕre,	*to hammer.*
Ēdo,	ēdi,	ēsum,	ēdĕre,	*to eat.*

(Fendo, not used,				*to strike.*)
Dēfendo,	dēfendi,	dēfensum,	dēfendĕre,	*to ward off, to defend.*
Offendo,	offendi,	offensum,	offendĕre,	*to strike against, to assault.*
Fundo,	fūdi,	fūsum,	fundĕre,	*to pour.*
Incendo,	incendi,	incensum,	incendĕre,	*to burn.*
Mando,	mandi (rare),	mansum,	mandĕre,	*to chew.*
Pando,	pandi,	pansum *or* passum,	pandĕre,	*to spread.*
Prĕhendo,	prĕhendi,	prĕhensum,	prĕhendĕre,	*to grasp.*
Scando,	scandi,	scansum,	scandĕre,	*to climb.*
Strīdo, Strīdeo,	strīdi,	———	strīdĕre,	*to creak.*
Verto,	verti,	versum,	vertĕre,	*to turn.*
Findo,	fĭdi,	fissum,	findĕre,	*to cleave.*
Scindo,	scĭdi,	scissum,	scindĕre,	*to tear.*
Frendo, Frendeo,	——— ———	fressum, frēsum,	frendĕre,	*to gnash the teeth.*

(*d*). *Other Forms.*

Mĕto,	messui,	messum,	mĕtĕre,	*to mow.*
Pĕto,	pĕtīvi *or* pĕtĭi,	pĕtītum,	pĕtĕre,	*to seek.*
Sīdo,	sēdi (rarely sīdi),	———	sīdĕre,	*to sit down.*
Sterto,	stertui,	———	stertĕre,	*to snore.*
Fīdo,	fīsus sum,	———	fīdĕre,	*to trust.*

4. *Verbs the Stems of which end in* L, M, N.

(*a*). *Present-Perfect*—ui. *Supine*—ĭtum *or* tum.

Ălo,	ălui,	ălĭtum *or* altum,	ălĕre,	*to nourish.*
Cŏlo,	cŏlui,	cultum,	cŏlĕre,	*to till.*
Consŭlo,	consŭlui,	consultum,	consŭlĕre,	*to consult.*
Mŏlo,	mŏlui,	mŏlĭtum,	mŏlĕre,	*to grind.*
Occŭlo,	occŭlui,	occultum,	occŭlĕre,	*to conceal.*
Vŏlo,	vŏlui,	———	velle,	*to wish.*
Frĕmo,	frĕmui,	frĕmĭtum,	frĕmĕre,	*to roar.*
Gĕmo,	gĕmui,	gemĭtum,	gĕmĕre,	*to groan.*
Trĕmo,	trĕmui,	———	trĕmĕre,	*to tremble.*
Vŏmo,	vŏmui,	vŏmĭtum,	vŏmĕre,	*to vomit.*
Gigno,	gĕnui,	gĕnĭtum,	gignĕre,	*to produce.*

(*b*). *Present-Perfect with Reduplication.*

Fallo,	fĕfelli,	falsum,	fallĕre,	*to deceive.*
Pello,	pĕpŭli,	pulsum,	pellĕre,	*to drive.*
Cano,	cĕcĭni,	cantum,	cănĕre,	*to sing.*

(*c*). *Present-Perfect*—**si**. *Supine*—**tum**.

Cŏmo,	compsi,	comptum,	cŏmĕre,	*to adorn.*
Dēmo,	dempsi,	demptum,	dēmĕre,	*to take away.*
Prōmo,	prompsi,	promptum,	prōmĕre,	*to take forth.*
Sūmo,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	sūmĕre,	*to take up.*
Temno,	tempsi,	temptum,	temnĕre,	*to despise.*

(*d*). *Other Forms.*

Percello,	percŭli,	perculsum,	percellĕre,	*to strike down.*
Psallo,	psalli,	———	psallĕre,	*to play on a stringed instrument.*
Vello,	velli,	vulsum,	vellĕre,	*to pluck.*
Tollo,	sustŭli,	sublātum,	tollĕre,	*to raise up.*
Ĕmo,	ēmi,	emptum,	ĕmĕre,	*to take or buy.*
Prĕmo,	pressi,	pressum,	prĕmĕre,	*to press.*
Lĭno,	lēvi,	lĭtum,	lĭnĕre,	*to smear.*
Sĭno,	sīvi,	sĭtum,	sĭnĕre,	*to permit.*

5. *Verbs the Stems of which end in* **R.**

Cerno,	crēvi,	crētum,	cernĕre,	*to sift, to divide.*
Sperno,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	spernĕre,	*to despise.*
Sterno,	strāvi,	strātum,	sternĕre,	*to strew.*
Gĕro,	gessi,	gestum,	gĕrĕre,	*to carry.*
Ūro,	ussi,	ustum,	ūrĕre,	*to burn.*
Curro,	cŭcurri,	cursum,	currĕre,	*to run.*
Fĕro,	tŭli,	lātum,	ferre,	*to bear, carry.*
Quaero,	quaesīvi,	quaesītum,	quaerĕre,	*to seek.*
Sĕro,	sĕrui,	sertum,	sĕrĕre,	*to put in rows, to plait.*
Sĕro,	sēvi,	sătum,	sĕrĕre,	*to sow.*
Tĕro,	trīvi,	trītum,	tĕrĕre,	*to rub.*
Verro,	verri,	versum,	verrĕre,	*to sweep.*

6. *Verbs the Stems of which end in* **S, X.**

Depso,	depsui,	depstum,	depsĕre,	*to knead.*
Pinso,	pinsui, pinsi,	pinsĭtum, pinsum,	pinsĕre,	*to pound.*
Pīso,	———	pistum,	pīsĕre,	*to pound.*
Vīso,	vīsi,	———	vīsĕre,	*to visit.*
Pōno,	pŏsui,	pŏsĭtum,	pōnĕre,	*to place.*
Arcesso,	arcessīvi,	arcessītum,	arcessĕre,	*to send for.*
Căpesso,	căpessīvi,	căpessītum,	căpessĕre,	*to take in hand.*
Făcesso,	făcessi,	făcessītum,	făcessĕre,	*to make, to cause.*
Lăcesso,	lăcessīvi,	lăcessītum,	lăcessĕre,	*to provoke.*

7. *Verbs the Stems of which end in* **U, V.**

Present-Perfect—**i**. *Supine*—**tum**.

Ăcuo,	ăcui,	ăcūtum,	ăcuĕre,	*to sharpen.*
Arguo,	argui,	argūtum,	arguĕre,	*to prove.*

Imbuo,	imbui,	imbūtum,	imbuĕre,	*to soak.*
Induo,	indui,	indūtum,	induĕre,	*to put on.*
Exuo,	exui,	exūtum,	exuĕre,	*to put off.*
Mĭnuo,	mĭnui,	mĭnūtum,	mĭnuĕre,	*to lessen.*
Rŭo,	rui,	rūtum,	ruĕre,	*to rush.*
Spuo,	spui,	spūtum,	spuĕre,	*to spit.*
Stătuo,	stătui,	stătūtum,	stătuĕre,	*to set up.*
Suo,	sui,	sūtum,	suĕre,	*to sew.*
Trĭbuo,	trĭbui,	trĭbūtum,	trĭbuĕre,	*to distribute.*
Lăvo,	lāvi,	lautum, lōtum,	lăvĕre,	*to wash.*
Solvo,	solvi,	sōlūtum,	solvĕre,	*to loosen.*
Volvo,	volvi,	vōlūtum,	volvĕre,	*to roll.*
Congruo,	congrui,	———	congruĕre,	*to agree.*
Luo,	lui,	———	luĕre,	*to atone.*
(Nuo,				*to nod.*)
Abnuo,	abnui,	———	abnuĕre,	*to refuse.*
Annuo,	annui,	———	annuĕre,	*to assent.*
Mĕtuo,	mĕtui,	———	mĕtuĕre,	*to fear.*
Pluit,	pluit *or* plūvit,	———	pluĕre,	*to rain.*
Sternuo,	sternui,	———	sternuĕre,	*to sneeze.*

8. *Verbs the Present Tense of which ends in* SCO.

Verbs ending in *sco* are *Inceptive*, that is, denote the beginning of an action.

Ăbŏlesco,	ăbŏlēvi,	ăbŏlĭtum,	ăbŏlescĕre,	*to grow out of use.*
Adŏlesco,	ădŏlēvi,	ădultum,	ădŏlescĕre,	*to grow up.*
Exŏlesco,	exŏlēvi,	exŏlĭtum,	exŏlescĕre,	*to grow old.*
Cŏălesco, (ălo)	cŏălui,	cŏălĭtum,	cŏălescĕre,	*to grow together.*
Concŭpisco, (cŭpio)	concŭpīvi,	concŭpītum,	concŭpiscĕre,	*to desire.*
Convălesco, (văleo)	convălui,	convălĭtum,	convălescĕre,	*to grow strong.*
Exardesco, (ardeo)	exarsi,	exarsum,	exardescĕre,	*to take fire.*
Invĕtĕrasco, (invĕtĕro)	invĕtĕrāvi,	invĕtĕrātum,	invĕtĕrascĕre,	*to grow old.*
Consĕnesco, (sĕnex)	consĕnui,	———	consĕnescĕre,	*to grow old.*
Ingrăvesco, (grăvis)	———	———	ingrăvescĕre,	*to grow heavy.*
Jŭvĕnesco, (jŭvĕnis)	———	———	jŭvĕnescĕre,	*to grow young.*
Mātūresco, (mātūrus)	mātūrui,	———	mātūrescĕre,	*to grow ripe.*
Obmūtesco, (mūtus)	obmūtui,	———	obmūtescĕre,	*to grow dumb.*

Additional Rules of Quantity

(and exceptions to some previous rules).

I. A vowel before another vowel is short.

Exceptions.

1. The vowel *e* before final *i* in the Genitive and Dative of the 5th Declension is long; as, *diēi*.

But in *fidei* and *rei* the *e* is common; in *spei* it is short.

2. The *i* in Genitives in *ius* is to be pronounced long in prose; is common in poetry, except *alīus*, and *altertus*.

3. The *i* in *fio* and its tenses is long, except when followed by *er*.

4. The *a* and *e* are long in proper names in *āius* and *ēius*.

Increments.

II. In the singular Increment of Nouns and Adjectives *a* and *o* are long; as, *aetas, ātis; soror, ōris.*

Exceptions.

1. All words in *bs* and *ps* increasing in *a* or *o* have the increase short; as, *trabs, ăbis; ops, ŏpis.*

2. Names of persons ending in *al* and *ar* increase short; as, *Hannibal, ălis; Caesar, ăris.*

3. The Nouns *sal, jubar, lar, par, anas, mas, vas* (*vădis*), and *fax* also increase short.

Note.—Words adopted directly from the Greek, like *hepar*, etc., retain the Greek quantity in the increment.

4. *O* is short in the Increment of Neuter Nouns; as, *corpus, ŏris;* and in *arbor, memor, bos, lepus, compos,* and *impos.*

III. In the singular Increment of Nouns, etc., *e, i,* and *u* are short; as, *hiems, ĕmis; lapis, ĭdis; murmur, ŭris.*

Exceptions.

1. In *e*. The following Nouns increase in *e* long: *halec, heres, locuples, mansues, merces, quies, plebs, lex, rex, vervex.*

(Many Greek Nouns, as *tapes, etis*, etc., have the *e* long, but they follow the Greek.)

2. In *i*. a. The Nouns *Dis, glis, lis, Quiris, Samnis,* and *vibex* increase in *i* long.

b. All Adjectives in *ix* increase in *i* long, and all Nouns in *ix*, except monosyllables, as *nix, pix*, etc., and *calix, filix, larix, fornix, salix,* and *varix.*

3. In *u*. a. Words which make *udis, uris, utis,* in the Genitive from Nominatives in *us* have *u* long in the increase.

b. *Fur, lux* (*frux*). and *Pollux* also increase long.

IV. The inseparable prepositions *di* and *se* are long; *re* is short.

NOTE.—*Rĕfert* (where the *re* is from *res*) has the *e* long.

The Rules for Penults and Antepenults, and exceptions to other rules, will not be given here; the quantity must be learned from the Dictionary, and the rules reserved for a more advanced Grammar.

WORDS HAVING A DIFFERENT SIGNIFICATION IN THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Aedes,	*a temple.*	**Aedes,**	*a house.*
Aqua,	*water.*	**Aquae,**	*medicinal springs.*
Auxilium,	*aid.*	**Auxilia,**	*auxiliary forces.*
Bonum,	*a good.*	**Bona,**	*property, goods.*
Carcer,	*a prison.*	**Carcĕres,**	*the barriers of a race-course.*
Cera,	*wax.*	**Cerae,**	*a (waxen) tablet.*
Comitium,	*the Comitium (a part of the Roman Forum).*	**Comitia,**	*an assembly for election.*
Copia,	*plenty.*	**Copiae,**	*forces.*
Epulum,	*a sacred feast.*	**Epulae,**	*dishes, a banquet.*
Făcultas,	*power of doing, facility.*	**Făcultates,**	*property.*
Finis,	*end.*	**Fines,**	*boundaries, territories.*
Fortuna,	*fortune.*	**Fortunae,**	*the gifts of fortune.*
Gratia,	*favor.*	**Gratiae,**	*thanks.*
Hortus,	*a garden.*	**Horti,**	*pleasure-grounds.*
Littĕra,	*a letter (of the Alphabet).*	**Litterae,**	*an epistle, literature.*
Ludus,	*play.*	**Ludi,**	*public games.*
Lustrum,	*a period of five years.*	**Lustra,**	*haunts of wild beasts.*
Marmor,	*marble.*	**Marmŏra,**	*marbles, statues.*
Mos,	*a custom.*	**Mōres,**	*manners, character.*
Nātālis,	*a birthday.*	**Nātales,**	*lineage.*
Opera,	*work.*	**Operae,**	*workmen.*
(Ops),	*help.*	**Opes,**	*resources, power.*
Pars,	*a part.*	**Partes,**	*the part (of an actor), a side or party.*
Rostrum,	*a beak, bill.*	**Rostra,**	*the rostra, raised stage for orators in the Roman Forum (adorned with the beaks of captured ships).*
Sal,	*salt.*	**Sălēs,**	*witticisms.*
Tempus,	*time.*	**Tempŏra,**	*the temples of the head.*

PRESENT-PERFECTS AND SUPINES.

I. The First Conjugation.

The Present-Perfects and the Supines of the First Conjugation end regularly in **āvi, ātum**: as, ămo, ămāvi, ămātum, ămāre, *to love*. The following are exceptions:

Crĕpo,	crĕpui,	crĕpĭtum,	crĕpāre,	*to creak.*
Cŭbo,	cŭbui,	cŭbĭtum,	cŭbāre,	*to lie.*
Dŏmo,	dŏmui,	dŏmĭtum,	dŏmāre,	*to tame.*
Sŏno,	sŏnui,	sŏnĭtum,	sŏnāre,	*to sound.*
Vĕto,	vĕtui,	vĕtĭtum,	vĕtāre,	*to forbid.*
Tŏno,	tŏnui,	———	tŏnāre,	*to thunder.*
Mĭco,	mĭcui,	———	mĭcāre,	*to glitter.*
Plĭco,	plĭcui,	plĭcĭtum, plĭcātum,	plĭcāre,	*to fold.*
Frĭco,	frĭcui,	frictum,	frĭcāre,	*to rub.*
Sĕco,	sĕcui,	sectum,	sĕcāre,	*to cut.*
Jŭvo,	jūvi,	jūtum,	jŭvāre,	*to assist.*
Lăvo,	lāvi,	lăvātum, lautum,	lăvāre,	*to wash.*
Do,	dĕdi,	dătum,	dăre,	*to give.*
Sto,	stĕti,	statum,	stāre,	*to stand.*

II. The Second Conjugation.

The Present-Perfects and Supines of the Second Conjugation end regularly in **ŭi** and **ĭtum**; as, mŏneo, mŏnui, mŏnĭtum, mŏnēre, *to advise*. The following are exceptions:

1. *Present-Perfect*—**ui**. *Supine*—**tum**.

Dŏceo,	dŏcui,	doctum,	dŏcēre,	*to teach.*
Tĕneo,	tĕnui,	tentum,	tĕnēre,	*to hold.*
Misceo,	miscui,	mixtum, mistum,	miscēre,	*to mix.*
Torreo,	torrui,	tostum,	torrēre,	*to roast.*
Sorbeo,	sorbui, sorpsi,	———	sorbēre,	*to suck up.*
Censeo,	censui,	censum,	censēre,	*to assess, think.*

2. *Present-Perfect*—**ēvi**. *Supine*—**ētum**.

Dēleo,	dēlēvi,	dēlētum,	dēlēre,	*to blot out, destroy.*
Fleo,	flēvi,	flētum,	flēre,	*to weep.*
Neo,	nēvi,	nētum,	nēre,	*to spin.*
Pleo only in composition.				
Compleo,	complēvi,	complētum,	complēre,	*to fill up.*

Abŏleo,	ăbŏlēvi,	ăbŏlĭtum,	ăbŏlēre,	*to abolish.*
Adŏleo,	adolēvi,	adultum,	adolēre,	*to increase.*

3. *Present-Perfect*—**i (di).** *Supine*—**sum.**

Prandeo,	prandi,	pransum,	prandēre,	*to breakfast.*
Sĕdeo,	sēdi,	sessum,	sĕdēre,	*to sit.*
Vĭdeo,	vīdi,	vīsum,	vĭdēre,	*to see.*
Strīdeo.	strīdi,	———	strīdēre,	*to creak.*

With Reduplication in the Perfect Tenses.

Mordeo,	mŏmordi,	morsum,	mordēre,	*to bite.*
Pendeo,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	pendēre,	*to hang.*
Spondeo,	spŏpondi,	sponsum,	spondēre,	*to promise.*
Tondeo,	tŏtondi,	tonsum,	tondēre,	*to shear.*

4. *Present-Perfect*—**i (vi).** *Supine*—**sum.**

Căveo,	cāvi,	cautum,	căvēre,	*to guard one s self.*
Făveo,	fāvi,	fautum,	făvēre,	*to favor.*
Fŏveo,	fōvi,	fōtum,	fŏvēre,	*to cherish.*
Mŏveo,	mōvi,	mōtum,	mŏvēre,	*to move.*
Vŏveo,	vōvi,	vōtum,	vŏvēre,	*to vow.*

Without Supine.

Păveo,	pāvi,	———	păvēre,	*to fear.*
Ferveo,	fervi, / ferbui,	———	fervēre,	*to boil.*
Connīveo,	connīvi, / conn̆ixi,	———	connīvēre,	*to wink.*

5. *Present-Perfect*—**si.** *Supine*—**tum** *and* **sum.**

Augeo,	auxi,	auctum,	augēre,	*to increase.*
Indulgeo,	indulsi,	indultum,	indulgēre,	*to indulge.*
Torqueo,	torsi,	tortum,	torquēre,	*to twist.*
Ardeo,	arsi,	arsum,	ardēre,	*to blaze.*
Haereo,	haesi,	haesum,	haerēre,	*to stick.*
Jŭbeo,	jussi,	jussum,	jŭbēre,	*to order.*
Măneo,	mansi,	mansum,	mănēre,	*to remain.*
Mulceo,	mulsi,	mulsum,	mulcēre,	*to stroke.*
Mulgeo,	mulsi,	mulctum,	mulgēre,	*to milk.*
Rīdeo,	rīsi,	rīsum,	rīdēre,	*to laugh.*
Suādeo,	suāsi,	suāsum,	suādēre,	*to advise.*
Tergeo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergēre,	*to wipe.*
Algeo,	alsi,	———	algēre,	*to be cold.*
Frīgeo,	frixi,	———	frīgēre,	
Fulgeo,	fulsi,	———	fulgēre,	*to shine.*
Lūceo,	luxi,	———	lūcēre,	*to be light.*
Lūgeo,	luxi,	———	lūgēre,	*to grieve.*
Turgeo,	(tursi),	———	turgēre,	*to swell.*
Urgeo,	ursi,	———	urgēre,	*to press.*

6. *The Neuter-Passives.*

Audeo,	ausus sum,	———	audēre,	*to dare.*
Gaudeo,	gāvīsus sum,	———	gaudēre,	*to rejoice.*
Sŏleo,	sŏlĭtus sum,	———	sŏlēre,	*to be accustomed.*

III. The Third Conjugation.

Verbs of the Third Conjugation are best classified according to the final consonants of the Stems.

1. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Labials* B, P.

(*a*). *Present-Perfect*—si. *Supine*—tum.

Note.—*B* becomes *p* before *s* and *t*.

Carpo,	carpsi,	carptum,	carpĕre,	*to pluck.*
Glūbo,	glupsi,	gluptum,	glūbĕre,	*to peel.*
Nūbo,	nupsi,	nuptum,	nūbĕre,	*to marry.*
Rēpo,	repsi,	reptum,	rēpĕre,	*to creep.*
Scalpo,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	scalpĕre,	*to scratch.*
Scrībo,	scripsi,	scriptum,	scrībĕre,	*to write.*
Serpo,	serpsi,	serptum,	serpĕre,	*to crawl.*

(*b*). *Present-Perfect*—ui. *Supine*—tum *or* ĭtum.

Cumbo, Incumbo,	incŭbui,	incŭbĭtum,	incumbĕre,	*to lie upon.*
Strĕpo,	strĕpui,	strĕpĭtum,	strĕpĕre,	*to make a noise.*

(*c*). *Present-Perfect*—i. *Supine*—tum, *or* wanting.

Rumpo,	rūpi,	ruptum,	rumpĕre,	*to burst.*
Bĭbo,	bĭbi,	———	bĭbĕre,	*to drink.*
Lambo,	lambi,	———	lambĕre,	*to lick.*
Scăbo,	scābi,	———	scăbĕre,	*to scratch.*

2. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Gutturals* C, G, H, Q, X.

(*a*). *Present-Perfect*—si. *Supine*—tum.

Note.—*Cs* and *gs* become *x*. *G* becomes *c* before *t*.

Dīco,	dixi,	dictum,	dīcĕre,	*to say.*
Dūco,	duxi,	ductum,	dūcĕre,	*to lead.*
Cŏquo,	coxi,	coctum,	cŏquĕre,	*to cook.*
Cingo,	cinxi,	cinctum,	cingĕre,	*to surround.*
(Flīgo) not used		———	———	*to strike.* [*ground.*
Affligo,	afflixi,	afflictum,	afflīgĕre,	*to strike to the*
Frīgo,	frixi,	frictum, frixum,	frīgĕre,	*to parch, to fry.*
Jungo,	junxi,	junctum,	jungĕre,	*to join.*
Lingo,	linxi,	linctum,	lingĕre,	*to lick.*
(Mungo, not used.)				
Ēmungo,	ēmunxi,	ēmunctum,	ēmungĕre,	*to blow the nose.*

Plango,	planxi,	planctum,	plangĕre,	*to beat.*
Rĕgo,	rexi,	rectum,	rĕgĕre,	*to direct, rule.*
Sūgo,	suxi,	suctum,	sūgĕrĕ,	*to suck.*
Tĕgo,	texi,	tectum,	tĕgĕre,	*to cover.*
Tingo, / Tinguo,	tinxi,	tinctum,	tingĕre, / tinguĕre,	*to dip.*
Ungo, / Unguo,	unxi,	unctum,	ungĕre, / unguĕre,	*to anoint.*
(Stinguo, not used.)				
Exstinguo,	exstinxi,	exstinctum,	exstinguĕre,	*to extinguish.*
Trăho,	traxi,	tractum,	trăhĕre,	*to drag.*
Vĕho,	vexi,	vectum,	vĕhĕre,	*to carry, to draw.*
Ango,	anxi,	———	angĕre,	*to vex.*
Ningit,	ninxit,	———	ningĕre,	*to snow.*
Fingo,	finxi,	fictum,	fingĕre,	*to form, to invent.*
Pingo,	pinxi,	pictum,	pingĕre,	*to paint.*
Stringo,	strinxi,	strictum,	stringĕre,	*to grasp.*

(*b*). *Present-Perfect*—**si**. *Supine*—**sum** *and* **xum**.

Mergo,	mersi,	mersum,	mergĕre,	*to sink.*
Spargo,	sparsi,	sparsum,	spargĕre,	*to scatter.*
Tergo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergĕre,	*to wipe.*
Fīgo,	fixi,	fixum,	fīgĕre,	*to fix.*
Flecto,	flexi,	flexum,	flectĕre,	*to bend.*
Necto,	nexi,	nexum,	nectĕre,	*to bind.*
Pecto,	pexi,	pexum,	pectĕre,	*to comb.*
Plecto,	plexi,	plexum,	plectĕre,	*to plait.*

(*c*). *Present-Perfect*—**i** (*with Reduplication*). *Supine*—**sum** *and* **tum**.

Pango,	pĕpĭgi,	pactum,	pangĕre,	*to fix.*
Parco,	pĕperci,	parsum,	parcĕre,	*to spare.*
Pungo,	pŭpŭgi,	punctum,	pungĕre,	*to prick.*
Tango,	tĕtĭgi,	tactum,	tangĕre,	*to touch.*
Disco,	dĭdĭci,	———	discĕre,	*to learn.*
Posco,	pŏposci,	———	poscĕre,	*to demand.*

(*d*). *Present-Perfect*—**i** (*with vowel of Stem lengthened*).

Ăgo,	ēgi,	actum,	ăgĕre,	*to do.*
Frango,	frēgi,	fractum,	frangĕre,	*to break.*
Īco,	īci,	ictum,	īcĕre,	*to strike* (a treaty).
Lĕgo,	lēgi,	lectum,	lĕgĕre,	*to read.*
Linquo,	līqui,	(lictum),	linquĕre,	*to leave.*
Vinco,	vīci,	victum,	vincĕre,	*to conquer.*

(*e*). *Present-Perfect*—**ui**. *Supine*—**tum**.

Texo,	texui,	textum,	texĕre,	*to weave.*

(*f*). *Guttural Stem disguised.*

Fluo,	fluxi,	fluctum,	fluĕre,	*to flow.*
Struo,	struxi,	structum,	struĕre,	*to pile up.*
Vīvo,	vixi,	victum,	vīvĕre,	*to live.*

3. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Dentals* D, T.

(*a*). *Present-Perfect*—**si.** *Supine*—**tum.**

NOTE.—*D* and *t* are generally dropped before *s*, but are sometimes changed into *s*.

Claudo,	clausi,	clausum,	claudĕre,	*to shut.*
Dīvĭdo,	dīvīsi,	dīvīsum,	dīvĭdĕre,	*to divide.*
Laedo,	laesi,	laesum,	laedĕre,	*to strike, to injure.*
Lūdo,	lūsi,	lūsum,	lūdĕre,	*to play.*
Plaudo,	plausi,	plausum,	plaudĕre,	*to clap the hands.*
Rādo,	rāsi,	rāsum,	rādĕre,	*to scrape.*
Rōdo,	rōsi,	rōsum,	rōdĕre,	*to gnaw.*
Trūdo,	trūsi,	trūsum,	trūdĕre,	*to thrust.*
Vādo,	———	———	vādĕre,	*to go.*
Invādo,	invāsi,	invāsum,	invādĕre,	*to go against.*
Cēdo,	cessi,	cessum,	cēdĕre,	*to yield.*
Mitto,	mīsi,	missum,	mittĕre,	*to send.*

(*b*). *Present-Perfect with Reduplication.*

Cădo,	cĕcĭdi,	cāsum,	cădĕre,	*to fall.*
Caedo,	cĕcīdi,	caesum,	caedĕre,	*to strike, to cut.*
Pendo,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	pendĕre,	*to hang, to weigh.*
Tendo,	tĕtendi,	tensum, tentum,	tendĕre,	*to stretch.*
Tundo,	tŭtŭdi,	tunsum, tūsum,	tundĕre,	*to beat.*
Do in compos.				*to put.*
Abdo,	abdĭdi,	abdĭtum,	abdĕre,	*to put away, to hide.*
Addo,	addĭdi,	addĭtum,	addĕre,	*to put to, to add.*
Condo,	condĭdi,	condĭtum,	conděre,	*to put together, to build, conceal.*
Dēdo,	dēdĭdi,	dēdĭtum,	dēdĕre,	*to put down, to surrender.*
Edo,	ēdĭdi,	ēdĭtum,	ēdĕre,	*to put forth, to publish.*
Indo,	indĭdi,	indĭtum,	indĕre,	*to put on.*
Perdo,	perdĭdi,	perdĭtum,	perdĕre,	*to ruin, to lose.*
Prōdo,	prōdĭdi,	prōdĭtum,	prōdĕre,	*to betray.*
Reddo,	reddĭdi,	reddĭtum,	redděre,	*to put back, to restore.*
Subdo,	subdĭdi,	subdĭtum,	subdĕre,	*to put under, to substitute.*
Trādo,	trādĭdi,	trādĭtum,	trādĕre,	*to put across, to deliver.*
Crēdo,	crēdĭdi,	crēdĭtum,	crēdĕre,	*to believe.*
Vendo,	vendĭdi,	vendĭtum,	vendĕre,	*to sell.*
Sisto,	stĭti,	stătum,	sistĕre,	*to cause to stand.*

(*c*). *Present-Perfect*—**i.** *Supine*—**sum.**

Accendo,	accendi,	accensum,	accendĕre,	*to set on fire.*
Cūdo,	cūdi,	cūsum,	cūdĕre,	*to hammer.*
Ēdo,	ēdi,	ēsum,	ēdĕre,	*to eat.*

(Fendo, not used,				*to strike.*)
Dēfendo,	dēfendi,	dēfensum,	dēfendĕre,	*to ward off, to defend.*
Offendo,	offendi,	offensum,	offendĕre,	*to strike against, to assault.*
Fundo,	fūdi,	fūsum,	fundĕre,	*to pour.*
Incendo,	incendi,	incensum,	incendĕre,	*to burn.*
Mando,	mandi (rare),	mansum,	mandĕre,	*to chew.*
Pando,	pandi,	pansum *or* passum,	pandĕre,	*to spread.*
Prĕhendo,	prĕhendi,	prĕhensum,	prĕhendĕre,	*to grasp.*
Scando,	scandi,	scansum,	scandĕre,	*to climb.*
Strīdo, Strīdeo,	strīdi,	———	strīdĕre,	*to creak.*
Verto,	verti,	versum,	vertĕre,	*to turn.*
Findo,	fĭdi,	fissum,	findĕre,	*to cleave.*
Scindo,	scĭdi,	scissum,	scindĕre,	*to tear.*
Frendo,	———	fressum,	frendĕre,	*to gnash the teeth.*
Frendeo,	———	frēsum,		

(*d*). *Other Forms.*

Mĕto,	messui,	messum,	mĕtĕre,	*to mow.*
Pĕto,	pĕtīvi *or* pĕtĭi,	pĕtītum,	pĕtĕre,	*to seek.*
Sīdo,	sēdi (rarely sīdi),	———	sīdĕre,	*to sit down.*
Sterto,	stertui,	———	stertĕre,	*to snore.*
Fīdo,	fīsus sum,	———	fīdĕre,	*to trust.*

4. *Verbs the Stems of which end in* L, M, N.

(*a*). *Present-Perfect*—ui. *Supine*—ĭtum *or* tum.

Ălo,	ălui,	ălĭtum *or* altum,	ălĕre,	*to nourish.*
Cŏlo,	cŏlui,	cultum,	cŏlĕre,	*to till.*
Consŭlo,	consŭlui,	consultum,	consŭlĕre,	*to consult.*
Mŏlo,	mŏlui,	mŏlĭtum,	mŏlĕre,	*to grind.*
Occŭlo,	occŭlui,	occultum,	occŭlĕre,	*to conceal.*
Vŏlo,	vŏlui,	———	velle,	*to wish.*
Frĕmo,	frĕmui,	frĕmĭtum,	frĕmĕre,	*to roar.*
Gĕmo,	gĕmui,	gemĭtum,	gĕmĕre,	*to groan.*
Trĕmo,	trĕmui,	———	trĕmĕre,	*to tremble.*
Vŏmo,	vŏmui,	vŏmĭtum,	vŏmĕre,	*to vomit.*
Gigno,	gĕnui,	gĕnĭtum,	gignĕre,	*to produce.*

(*b*). *Present-Perfect with Reduplication.*

Fallo,	fĕfelli,	falsum,	fallĕre,	*to deceive.*
Pello,	pĕpŭli,	pulsum,	pellĕre,	*to drive.*
Căno,	cĕcĭni,	cantum,	cănĕre,	*to sing.*

(*c*). *Present-Perfect*—**si**. *Supine*—**tum**.

Cōmo,	compsi,	comptum,	cōmĕre,	*to adorn.*
Dēmo,	dempsi,	demptum,	dēmĕre,	*to take away.*
Prōmo,	prompsi,	promptum,	prōmĕre,	*to take forth.*
Sūmo,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	sūmĕre,	*to take up.*
Temno,	tempsi,	temptum,	temnĕre,	*to despise.*

(*d*). *Other Forms.*

Percello,	percŭli,	perculsum,	percellĕre,	*to strike down.*
Psallo,	psalli,	———	psallĕre,	*to play on a stringed instrument.*
Vello,	velli,	vulsum,	vellĕre,	*to pluck.*
Tollo,	sustŭli,	sublātum,	tollĕre,	*to raise up.*
Ĕmo,	ēmi,	emptum,	ĕmĕre,	*to take or buy.*
Prĕmo,	pressi,	pressum,	prĕmĕre,	*to press.*
Lĭno,	lēvi,	lĭtum,	lĭnĕre,	*to smear.*
Sĭno,	sīvi,	sĭtum,	sĭnĕre,	*to permit.*

5. *Verbs the Stems of which end in* **R.**

Cerno,	crēvi,	crētum,	cernĕre,	*to sift, to divide.*
Sperno,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	spernĕre,	*to despise.*
Sterno,	strāvi,	strātum,	sternĕre,	*to strew.*
Gĕro,	gessi,	gestum,	gĕrĕre,	*to carry.*
Ūro,	ussi,	ustum,	ūrĕre,	*to burn.*
Curro,	cŭcurri,	cursum,	currĕre,	*to run.*
Fĕro,	tŭli,	lātum,	ferre,	*to bear, carry.*
Quaero,	quaesīvi,	quaesītum,	quaerĕre,	*to seek.*
Sĕro,	sĕrui,	sertum,	sĕrĕre,	*to put in rows, to plait.*
Sĕro,	sēvi,	sătum,	sĕrĕre,	*to sow.*
Tĕro,	trīvi,	trītum,	tĕrĕre,	*to rub.*
Verro,	verri,	versum,	verrĕre,	*to sweep.*

6. *Verbs the Stems of which end in* **S, X.**

Depso,	depsui,	depstum,	depsĕre,	*to knead.*
Pinso,	pinsui, pinsi,	pinsĭtum, pinsum,	pinsĕre,	*to pound.*
Pīso,	———	pistum,	pīsĕre,	*to pound.*
Vīso,	vīsi,	———	vīsĕre,	*to visit.*
Pōno,	pŏsui,	pŏsĭtum,	pōnĕre,	*to place.*
Arcesso,	arcessīvi,	arcessītum,	arcessĕre,	*to send for.*
Căpesso,	căpessīvi,	căpessītum,	căpessĕre,	*to take in hand.*
Făcesso,	făcessi,	făcessĭtum,	făcessĕre,	*to make, to cause.*
Lăcesso,	lăcessīvi,	lăcessītum,	lăcessĕre,	*to provoke.*

7. *Verbs the Stems of which end in* **U, V.**

Present-Perfect—**i**. *Supine*—**tum**.

Ăcuo,	ăcui,	ăcūtum,	ăcuĕre,	*to sharpen.*
Arguo,	argui,	argūtum,	arguĕre,	*to prove.*

Imbuo,	imbui,	imbūtum,	imbuĕre,	*to soak.*
Induo,	indui,	indūtum,	induĕre,	*to put on.*
Exuo,	exui,	exūtum,	exuĕre,	*to put off.*
Mĭnuo,	mĭnui,	mĭnūtum,	mĭnuĕre,	*to lessen.*
Rŭo,	rui,	rūtum,	ruĕre,	*to rush.*
Spuo,	spui,	spūtum,	spuĕre,	*to spit.*
Stătuo,	stătui,	stătūtum,	stătuĕre,	*to set up.*
Suo,	sui,	sūtum,	suĕre,	*to sew.*
Trĭbuo,	trĭbui,	trĭbūtum,	trĭbuĕre,	*to distribute.*
Lăvo,	lāvi,	lautum, lōtum,	lăvĕre,	*to wash.*
Solvo,	solvi,	sōlūtum,	solvĕre,	*to loosen.*
Volvo,	volvi,	vōlūtum,	volvĕre,	*to roll.*
Congruo,	congrui,	———	congruĕre,	*to agree.*
Luo,	lui,	———	luĕre,	*to atone.*
(Nuo,				*to nod.*)
Abnuo,	abnui,	———	abnuĕre,	*to refuse.*
Annuo,	annui,	———	annuĕre,	*to assent.*
Mĕtuo,	mĕtui,	———	mĕtuĕre,	*to fear.*
Pluit,	pluit *or* plūvit,	———	pluĕre,	*to rain.*
Sternuo,	sternui,	———	sternuĕre,	*to sneeze.*

8. *Verbs the Present Tense of which ends in* SCO.

Verbs ending in *sco* are *Inceptive*, that is, denote the beginning of an action.

Ăbŏlesco,	ăbŏlēvi,	ăbŏlĭtum,	ăbŏlescĕre,	*to grow out of use.*
Adŏlesco,	ădŏlēvi,	ădultum,	ădolescĕre,	*to grow up.*
Exŏlesco,	exŏlēvi,	exŏlĭtum,	exŏlescĕre,	*to grow old.*
Cŏălesco, (ălo)	cŏălui,	cŏălĭtum,	cŏălescĕre,	*to grow together.*
Concŭpisco, (cŭpio)	concŭpīvi,	concŭpītum,	concŭpiscĕre,	*to desire.*
Convălesco, (văleo)	convălui,	convălĭtum,	convălescĕre,	*to grow strong.*
Exardesco, (ardeo)	exarsi,	exarsum,	exardescĕre,	*to take fire.*
Invĕtĕrasco, (invĕtĕro)	invĕtĕrāvi,	invĕtĕrātum,	invĕtĕrascĕre,	*to grow old.*
Consĕnesco, (sĕnex)	consĕnui,	———	consĕnescĕre,	*to grow old.*
Ingrăvesco, (grăvis)	———	———	ingrăvescĕre,	*to grow heavy.*
Jŭvĕnesco, (jŭvĕnis)	———	———	jŭvĕnescĕre,	*to grow young.*
Mātūresco, (mātūrus)	mātūrui,	———	mātūrescĕre,	*to grow ripe.*
Obmūtesco, (mūtus)	obmūtui,	———	obmūtescĕre,	*to grow dumb.*

The following Verbs in *sco* are derived from forms no longer in use, and are therefore treated as underived Verbs:

Cresco,	crēvi,	crētum,	crescĕre,	*to grow.*
Glisco,	———	———	gliscĕre,	*to swell.*
Hisco,	———	———	hiscĕre,	*to gape.*
Nosco,	nōvi,	nōtum,	noscĕre,	*to learn, to know.*
Pasco,	pāvi,	pastum,	pascĕre,	*to feed.*
Quiesco,	quiēvi,	quiētum,	quiescĕre,	*to become quiet.*
Suesco,	suēvi,	suētum,	suescĕre,	*to grow accustomed.*

IV. The Fourth Conjugation.

In the Fourth Conjugation the Present-Perfect ends regularly in **īvi**, the Supine in **ītum**; as, audio, audīvi, audītum, audīre, *to hear.* The following are exceptions:

Farcio,	farsi,	fartum, (farctum)	farcīre,	*to cram.*
Fulcio,	fulsi,	fultum,	fulcīre,	*to prop.*
Haurio,	hausi,	haustum,	haurīre,	*to draw* (water).
Sancio,	sanxi,	sancītum *or* sanctum,	sancīre,	*to ratify.*
Sarcio,	sarsi,	sartum,	sarcīre,	*to patch.*
Sentio,	sensi,	sensum,	sentīre,	*to feel, to think.*
Saepio,	saepsi,	saeptum,	saepīre,	*to fence in.*
Vincio,	vinxi,	vinctum,	vincīre,	*to bind.*
Eo,	īvi,	ĭtum,	īre,	*to go.*
Sălio,	sălui *or* sălii,	saltum,	sălīre,	*to leap.*
Sĕpĕlio,	sĕpĕlīvi,	sĕpultum,	sĕpĕlīre,	*to bury.*
Vĕnio,	vēni,	ventum,	vĕnīre,	*to come.*
Ămĭcio,	ămĭcui *or* amixi,	ămictum,	ămĭcīre,	*to clothe.*
Ăpĕrio,	ăpĕrui,	ăpertum,	ăpĕrīre,	*to open.*
Ŏpĕrio,	ŏpĕrui,	ŏpertum,	ŏpĕrīre,	*to cover.*

V. Third Conjugation mixed with the Fourth.

Căpio,	cēpi,	captum,	căpĕre,	*to take.*
Făcio,	fēci,	factum,	făcĕre,	*to make.*
Jăcio,	jēci,	jactum,	jăcĕre,	*to throw.*
Fŭgio,	fūgi,	fŭgĭtum,	fŭgĕre,	*to flee.*
Fŏdio,	fōdi,	fossum,	fŏdĕre,	*to dig.*
Răpio,	răpui,	raptum,	răpĕre,	*to seize.*
Părio,	pĕpĕri,	partum,	părĕre,	*to bring forth.*
Quătio,	(no perfect),	quassum,	quătĕre,	*to shake.*
Cŭpio,	cŭpīvi,	cŭpītum,	cŭpĕre,	*to desire.*
Săpio,	săpīvi,		săpĕre,	*to taste.*
Lăcio,			lăcĕre,	*to draw* } rare, except in
Spĕcio,			spĕcĕre,	*to look* } composition.

VI. Deponents.

1. In the First Conjugation the Perfects and Supines are all regular.

2. Second Conjugation:

Fătĕor,	fassus sum,	fătēri,	*to confess.*
Lĭcĕor,	lĭcĭtus sum,	lĭcēri,	*to bid at a sale.*
Mĕdĕor,	———	mĕdēri,	*to heal.*
Mĕrĕor,	mĕrĭtus sum,	mĕrēri,	*to earn, to deserve.*
Mĭsĕrĕor,	mĭsĕrĭtus sum *or* mĭsertus sum,	mĭsĕrēri,	*to take pity on.*
Pollĭcĕor,	pollĭcĭtus sum,	pollĭcēri,	*to promise.*
Rĕor,	rătus sum,	rēri,	*to think.*
Tŭĕor,	tŭĭtus sum,	tŭēri,	*to protect.*
Vĕrĕor,	vĕrĭtus sum,	vĕrēri,	*to fear.*

3. Third Conjugation:

Fruor,	frŭĭtus sum *or* fructus sum,	frui,	*to enjoy.*
Fungor,	functus sum,	fungi,	*to perform.*
Grădior,	gressus sum,	grădi,	*to step.*
Lābor,	lapsus sum,	lābi,	*to slip.*
Lĭquor,	———	lĭqui,	*to melt.*
Lŏquor,	lŏcūtus sum,	lŏqui,	*to speak.*
Mŏrior,	mortuus sum,	mŏri,	*to die.*
Nĭtor,	nixus sum *or* nīsus sum,	nīti,	*to strain.*
Pătior,	passus sum,	păti,	*to suffer.*
Quĕror,	questus sum,	quĕri,	*to complain.*
Ringor,	———	ringi,	*to show the teeth, to snarl.*
Sĕquor,	sĕcūtus sum,	sĕqui,	*to follow.*
Ūtor,	ūsus sum,	ūti,	*to use.*
(Verto) Rĕvertor,	(rĕversus sum),	rĕverti,	*to return.*
(Plecto) Amplector,	amplexus sum,	amplecti,	*to embrace.*
Complector,	complexus sum,	complecti,	*to embrace.*
Ăpiscor,	aptus sum,	ăpisci,	*to obtain.*
Ădĭpiscor,	ădeptus sum,	ădĭpisci,	*to obtain.*
Commĭniscor,	commentus sum,	commĭnisci,	*to devise.*
Rĕmĭniscor,	———	rĕmĭnisci,	*to remember.*
Dēfĕtiscor,	dēfessus sum,	dēfĕtisci,	*to grow weary.*
Expergiscor,	experrectus sum,	expergisci,	*to wake up.*
Irascor,	īratus sum,	īrasci,	*to be angry.*
Nanciscor,	nactus sum,	nancisci,	*to obtain by chance.*
Nascor,	nātus sum,	nasci,	*to be born.*
Oblīviscor,	oblītus sum,	oblīvisci,	*to forget.*
Păciscor,	pactus sum,	păcisci,	*to make an agreement*

Prŏfĭciscor,	prŏfectus sum,	prŏfĭcisci,	*to set out.*
Ulciscor,	ultus sum,	ulcisci,	*to avenge.*
Vescor,		vesci,	*to eat.*

4. Fourth Conjugation:

Assentior,	assensus sum,	assentīri,	*to agree to.*
Blandior,	blandītus sum,	blandīri,	*to flatter.*
Expĕrior,	expertus sum,	expĕrīri,	*to try.*
Largior,	largītus sum,	largīri,	*to give bountifully.*
Mentior,	mentītus sum,	mentīri,	*to lie.*
Mētior,	mensus sum,	mētīri,	*to measure.*
Mōlior,	mōlītus sum,	mōlīri,	*to labor.*
Oppĕrior,	{oppertus sum, / oppĕrītus sum,}	oppĕrīri,	*to wait for.*
Ordior,	orsus sum,	ordīri,	*to begin.*
Orior,	ortus sum,	ŏrīri,	*to rise.*
Partior,	partītus sum,	partīri,	*to divide.*
Pŏtior,	pŏtītus sum,	pŏtīri,	*to obtain possession of*
Sortior.	sortītus sum,	sortīri,	*to take by lot.*

INDEX I. TO VOCABULARIES.

LATIN WORDS.

N. B.—The figures refer to the Vocabularies in which the words occur, excepting when p. (page) *is prefixed.*

AB.

Ab (a, abs), 25 (*b*).
abdo, 68.
abeo, p. 106.
abjicio, 56.
abstineo, 71.
absum, p. 39.
absumo, 27.
absurdus, 33.
abutor, 36.
ac, 68.
accedo, 41.
acceptus, 65.
accido, 57.
accipio, 35.
accurro, 71.
accuso, 70.
acer, 13.
acies, 15.
acriter, 73.
acuo, 59.
acus, 14.
acutus, 6.
ad, 36.
addictus, 24.
addisco, 47.
adductus, 65.
adeo, p. 106.
adhibeo, 60, 71.
adhortor, 36.
adipiscor, 36.
adjuvo, 46.
admiror, 34.
admitto, 71.
adscendo, 71.
adscensus, 71.
adsum, p. 39.
adulatio, 18.
advenio, 54.
advento, 25 (*b*).
adventus, 30.
adversus, um, p. 92.
aedificium, 25 (*a*).
aedifico, 25 (*a*).
Aedui, 58.
Aeduus, 65.
aeger, 6.
Aegyptus, 42.
Aeneas, 17.
aequus, 42.
aer, 32.
aerumna, 44.

APOLLO.

Aeschines, 52.
aestas, 38.
aetas, 50.
aeternus, 24.
affectus, 62.
affero, p. 104.
affinitas, 70.
affligo, 32.
Africanus, 32.
ager, 4.
Agesilaus, 58.
aggor, 9.
aggredior, 68.
agmen, 69.
ago, 41.
agricola, 2.
ala, 1.
albus, 6.
Alcibiades, 52.
Alexander, 19.
alienus, 69.
aliquando, 36.
aliquis, 47.
alius, p. 29.
Allobrŏges, 66.
alloquor, 36.
alo, 59.
Alpes, 28.
alter, 10.
altus, 6.
amabilis, 18.
Ambarri, 67.
ambulo, 25 (*a*).
amicitia, 2.
amicus, 3.
amitto, 73.
amor, 18.
amplius, 69.
ancepe, 73.
Anchises, 17.
angustiae, 67.
angustus, 11.
animadverto, 54, 71.
animal, 12.
animus, 21.
annus, 12.
ante, 65, p. 68.
antepono, 56.
Antiochus, 29.
antiquus, 55.
Apollo, 43.

AVERSUS.

Apollonia, 53.
appello, 63.
apud, 36.
aquila, 1.
Aquitani, 63.
Aquitania, 64.
aquor, 58.
Arar, 63.
Arbela, 50.
arbitror, 66.
arbor, 16.
arcus, 14.
arcus coelestis, 14.
ardeo, 59.
arduus, 61.
argentum, 5.
Ariovistus, 48.
Aristides, 53.
arma, 13.
Arpinum, 53.
ars, 26.
arx, 7.
Asia, 35.
asper, 18.
aspernor, 34.
ater, 11.
Athenae, 51.
Atheniensis, 26.
atque, 41.
atrox, 45.
attente, 41.
attentus, 20.
attingo, 64.
auctoritas, 21.
auctumnus, 8.
audacia, 70.
audacter, 41.
audax, 13.
audeo, p. 108.
audio, p. 54.
auditus, 14.
aufero, p. 104.
augeo, 70.
Augustus, 19.
aureus, 12.
auris, 14.
aurum, 5.
aut, 69.
autem, 23.
auxilium, 21.
aversus, 78.

CAPUT.

averto, 69.
avis, 26.
avus, 3.
Babylon, 53.
balaena, 12.
beate, 59.
beatus, 20.
Belgae, 63.
bellicosus, 6.
bello, 58.
bellua, 24.
bellum, 5.
bene, 26.
benevolus, 55.
benigne, 36.
benignus, 7.
bestia, 16.
bestiola, 51.
bibo, 47.
Bibracte, 72.
Bibulus, 57.
biduum, 72.
bipartito, 73.
Blaesus, 56.
blandior, 37.
Boii, 72.
bona (*pl.*), 33; p. 157.
bonitas, 73.
bonum (*subs.*), 55.
bonus, 6.
brevis, 13.
Britannia, 2.
Brutus, 62.
Cado, 32.
caecus, 54.
Caesar, 26.
Caius (C.), 52.
calamitas, 68.
calcar, 12.
calor, 9.
Camillus, 27.
Campania, 62.
campus, 51.
canis, 16.
Cannae, 53.
canto, 25 (*b*).
cantus, 26.
Canusium, 52.
capio, 64.
Capua, 52.
caput, 12.

CARMEN.
carmen, 13.
caro, 36.
carrus, 65.
Carthaginiensis, 47.
Carthago, 12.
carus, 20.
caseus, 36.
Cassianus, 68.
Cassius, 62.
Cassivelaunus, 50.
Casticus, 65.
castigo, 25 (*a*).
castra, 9.
casus, 46.
Catilina, 27.
Cato, 18.
causa, 2.
cautus, 27.
cedo, 52.
celer, 13.
celeriter, 70.
celsus, 33.
Celtae, 63.
centum, 73.
centuria, 19.
cerasum, 19.
cerasus, 19.
cerno, 57.
certior, 67.
certus, 10.
cervus, 14.
ceterl, 39.
Chaerephon, 56.
cibaria, 66.
Cicero, 12.
Cimbri, 24.
cingo, 27.
circa, circum, circiter, p. 92.
circuitus, 71.
circumvenio, 72.
cis, citra, p. 92.
civilis, 37.
civis, 11.
civitas, 17.
clades, 11.
clam, p. 94.
clamor, 9.
clarus, 8.
classis, 11.
claudo, 72.
cliens, 65.
coelestis, 14.
coelum, 5.
coëmo, 65.
coeno, p. 108.
coëo, p. 106.
coepi, 69.
coerceo, 26.
cogito, 59.
cognitio, 34.
cognosco, 50.
cogo, 65.
cohors, 19.
cohortor, 57.
colligo, 72.
collis, 71.

COLLOQUIAR.
colloquor, 59.
colo, 31.
colonia, 1.
color, 9.
columba, 1.
comes, 8.
comitor, 41.
commeatus, 60.
commemoro, 69.
commilito, 60.
committo, 36.
commode, 72.
commonefacio, 71.
commoveo, 68.
comparo, 59.
complures, 70.
comporto, 70.
comprehendo, 50.
concedo, 62.
concido, 68.
concilium, 70.
conduco, 65.
confertus, 72.
confero, 52.
conficio, 50, 73.
confido, 57.
confirmo, 65.
confiteor, 35.
confugio, 54.
conjicio, 56.
conjuratio, 27.
Conon, 53.
conor, 34.
consanguineus, 67.
conscendo, 50.
conscientia, 16.
conscribo, 67.
consentio, 55.
consequor, 68.
conservo, 47.
Considius, 71.
consido, 71.
consilium, 46.
consisto, 68.
conspicor, 72.
constat, 54.
constituo, 51.
consuesco, 69.
consuetudo, 10.
consul, 19.
consulatus, 36.
consulo, 58.
consumo, 53.
contemno, 27.
contemplor, 34.
contendo, 50.
contentus, 20.
continenter, 63.
contineo, 54, 64.
contra, p. 92.
contraho, 27.
contumelia, 69.
convenio, 58.
converto, 72.
convoco, 50.
copia, 27, 73.
copiae, 27.

DESUM.
copiosus, 72.
cor, 24.
coram, p. 93.
Corinthus, 25 (*a*).
Cornelia, 28.
cornu, 14.
corona, 1.
corpus, 12.
corrigo, 27.
creator, 15.
credibilis, 54.
credo, 55.
cremo, 65.
creo, 25 (*a*).
Creta, 52.
Croesus, 56.
cruciatus, 36.
crudelis, 28.
crus, 12.
culpa, 17.
cum, p. 93.
Cumae, 53.
cunctus, 49.
cupiditas, 21.
cupidus, 70.
cupio, p. 85.
cur, 42.
curo, 25 (*a*).
curro, 47.
currus, 27.
cursus, 14.
custodio, 28.
custos, 8.
Cyprus, 53.
Damno, 65.
Darius, 35.
de, p. 93.
dea, 10.
debeo, 26.
debilis, 16.
decem, 73.
decet, p. 109.
decipio, 35.
decus, 12.
dedecet, p. 109.
deditio, 73.
defendo, 27.
defessus, 72.
deflagro, 36.
deinde, 72.
deleo, 26.
delecto, 25 (*b*).
delectus, 50.
deligo, 65.
Delos, 54.
Delphi, 53.
Demosthenes, 21.
demum, 34.
denique, 71.
deploro, 48.
deporto, 69.
depopulo, 67.
deprecator, 67.
desero, 27.
designo, 70.
despero, 70.
desum, p. 39.

EJICIO.
detego, 27.
deterreo, 57.
Deus, 5, p. 26.
dextra, 71.
Diana, 54.
dico, 27.
dies, 15.
differo, 63.
difficilis, 13.
diffido, 57.
diligens, 20.
diligenter, 25 (*a*).
diligentia, 5.
diligentissime, 28.
diligo, 31.
dimico, 25 (*b*).
diminuo, 70.
dimitto, 57.
Dionysius, 53.
diripio, 55.
discedo, 69.
discipulus, 5.
disco, 27.
disjicio, 72.
displiceo, 26.
dissimilis, 49.
distringo, 72.
diu, 26.
diutius, 70.
dives, 20.
Divico, 68.
divido, 39.
divinus, 26.
Divitiacus, 58.
divitiae, 16.
do, 25 (*a*).
doceo, 26.
doctus, 10.
dolor, 28.
dolus, 63.
domicilium, 12.
domina, 15.
dominatus, 51.
dominus, 3.
domus, 66, p. 26.
donum, 5.
dormio, 28.
dubitatio, 69.
dubito, 25 (*b*).
dubius, 25 (*b*).
duco, 27, 70.
dulcis, 13.
dum, 25 (*a*).
Dumnorix, 65.
duo, 66.
duodeviginti, 72.
durus, 11.
dux, 7.
Dyrrachium, 53.
E, ex, p. 93.
edo, 59.
edico, 29.
educo, 29.
effero, p. 104.
effloresco, 50.
egregius, 29.
ejicio, 35.

ELEGANS.
elegans, 24.
elephantus, 12.
eloquens, 55.
emendo, 25 (*a*).
emigro, 25 (*a*).
emo, 27.
enarro, 57.
enitor, 57.
enuncio, 65.
eo, 68.
eo (*adv.*), 72.
Epaminondas, 37.
eques, 8.
equitatus, 14.
equus, 3.
erga, p. 92.
eripio, 65.
erro, 25 (*b*).
erudio, 28.
eruditus, 32.
et, 3.
etiam, 28.
Euripides, 36.
Europa, 2.
evello, 72.
evenio, 56.
ex, p. 93.
excedo, 41.
excipio, 73.
exclamo, 57.
excolo, 27.
exemplum, 6.
exeo, p. 106.
exerceo, 16.
exercitus, 14.
exhilaro, 25 (*b*).
exilium, 52.
existimatio, 71.
existimo, 71.
expeditus, 66.
expello, 53.
experior, 37.
explorator, 71.
expono, 53.
expugno, 25 (*a*).
exsequor, 36.
exspecto, 67.
extra, p. 92.
extremus, 64.
extruo, 50.
Fabius, 58.
Fabricius, 53.
fabula, 31.
facies, 15.
facile, 45.
facilis, 13.
facinus, 35.
facio, p. 85.
fallo, p. 163.
fames, 45.
familia, 65.
familiaris, 70.
fateor, 35.
faveo, 70.
feliciter, 56.
felix, 13.
femina, 1.

GERO.
fere, 37.
fero, p. 102.
ferox, 49.
ferrum, 18.
ficus, 14.
fidelis, 13.
fides, 15.
fido, p. 108.
fidus, 24.
filia, 1.
filius, 3.
fingo, 31.
finio, 28.
finis, 28.
fio, p. 79.
firmo, 25 (*a*).
firmus, 7.
flagito, 69.
flecto, 72.
fleo, 26.
flo, 25 (*a*).
florens, 54.
floreo, 26.
flos, 9.
flumen, 16.
fluo, 38.
fluvius, 3.
fodio, p. 85.
fons, 24.
forte, 48.
fortis, 16.
fortissime, 25 (*b*).
fortiter, 25 (*b*).
fortuna, 37.
forum, 57.
fossa, 9.
frango, 72.
frater, 9.
fraternus, 71.
fraus, 25 (*a*).
frigus, 12.
frons, 37.
fructus, 14.
fruges, 44.
frumentarius, 72.
frumentum, 69.
fruor, 36.
fuga, 67.
fugio, p. 85.
fugo, 29.
fulgeo, 40.
fulgur, 12.
fungor, 36.
funus, 16.
furor, 18.
Galli, 63.
Gallia, 2.
Gallicus, 71.
Garumna, 63.
gaudeo, p. 108.
gaudium, 5.
gener, 4.
Geneva, 66.
genu, 14.
genus, 12.
Germani, 39.
gero, 36.

IMPETUS.
gladius, 3.
gloria, 2.
gnaviter, 28.
Gracchus, 32.
gracilis, p. 31.
Graecia, 2.
Graecus, 17.
gramen, 16.
grandinat, p. 110.
gratia, 59.
gratulor, 73.
gratus, 6.
gravis, 46.
graviter, 29.
gusto, 58.
Habeo, 36.
habito, 25 (*a*).
Hannibal, 25 (*b*).
Hanno, 51.
Hasdrubal, 41.
hasta, 6.
haud, 59.
Hellespontus, 27.
Helvetia, 18.
Helvetii, 39.
heri, 25 (*b*).
Helvetius, 39.
hiberna, 67.
hibernus, 18.
hic, 63.
hiemo, 53.
hiems, 7.
hilaris, 45.
Hispania, 64.
Homerus, 54.
homo, 10.
honor, 17.
hora, 51.
Horatius, 53.
hortor, 34.
hortus, 3.
hostia, 43.
hostis, 11.
humanus, 13.
humilis, p. 31.
Ibi, 52.
ictus, 72.
idem, 65.
ignavia, 20.
igneus, 55.
ignis, 65.
ignoratio, 49.
Ilium, p. 28.
ille, 43.
imago, 18.
imitor, 35.
immolo, 43.
immortalis, 16.
immortalitas, 36.
impedimentum, 72.
impedio, 68.
imperator, 27.
imperitus, 57.
imperium, 40.
impero, 25 (*b*).
impetro, 67.
impetus, 42.

INTUEOR.
impransus, 57.
improbus, 18.
imprudentia, 54.
in, 27.
incendium, 27.
incendo, 27.
incertus, 56.
incipio, 41.
incito, 66.
incola, 2.
incolo, 63.
incommodum, 68.
incredibilis, 68.
incuso, 36.
inde, 67.
Indi, 40.
indoctus, 17.
indulgeo, 43.
industrius, 21.
ineo, p. 106.
iners, 21.
infamia, 48.
infamis, 56.
infectus, 46.
inferior, 49.
infero, p. 104.
infinitus, 10.
infirmitas, 57.
infirmus, 50.
inflecto, 72.
influo, 68.
infra, p. 92.
infringo, 42.
ingens, 13.
ingredior, 60.
inimicitia, 2.
inimicus, 17.
initium, 13.
injuria, 69.
injuste, 32.
injustus, 56.
innumerus, 27.
inopia, 73.
inops, 44.
insequor, 72.
insigne, 71.
instituo, 27.
institutum, 63.
insto, 70.
instrumentum, 14.
instruo, 27.
insula, 1.
insum, p. 39.
intelligo, 55.
inter, p. 92.
intercludo, 60, 72.
intereo, p. 106.
interficio, 47.
interim, 69.
interitus, 25 (*b*).
intermitto, 73.
intersum, p. 39.
intervallum, 71.
intra, p. 92.
intro, 25 (*a*).
introeo, 79.
intueor, 35.

INTUMESCO.
intumesco, 49.
invidia, 42.
invitus, 67.
ipse, 60.
ira, 13.
irascor, 48.
is, 64.
istuc, 60.
ita, 25 (*b*).
Italia, 2.
itaque, 67.
item, 65.
iter, 18.
Jaceo, 53.
jacio, p. 35.
jacto, 70.
jam, 25 (*a*).
jubeo, 36.
jucundus, 7.
judex, 7.
judicium, 61.
judico, 25 (*a*).
jugum, 68.
jumentum, 65.
jungo, 27.
Juno, 10.
Jura, 64.
juro, p. 108.
jus, 20.
jusjurandum, p. 26.
juste, 32.
justitia, 71.
justus, 7.
juvenis, 59.
juventus, 41.
juvo, 73.
juxta, p. 92.
Labienus, 36.
lăbor (*subs.*), 9.
lăbor (*v.*), 50.
lac, 36.
Lacedaemon, 52.
Lacedaemonii, 58.
lacesso, 69.
lacio, p. 85.
lacrima, 71.
lacus, 36.
Laeca, 56.
laetitia, 36.
laetus, 20.
lapideus, 32.
lapis, 32.
late, 41.
Latinus, 26.
Latona, 54.
latro, 57.
lātus (*adj.*), 6.
laudo, 25 (*a*).
laus, 17.
legatio, 65.
legatus, 30.
legio, 19.
lego, 27.
Lemanus, 64.
lenitas, 68.
leo, 10.
Leonidas, 52.

MARINUS.
lepus, 18.
Lesbos, 53.
levis, 13.
lex, 7.
liber (*subs.*), 4.
liber (*adj.*), p. 21.
liberalitas, 70.
lĭbĕre, 59.
liberi, 23.
libero, 25 (*b*).
libet, p. 109.
Libya, 23.
liceor, 70.
licet, p. 109.
lictor, 28.
Lingones, 73.
lingua, 26.
linter, 68.
liquet, p. 109.
Liscus, 70.
littera, 25 (*a*).
litterae, 25 (*a*).
litus, 12.
Livius, 24.
locus, 27.
longe, 41.
longinquitas, 28.
longinquus, 28.
longius, 58.
longus, 6.
loquor, 36.
Luceria, 52.
lucescit, p. 110.
Lucius, 52.
Lucretius, 55.
ludi, 58.
ludo, 43.
ludus, 57.
luna, 18.
luscinia, 24.
lux, 18.
Lycurgus, 29.
Macedo, 19.
magis, p. 96.
magister, 4.
magistratus, 14, 70.
magnificus, 14.
magnopere, 57.
magnus, 6.
majores, 25 (*b*).
male, p. 96.
maleficium, 67.
malevolus, 55.
malo, p. 99.
mălum, 19.
mălum, 49.
mālus, 19.
mālus (*adj.*), 6.
mandatum, 52.
maneo, 30.
manifestus, 54.
manipulus, 19.
manus, 14.
Marathon, 51.
mare, 12.
margarita, 33.
marinus, 59.

MUNIO.
Marius, 53.
marmor, 40.
mater, 9.
matrimonium, 67.
Matrona, 63.
maturo, 66.
maturus, 69.
maxime, 65.
maximus, p. 31.
Maximus, 53.
meditor, 34.
medius, 72.
membrana, 28.
memor, 20.
memorabilis, 17.
memoria, 21.
Menapii, 36.
mendax, 55.
mens, 27.
mensis, 19.
mentior, 37.
mereo, 26.
metallum, 5.
metior, 37.
metuo, 43.
metus, 38.
meus, 18.
migro, 38.
miles, 8.
mille, 69.
Minerva, 10.
minime, 48.
minister, 4.
minor, p. 31.
minus, 69.
miror, 34.
mirus, 57.
miser, 6.
misereor, 35.
miseret, p. 109.
mitis, 19.
mitto, 48.
modo, 69.
modus, 57.
moenia, 57.
molestus, 6.
mollio, 28.
mollis, 28.
molo, 66.
moneo, 26.
mons, 18.
monumentum, 16.
morbus, 5.
morior, 36.
mors, 8.
mortalis, 16.
mortuus, 23.
mos, 25 (*a*).
moveo, 30.
mox, 36.
mulier, 24.
multitudo, 10.
multo, 66.
multus, 6.
mundus, 27.
munimentum, 9.
munio, 28.

OBEO.
munus, 36.
murus, 5.
muto, 25 (*a*).
Nam, 68.
narro, 27.
nascor, 36.
natura, 8.
natus, 51.
nauta, 2.
navalis, 47.
navis, 13.
ne, p. 130.
nec, 48.
necessarius, 33.
nefas, 58.
nego, 54.
negotium, 32.
nemo, 25 (*a*).
Neptunus, 16.
nequam, p. 31.
neque, 71.
nequeo, 46.
Nero, 30.
Nervii, 57.
nescio, 28.
neuter, p. 29.
neve, 36.
nidus, 33.
niger, 6.
nihil, 18.
nihilominus, 66.
Nilus, 47.
nimis, 36.
ningit, p. 110.
nisi, 54.
nitor, 57.
nix, 11.
nobilis, 43.
nobilitas, 64.
nocco, 26.
nolo, p. 99.
nomen, 12.
nominatim, 73.
non, 24.
nondum, 68.
nonnullus, 47.
nonnunquam, 60.
nosco, p. 166.
noster, 20.
notus, 11.
novissimus, 69.
novus, 12.
nox, 8.
noxius, 6.
nubes, 11.
nullus, p. 29.
num, 69.
numero, 56.
numerus, 6.
nunc, 20.
nuncio, 66.
nunquam, 37.
nutrio, 28.
Ob, p. 92.
obaeratus, 65.
obedio, 28.
obeo, p. 106.

OBJICIO.
objicio, 73.
obliviscor, 36.
obscuro, 42.
obsecro, 71.
observo, 61.
obses, 8.
obsideo, 51.
obsidio, 27.
obsto, 57.
obsum, p. 40.
obtempero, 60.
obtineo, 70.
occasus, 64.
occidens, 33.
occido, 45.
occupatus, 62.
occupo, 25 (*b*).
oceanus, 39.
octo, 71.
oculus, 12.
odi, 70.
odium, 18.
odor, 9.
offendo, 71.
offero, p. 104.
omnino, 66.
omnis, 13.
onus, 44.
opera, 59.
oportet, p. 100.
oppidum, 5.
oppono, 52.
opprimo, 57.
oppugno, 25 (*a*).
opto, 25 (*b*).
opulentus, 25 (*a*).
opus, 12.
opus (*indec.*), 53.
ora, 1.
oraculum, 45.
oratio, 27.
orator, 10.
ordior, 37.
Orgetorix, 64.
orior, 50.
orno, 25 (*a*).
oro, 43.
os, oris, 12.
os, ossis, 19.
ostendo, 71.
Pabulor, 58.
pabulum, 69.
pagus, 68.
pallium, 27.
paratus, 60.
parens, 22.
pareo, 26.
pario, 54.
paro, 25 (*a*).
pars, 19.
partior, 37.
parvus, 6.
passus, 51, 71.
pater, 9.
patienter, 44.
patior, 36.
patria, 2.

POENA.
pancus, 16.
pauper, 20.
paupertas, 44.
pavo, 10.
pax, 7.
pecunia, 1.
pedes, 8.
peditatus, 14.
pellis, 32.
penes, p. 92.
per, 36.
percipio, 62.
perdo, 41.
perduco, 67.
pereo, p. 106.
perfectus, 49.
perfero, p. 104.
perfringo, 72.
perfugio, 73.
Pericles, p. 29.
periculum, 6.
peritus, 11.
periego, 50.
permulti, 38.
perniciosus, 18.
perpetuus, 53.
perrumpo, 50.
Persa, 13.
persequor, 63.
persevero, 68.
persolvo, 68.
persuadeo, 57.
perterreo, 71.
pertineo, 64.
pervenio, 52.
perversus, 31.
pes, 73.
peto, 52.
Phaethon, 31.
phalanx, 73.
Phidias, 49.
philosophus, 53.
piget, p. 100.
pilum, 72.
pingo, 27.
pirum, 19.
pirus, 19.
piscis, 12.
Pisistratus, 50.
placeo, 26.
placet, p. 109.
placidus, 25 (*a*).
plane, 56.
planities, 15.
planta, 21.
Plato, 51.
plebs, 65.
plenus, 16.
Plinius, 35.
pluit, p. 110.
plures, 70.
plurimum, 67.
plus, 59.
poena, 36.
Poeni, 36.
poenitet, p. 109.
poeta, 2.

PROGREDIOR.
polliceor, 35.
Pompeius, 26.
pone, p. 93.
pono, 51.
pons, 27.
populor, 67.
populus, 63.
porta, 1.
porto, 25 (*b*)
portus, 14.
posco, 73.
possessio, 67.
possum, p. 97.
post, p. 93.
posterus, 69.
postquam, 72.
postridie, 72.
postulo, 53.
potens, 13.
potentia, 34.
potestas, 34.
potior, 37.
prae, p. 93.
praealtus, 57.
praebeo, 26.
praecedo, 63.
praeceptor, 20.
praeceptum, 26.
praecipio, 71.
praeda, 9.
praeceo, p. 106.
praefero, p. 104.
praemitto, 50.
praemium, 5.
praesens, 13.
praesentia, 60.
praesertim, 70.
praestabilis, 49.
praestans, 13.
praesum, p. 40.
praeter, p. 93.
praetereo, p. 106.
praeteritus, 35.
praevenio, 57.
precor, 70.
premo, 57.
prendo, 71.
pretium, 70.
primarius, 55.
primo, 38.
primus, 67.
princeps, 63.
pristinus, 36.
prius, 32.
priusquam, 71.
privatus, 66.
pro, p. 93.
probe, 31.
probitas, 25 (*a*).
probus, 20.
prodo, 54.
proelium, 21.
profectio, 65.
profero, 40.
proficiscor, 36.
profundus, 12.
progredior, 53.

RAPAX.
prohibeo, 57.
projicio, 73.
prope, p. 93.
propinquus, p. 96.
prepono, 70.
propter, p. 93.
propterea, 63.
prospicio, 72.
prosum, p. 40.
provideo, 61.
provincia, 64.
proximus, 49.
prudens, 13.
prudentia, 44.
prunum, 19.
prunus, 19.
publice, 60.
publicus, 58.
pudet, p. 109.
puella, 1.
puer, 4.
pugna, 2.
pugno, 25 (*a*).
pulcher, 6.
Punicus, 32.
punio, 28.
puto, 54.
Pyrenaei, 64.
Pythagoras, 42.
Quaero, 56.
quaestio, 56.
qualis, 53.
quam, 18, 65.
quamdiu, 70.
quantus, 56.
quare, 56.
quartus, 68.
quasi, 62.
quatio, p. 85.
quatuor, 68.
que, 65.
quercus, 14.
qui, 63.
quis, 26.
quidam, 34.
quidem, 31.
quin, p. 130.
quindecim, 69.
quinetiam, 70.
quingenti, 71.
quini, 69.
quis, p. 45.
quisnam, 58.
quisquam, 71.
quisque, 60.
quo (*adv.*), 60.
quo (*conj.*), p. 130.
quod, 26.
quominus, p. 130.
quondam, 54.
quoque, 23.
quot, 56.
quotidianus, 63.
quotidie, 47.
quum, 25 (*a*).
Radix, 18.
rapax, 18.

RAPIDUS.
rapidus, 6.
rapina, 69.
rapio, p. 85.
raro, 36.
rarus, 15.
ratio, 31, 73.
ratis, 68.
recens, 69.
recipio, 67.
recito, 50.
recordor, 35.
recreo, 25 (*a*).
rectus, 25 (*b*).
recupero, 50.
recuso, 57.
redamo, 25 (*b*).
redeo, p. 106.
redimo, 70.
redintegro, 72.
refero, 72; p. 104.
regina, 1.
regno, 50.
regnum, 5, 65.
rego, 27.
Regulus, 36.
rejicio, 72.
relinquo, 42.
reliquus, 63.
reminiscor, 36.
removeo, 72.
renovo, 25 (*b*).
renuncio, 71.
repentinus, 68.
reperio, 28.
reprehendo, 71.
repugno, 71.
res, 15, 70.
rescindo, 66.
resisto, 41.
respondeo, 55.
responsum, 69.
restituo, 70.
rete, 12.
retineo, 70.
reus, 35.
reverto, 52.
revertor, 52.
rex, 7.
Rhenus, 3.
Rhodanus, 3.
Rhodus, 52.
ripa, 3.
rogo, 56.
Roma, 1.
Romanus, 5, 11.
Romulus, 7.
rosa, 1.
Roscius, 41.
rupes, 11.
rursus, 72.
Sacer, 6.
saepe, 25 (*b*).
saepenumero, 56.
saepissime, 56.
sagitta, 13.
Saguntini, 51.
Salamis, 36.

SIMULATIO.
Sallustius, 24.
salto, 43.
salus, 20.
salvus, 24.
sanguis, 24.
Santoni, 67.
sapiens, 19.
sapientia, 18.
sapio, p. 85.
sarcina, 73.
satis, 41.
satisfacio, 69.
Satrius, 57.
scelus, 12.
scientia, 49.
scio, 28.
Scipio, 31.
scribo, 27.
scriptor, 24.
scutum, 5.
Scytha, 14.
secreto, 70.
secundum, p. 93.
secundus, 73.
sed, 49.
sedeo, 43.
sedes, 14.
seditiosus, 70.
segnities, 15.
Segusiani, 67.
semel, 27.
sementis, 65.
semper, 18.
senatus, 50.
senectus, 55.
senex, 73.
seni, 69.
sensus, 14.
sentio, 50.
separatim, 71.
sepelio, 28.
septemtriones, 64.
septimus, 67.
sepultura, 73.
Sequana, 63.
Sequani, 64.
sequor, 36.
serenus, 15.
sermo, 10.
sero, 44.
servitus, 40.
servo, 25 (*b*).
servus, 3.
seu, 72.
severus, 7.
sex, p. 34.
sexaginta, 73.
si, 25 (*a*).
Sicilia, 2.
sidus, 12.
signum, 57, 73.
silentium, 45.
silva, 16.
similis, 42.
simul, 27.
simulacrum, 49.
simulatio, 18.

SUSCIPIO.
sin, 68.
sine, p. 93.
siniatra, 72.
sive, 72.
socer, 4.
socius, 46.
Socrates, 32.
sol, 9.
soleo, p. 108.
Solon, 26.
sōlum, 32.
solus, p. 29.
solvo, 27.
somnus, 25 (*a*).
sonitus, 18.
soror, 9.
sors, 20.
Sparta, 52.
specio, p. 85.
specto, 27.
speculor, 56.
speratus, 18.
spero, 57.
spes, 15.
splendidus, 6.
splendor, 42.
statim, 50.
statio, 25 (*b*).
statuo, 45.
stella, 54.
sto, 57.
strenue, 30.
strenuus, 30.
studeo, 11.
studiosus, 59.
studium, 30.
stultitia, 48.
stultus, 55.
suadeo, 57.
suavis, 18.
sub, p. 94.
subdifficilis, 56.
subduco, 71.
subeo, p. 106.
subitus, 30.
sublevo, 70.
submoveo, 73.
subsisto, 69.
subsequor, 50.
subsum, p. 40.
subter, p. 94.
subveho, 69.
succedo, 72.
sui, p. 41.
summa, 73.
summus, 32, 71.
super, p. 94.
superior, 72.
supero, 25 (*b*).
supersum, p. 40.
superus, 55.
suppeto, 69.
suppliciter, 73.
supplicium, 71.
supra, p. 93.
supremus, 45.
suscipio, 50.

TURPIS.
suspicio, 71.
sustineo, 72.
suus, 18.
Tabernaculum, 40.
tabula, 73.
taceo, 48.
taedet, p. 109.
talis, 53.
tam, 47.
tamen, 69.
tandem, 72.
tantum, 36.
taurus, 3.
tego, 27.
telum, 56.
temeritas, 26.
temperantia, 71.
tempestas, 8.
templum, 5.
tempus, 12.
teneo, 57.
tener, 6.
tenuis, 28.
tenus, p. 93.
terra, 6.
terreo, 26.
terror, 25 (*b*).
tertius, 63.
testis, 69.
Thales, 54.
Themistocles, 46.
Tiberius (Ti.), 32
tigris, 41.
Tigurinus, 63.
timeo, 30.
timidus, 6.
timor, 25 (*a*).
Timotheus, 53.
Titus (T.), 20.
tollo, 72.
tonat, p. 110.
totus, 9.
trabs, 7.
tracto, 25 (*b*).
trado, 54.
traho, 27.
tranquillus, 18.
trans, p. 93.
transduco, 57.
transeo, p. 106.
transfigo, 72.
Trasimenus, 36.
Trebonius, 57.
trecenti, 73.
tres, 63.
tribuo, 48.
triduum, 73.
triginta, 73.
triplex, 72.
tristis, 20.
triumpho, 27.
Troja, 29.
Trojanus, 54.
tueor, 35.
Tulingi, 72.
tum, 14.
turpis, 28.

TURPITUDO.
turpitudo, 55.
turris, 11.
tutus, 14.
tuus, 18.
tyrannus, 42.
Ubi, 56.
ullus, p. 29.
ulterior, 66.
ultra, p. 93.
undique, 64.
unquam, 45.
unus, p. 29.
urbs, 7.
ut, p. 130.
uter, p. 29.
utilis, 13.
utor, 36.
uxor, 40.
Vaco, 73.
vadum, 66.
valeo, 26.
valetudo, 25 (*a*).
validus, 10.
vallis, 11.

VESCOR.
vallum, 73.
varius, 9.
vasto, 25 (*a*).
vectigal, 12.
vehementer, 31.
veho, 31.
Veientes, 58.
velox, 13.
veneror, 34.
venio, 28.
venor, 59.
ventito, 57.
ventus, 25 (*a*).
Venusia, 53.
ver, 18.
vereor, 35.
vergo, 64.
vero, 68.
verisimilis, 54.
versus (*subs.*), 33.
versus (*prep.*), p. 93.
verus, 17.
vescor, 36.

VIRGO.
vesperascit, p. 110.
vesperus, 73.
Vesta, 29.
vester, 20.
vestimentum, 28.
vestio, 28.
vestis, 11.
vetus, 13.
vexo, 50.
via, 13.
victor, 9.
victoria, 15.
vicus, 66.
video, 54.
videor, 43.
vigilia, 68.
vigilo, 25 (*a*).
vilis, 49.
vincio, 28.
vinco, 31.
vinculum, 28.
vinum, 13.
virgo, 10.

XERXES.
virtus, 17.
vis, 67.
viso, 56.
visus, 14.
vita, 2.
vito, 71.
vitupero, 25 (*a*).
vivo, 38.
vix, 27.
voco, 71.
Vocontii, 67.
volo (1 *conj.*), 27.
volo (*irr. v.*), p. 99
voluntas, 8, 71.
voluptas, 14.
vox, 28.
vulgus, 71.
vulnero, 29.
vulnus, 13.
vultur, 18.
vultus, 37.
Xenophon, 56.
Xerxes, 19.

INDEX II. TO VOCABULARIES.

ENGLISH WORDS.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

abl.	= ablative.	*f.*	= feminine.	*p.*	= page.
acc.	= accusative.	*gen.*	= genitive.	*part.*	= participle.
adj.	= adjective.	*indec.*	= indeclinable.	*pl.*	= plural.
adv.	= adverb.	*indef.*	= indefinite.	*prep.*	= preposition.
c.	= common gender.	*interj.*	= interjection.	*pron.*	= pronoun.
comp.	= comparative.	*inter.*	= interrogative.	*rel.*	= relative.
conj.	= conjunction.	*m.*	= masculine.	*sing.*	= singular.
dat.	= dative.	*n.*	= neuter.	*sup.*	= superlative.

1, 2, 3, 4, indicate the conjugation of a verb.

ABANDON.

Abandon, rĕlinquo, īqui, ictum, 3.
able, be, possum, p. 97.
abode, dŏmĭcilium, ii, *n.*
about, circā, circum, circiter, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.* [*acc.*
above, sŭpĕr, sŭprā, *prep.* with *acc.*
abuse, ūtor, ūsus, 3, with *abl.*
accident, cāsus, us, *m.*
accompany, cŏmitor, atus, 1.
accomplish, conficio, fĕci, fectum, 3.
according to, sĕcundum, *prep.* with *acc.* [*acc.*
account of, on, ŏb, propter, *prep.* with
accuse, accūso, avi, atum, 1.
accused man, reus, i, *m.*
accustomed, to be, sŏleo, p. 108.
acquire, ădipiscor, eptus, 3.
across, trans, *prep.* with *acc.*
act, ăgo, ēgi, actum, 3.
actively, gnāvĭtĕr, *adv.*
admire, mīror, admīror, atus, 1.
adorn, orno, avi, atum, 1.
advice, consilium, ii, *n.*
advise, suādeo, si, sum, 2, with *dat.*; mŏneo, ui, itum, [2.
affliction, aerumna, ae, *f.*
afford, praebeo, ui, itum, 2.
after, post, *prep.* with *acc.*
against, contrā, *prep.* with *acc.*
age, aetās, ātis, *f.*
age, old, sĕnectus, ūtis, *f.*
aged, *part.*, nātus, a, um.
agree, consentio, si, sum, 4.
agreed, it is, constat, stĭtit, 1.
aid, auxilium, ii, *n.*
air, āĕr, āĕris, *m.*
alarm, terreo, rui, 2.
all, omnis, e. *adj.*

ARRIVE.

all together, cunctus, a, um, *adj.*
allowed, it is, licet, p. 109.
ally, sŏcius, ii, *m.*
almost, prŏpĕ, paenĕ, *adv.*
alone, sōlus, a, um.
Alps, Alpes, ium, *f.*
already, jam, *adv.*
also, ĕtiam, *adv.*
altogether, plānĕ, *adv.*
always, sempĕr, *adv.*
among, intĕr, *prep.* with *acc.*
——— to be, intersum, p. 39.
amuse, dēlecto, avi, atum, 1.
ancestors, mājōres, *pl. m.*
ancient, antīquus, a, um, *adj.*
and, ĕt, atque, ac, quĕ, *conj.*
anger, īra, ae, *f.*
angry, to be, īrascor, īrātus, 3.
animal, ănīmal, ālis, *n.*
animal, small, bestĭŏla, ae, *f.*
another, of several, ălius, a, ud, *indef. pron.*
another, of two, alter, a, um, *indef. pron.*
answer, respondeo, di, sum, 2.
any, ullus, a, um, *indef.*
any time, at, unquam, *adv.* [*pron.*
appear, vĭdeor, īsus, 2.
apple, mālum, i, *n.*
apple-tree, mālus, i, *f.*
appoint, instituo, ŭi, ūtum, 3.
approach, appropinquo, advento, avi, atum, 1.
arms, arma, orum, *pl. n.*
army, exercĭtus, us, *m.*
around, circā, circum, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.*; circiter, *adv.*
arrange, instruo, xi, ctum, 3.
arrive, advĕnio, pervĕnio, vēni, ventum, 4.

ARRIVAL.

arrival, adventus, us, *m.*
arriving, to be on the point of, advento, avi, atum, 1.
arrow, sĭgitta, ae, *f.*
art, ars, rtis, *f.*
as, tam, *adv.*
as, ut, *conj.*
as if, quāsi, *conj.*
as far as, tĕnŭs, *prep.* with *abl.* and *gen.*
as soon as, sīmŭl atque (ac).
ascertain, cognosco, ōvi, ĭtum, 3.
ask, rŏgo, avi, atum, 1.
assault, oppugno, avi, atum, 1.
assign, tribuo, ŭi, ūtum, 3.
assist, adjŭvo, jūvi, jūtum, 1.
assistance, auxĭlium, ii, *n.*
assuage, mollio, īvi, ītum, 4.
at, ad, *prep.* with *acc.*
Athenian, Athēnĭensis, e, *adj.*
Athens, Athēnae, arum, *f.*
attack, *subs.*, impĕtus, us, *m.*
attack, *verb*, oppugno, avi, atum, 1.
attain to, ădĭpiscor, eptus, 3.
attempt, cōnor, atus, 1.
attentive, attentus, a, um, *adj.*
attentively, attentĕ, *adv.*
author, scriptor, ōris, *m.*
authority, auctōrĭtas, ātis, *f.*
autumn, auctumnus, i, *m.*
awake, to be, vigĭlo, avi, atum, 1.

Bad, mălus, a, um, *adj.*
bank, rīpa, ae, *f.*
base, turpis, e, *adj.*
battle, pugna, ae, *f.*; proelium. be, sum, p. 36. [ii, *n.*
— in, among, etc., *see* compounds of sum,
beam, trabs, trăbis, *f.* [p. 39.
bear, fĕro, tŭli, lātum, p. 102.
—— through, perfĕro, etc.
beast, bestia, ae, *f.*
beast, great, bellua, ae, *f.*
beautiful, pulcher, ra, rum, *adj.*
because, quŏd, *conj.*
because of, ŏb, propter, *prep.* with
become, fio, p. 107. [*acc.*
becomes, it, dĕcet, p. 109.
before, antĕ, *prep.* with *acc.*; prae, *prep.* with *abl.*
beg, ōro, avi, atum, 1.
begin, incĭpio, cēpi, ceptum, 3.
beginning, ĭnĭtium, ii. *n.*
behalf of, on, prō, *prep.* with *abl.*
behind, pōnĕ, *prep.* with *acc.*
behooves, it, ŏportet, p. 109.
believe, crēdo, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3.
beneath, sŭb, subtĕr, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*
beside, praetĕr, *prep.* with *acc.*
besiege, obsĭdeo, sēdi, sessum, 2.
between, inter, *prep.* with *acc.*
beyond, ultrā, *prep.* with *acc.*
bind, vincio, nxi, nctum, 4.
bird, ăvis, is, *f.*
black, nĭger, gra, grum; ăter, tra, trum.
blame, culpo, avi, atum, 1.

CENTURY.

blame, *subs.*, culpa, ae, *f.*
blockade, obsĭdio, ōnis, *f.*
blood, sanguis, inis, *m.*
bloom, flōreo, ui, —, 2.
blossom forth, efflōresco, flōrui, 3.
blow, flo, avi, atum, 1.
body, corpus, ŏris, *n.*
bold, audax, ācis, *adj.*
bond, vincŭlum, i, *n.*
bone, ŏs, ossis, *n.*
book, liber, bri, *m.*
booty, praeda, ae, *f.*
born, be, nascor, nātus, 3.
boundary, fīnis, is, *m.*
bow, arcus, us, *m.*
boy, pŭer, ĕri, *m.*
brave, fortis, e, *adj.*
bravely, fortĭter, *adv.*
bridge, pons, tis, *m.*
bright, splendidus, a, um, *adj.*
bring, fĕro, p. 102. [p. 104.
—— in, etc., *see* compounds of fero,
—— to an end, fīnio, ivi, ītum, 4; conficio, fēci, fectum, 3.
bring forth, părio, pĕpĕri, partum,
Britain, Brĭtannia, ae, *f.* [3.
Briton, Brĭtannus, i, *m.*
broad, lātus, a, um, *adj.*
brother, frāter, tris, *m.*
build, aedĭfico, avi, atum, 1.
building, aedĭfĭcium, ii, *n.*
bull, taurus, i, *m.*
burden, ŏnus, ĕris, *n.*
burn, *intrans.*, ardeo, si, sum, 2.
bury, sēpĕlio, īvi, pultum, 4.
business, nĕgōtium, ii, *n.*
busy, occŭpātus, a, um, *adj.*
but, sed, autem; see *Vocab.* 23.
buy, ĕmo, ēmi, emptum, 3.
by, ā, ăb, *prep.* with *abl.*

Call to mind, rĕcordor, atus, 1.
call together, convŏco, avi, atum, 1.
calm, tranquillus, a, um, *adj.*
camp, castra, orum, *pl. n.*
can, possum, p. 95.
can not, nĕqueo, īvi or ii, ĭtum, 4.
can not but, I, făcĕrĕ nōn possum quīn.
care, take, cūro, avi, atum, 1.
careful, dĭligens, ntis, *adj.*
carefully, dĭligenter, *adv.*
carry, porto, avi, atum, 1.
carry on, gĕro, essi, estum, 3.
carry a wall, mūrum dūco, xi, ctum,
Carthage, Carthāgo, ĭnis, *f.* [3.
Carthaginian, Carthāginiensis, e, *adj.*
cast away, abjĭcio, ēci, ectum, 3.
cast forth, out, ējĭcio, ēci, ectum, 3.
cast down, dējĭcio, ēci, ectum; adjĭcio, xi, ctum, 3.
catch, căpio, cēpi, captum, 3.
Catiline, Cătilīna, ae, *m.*
cause, causa, ae, *f.*
cavalry, ĕquĭtātus, us, *m.*
celebrated, clārus, a, um, *adj.*
century, centŭria, ae, *f.*

CERTAIN.	
certain,	certus, a, um, *adj.*
chain,	vincēlum, i, *n.*
chance,	cāsus, us, *m.*
chance, by,	cāsū, *abl.* used as *adv.*
change,	mūto, avi, atum, 1.
charge,	mando, avi, atum, 1.
chariot,	currus, us, *m.*
chastise,	castīgo, avi, atum, 1.
cheap,	vīlis, e, *adj.*
cheer,	exhilāro, avi, atum, 1.
cheerful,	hilāris, e, *adj.*
cheese,	cāseus, i, *m.*
cherish,	cŏlo, ui, cultum, 3.
cherry,	cerāsum, i, *n.*
cherry-tree,	cĕrăsus, i, *f.*
children,	lĭbĕri, orum, *m.*
Cicero,	Cĭcĕro, onis, *m.*
Cimbrians,	Cimbri, orum, *m.*
citadel,	arx, arcis, *f.*
citizen,	cīvis, is, *c.*
citizenship,	cīvĭtas, ātis, *f.*
city,	urbs, bis, *f.*
civil, belonging to a citizen,	cīvīlis, e, *adj.*
clear,	clārus, a, um, *adj.*
cloak,	pallium, ii, *n.*
clothe,	vestio, īvi, ītum, 4.
clothing,	vestis, is, *f.*; vestīmenta, orum, *n.*
cloud,	nūbes, is, *f.*
coast,	ōra, ae, *f.*
cohort,	cŏhors, rtis, *f.*
cold,	frīgus, ŏris, *n.*
colony,	cŏlōnia, ae, *f.*
color,	cŏlor, ōris, *m.*
come,	vĕnio, vēni, ventum, 4.
—— frequently,	ventito, avi, atum, 1.
—— to pass,	fīo, factus, fĭĕri.
commander,	impĕrātor, ōris, *m.*
commission,	mandātum, i, *n.*
common,	commūnis, e; vīlis, e, [*adj.*
commonly,	fĕrē, *adv.*
commonwealth,	respublica, *see* p. 26.
companion,	cŏmes, ĭtis, *c.*
comparison, in,	prae, *prep.* with *acc.*
comrade,	sŏcius, ii, *m.*
concerning,	dē, *prep.* with *abl.*
confess,	fāteor, fassus; confiteor, fessus, 2,
conflagration,	incendium, ii, *n.*
conquer,	vinco, vīci, victum, 3.
conqueror,	victor, ōris, *m.*
conscience,	conscientia, ae, *f.*
conspiracy,	conjūrātio, ōnis, *f.*
constellation,	sīdus, ĕris, *n.*
consul,	consul, ŭlis, *m.*
——, office of,	consŭlātus, us, *m.*
consult,	consŭlo, lui, ltum, 3.
consume,	absūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3.
contemplate,	contemplor, atus, 1.
contented,	contentus, a, um, *adj.*
continual,	perpĕtuus, a, um, *adj.*
contrary to,	contrā, *prep.* with *acc.*
converse,	colloquor, lŏcūtus, 3.
Corinth,	Cŏrinthus, i, *f.*
correct,	corrīgo, exi, ectum, 3.
counsel,	consĭlium, ii, *n.*

DETERMINE.	
count,	nūmĕro, avi, atum, 1.
countenance,	vultus, us, *m.*
country, one's,	patria, ae, *f.*
cover,	tĕgo, xi, ctum, 3.
cowardice,	ignāvia, ae, *f.*
create,	crĕo, avi, atum, 1.
creator,	creātor, ōris, *m.*
credible,	crēdĭbilis, e, *adj.*
Crete,	Crēta, ae, *f.*
crime,	scĕlus, ĕris, *n.*
crop,	messis, is, *f.*
cross over,	transeo, p. 106.
crown,	cŏrōna, ae, *f.*
cruel,	crūdēlis, e, *adj.*
crush,	opprimo, essi, essum, 3.
cry out,	clāmo, exclāmo, avi, atum, 1.
cultivate,	cŏlo, cŏlui, cultum, 3.
——— carefully,	excŏlo, etc.
curb,	cŏerceo, ui, ĭtum, 2.
current,	flūmen, ĭnis, *n.*
custom,	consuētūdo, ĭnis, *f.*
cut off,	intercīdo, si, sum, 3.
Dance,	salto, avi, atum, 1.
danger,	pĕrīcŭlum, i, *n.*
dangerous,	perīcŭlōsus, a, um, *adj.*
dare,	audeo, p. 108.
daring,	audax, ācis, *adj.*
daringly,	audactĕr, *adv.*
darken,	obscuro, avi, atum, 1.
dart,	tēlum, i, *n.*
daughter,	fīlia, ae, *f.*
day,	dies, ēi, *m.* and *f.*
dead,	mortuus, a, um, *adj.*
deal with,	tracto, avi, atum, 1.
dear,	cārus, a, um, *adj.*
death,	mors, rtis, *f.*
deceive,	dēcīpio, cēpi, ceptum, 3.
deep, bold, daring,	fācĭnus, ŏris, *n.*
deep,	altus, a, um, *adj.*
defeat,	clādes, is, *f.*
defend,	dēfendo, i, sum, 3.
defendant,	rēus, i, *m.*
delicate,	tĕnuis, e, *adj.*
delight,	dēlecto, avi, atum, 1.
delightful,	dulcis, suāvis, e, *adj.*
delightfully,	jūcundē, *adv.*
deliver,	lĭbĕro, avi, atum, 1.
demand,	postŭlo, avi, atum, 1.
deny,	nĕgo, avi, atum, 1.
depart,	excēdo, cessi, cessum, 3; migro, ēmigro, avi, atum, 1.
deplore,	dēplōro, avi, atum, 1.
deserve,	mĕreor, ĭtus, 2.
desire,	cŭpio, īvi and ii, ītum, 3.
——, *subs.*,	stŭdium, ii, *n.*; cŭpiditas, ātis, *f.*
despise,	contemno, mpsi, mptum, 3; aspernor, atus, 1.
despot,	tyrannus, i, *m.*
destitute,	ĭnops, ŏpis, *adj.*
destroy,	perdo, didi, ditum, 3.
destruction,	exĭtium, ii, *n.*
destructive,	perniciōsus, a, um, *adj.*
deter,	dēterreo, ui, ĭtum, 2.
determine,	constituo, ŭi, ūtum, 3.

DEVOTE.

devote one's self, ŏpĕram do, dĕdi, dătum, dăre, 1.
devoted to, addictus, a, um, *adj.*
die, mŏrior, mortuus, 3.
difficult, difficilis, e, *adj.*
difficult, somewhat, subdifficilis, e, *adj.*
dig, fŏdio, fōdi, fossum, 3.
diligence, dĭligentia, ae, *f.*
diligent, dĭligens, ntis, *adj.*
dine, coeno, avi, atum, p. 108.
disaster, clādes, is, *f.*
discern, cerno, crēvi, crētum, 3.
discharge, fungor, nctus, 3, p. 90.
discourse, sermo, ōnis, *m.*
discover, dētĕgo, xi, ctum, 3.
disease, morbus, i, *m.*
disembark, *trans.*, expōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum,
disgrace, turpĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.* [3.
disgraceful, turpis, e, *adj.*
disgusts, it, taedet, p. 109.
dishonest, imprŏbus, a, um, *adj.*
dishonesty, fraus, dis, *f.* [3.
dismiss, dīmitto, mīsi, missum,
displease, displĭceo, ui, itum, 2, with *dat.*
disposed, affectus, a, um, *adj.*
distance, longinquitas, ātis, *f.*
distant, longinquus, a, um, *adj.*
—— to be, absum, p. 39.
distinguished, insignis, e; ēgrĕgius, a, um, *adj.*
distrust, diffīdo, īsus, 3, p. 108.
disturb, turbo, avi, atum, 1; mŏveo, mōvi, mōtum,
ditch, fossa, ae, *f.* [2.
divide, sēpăro, avi, atum, 1; dīvĭdo, īsi, īsum, 3.
divine, dīvīnus, a, um, *adj.*
do, făcio, fēci, factum, 3.
dog, cănis, is, *c.*
doubt, dūbito, avi, atum, 1.
doubtful, dūbius, a, um, *adj.*
dove, cŏlumba, ae, *f.*
drag, draw, trăho, xi, ctum, 3.
draw together, contrăho, xi, ctum, 3.
draw up in order, instruo, xi, ctum, 3.
drink, bĭbo, i, ĭtum, 3.
drive out, expello, pŭli, pulsum, 3.
duty, mūnus, ĕris, *n.*
dwell, hăbito, avi, atum, 1.
Eager after, stŭdiōsus, a, um, *adj.* with *gen.*
eager, be, stŭdeo, ui, —, 2.
eagle, aquila, ae, *f.*
ear, auris, is, *f.*
earnestly, vĕhĕmentĕr, *adv.*
earth, terra, ae, *f.*
easily, făcilĕ, *adv.*
easy, făcilis, e, *adj.*
eat, ĕdo, ēdi, ēsum, 3.
educate, ēdŭco, avi, atum, 1.
elegant, ēlĕgans, ntis, *adj.*
elephant, ēlĕphantus, i, *m.*
eloquent, ēlōquens, ntis, *adj.*
embark, nāvem (naves), conscendo, di, sum, 3.
embassador, lēgātus, i, *m.*

FEEBLE.

embroider, pingo, nxi, ctum, 3.
eminent, exīmius, ēgrĕgius, a um, *adj.*
empire, impĕrium, ii, *n.*
employ, ădhĭbeo, ui, itum, 2.
encourage, hortor, atus, 1.
end, fīnis, is, *m.*
end, put to, fīnio, īvi, itum, 4.
endure, pătior, passus, 3; fĕro,
enemy (public), hostis. [p. 102.
——, personal, ĭnimīcus, i, *m.*
engaged, occŭpātus, a, um, *adj.*
enjoy, fruor, ĭtus and ctus, 3, with *abl.*
enmity, ĭnimīcĭtia, ae, *f.*
enough, sătis, *adv.*
enter, intro, avi, atum, 1.
entice, illĭcio, exi, ectum, 3.
entreat, ōro, avi, atum, 1.
envy, invidia, ae, *f.*
epistle, ĕpistŏla, ae, *f.*
esteem, dīligo, exi, ectum, 3.
eternal, aeternus, a, um, *adj.*
Europe, Eurōpa, ae, *f.*
even, aequus, a, um, *adj.*
even, ĕtiam, *conj.*
evening draws on, vesperascit, p. 110.
ever, unquam, *adv.*
every, omnis, e, *adj.*
every day, quŏtīdiē, *adv.*
every one, quisque, quaeque, quodque, and *subst.* quicque (quidque), *pron.*
evident, it is, constat, stĭtit, 1.
evil, an, mălum, i, *n.*
example, exemplum, i, *n.*
excellent, praestans, antis; praestābilis, e, *adj.*
except, praeter, *prep.* with *acc.*
exercise to, exerceo, ui, itum, 2.
exhibit, praebeo, ui, itum, 2.
exhort, hortor, ădhortor, atus,
exile, exĭlium, ii, *n.* [1.
——, live in, exĭlium, ăgo, ēgi, actum, 3.
experienced, pĕrītus, a, um, *adj.*
extend, prōfĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, 3.
eye, ŏcŭlus, i, *m.*
Fable, fābŭla, ae, *f.*
fall, cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, 3.
faith, fĭdes, ei, *f.*
faithful, fĭdēlis, e; fīdus, a, um,
far, longĕ, *adv.* [*adj.*
—— and wide, longē lātēquĕ.
farther, too far, longius, *adv. comp.*
father, păter, tris, *m.*
father-in-law, sŏcer, ĕri, *m.*
fault, culpa, ae, *f.*
fault, find, vitŭpĕro, culpo, avi, atum, 1.
favor, grātia, ae, *f.* [*m.*
fear, mĕtus, us; timor, ōris,
fear, to, mĕtuo, i, ūtum, 3; timeo, ui, —, 2; vĕreor, ĭtus, 2.
feeble, dēbĭlis, e, *adj.*

FEED.

feed on, vescor, —, i, 3.
feel, sentio, si, sum, 4.
feign, simŭlo, avi, atum, 1.
fellow-citizen, cīvis, is, *c.*
fellow-soldier, commilito, ōnis, *m.*
few, paucus, a, um, *adj.*
fidelity, fĭdes, ei, *f.*
field, ăger, gri, *m.*
fierce, fĕrox, ōcis, *adj.*
fiery, made of fire, igneus, a, um, *adj.*
fig, fig-tree, ficus, i, *f.*
fight, pugno, avi, atum, 1.
fight (a battle), committo, mīsi, missum, 3.
find, rĕpĕrio, peri, pertum, invĕnio, vēni, ventum, 4. [atum, 1.
find fault with, culpo, vītŭpĕro, avi,
finish, conficio, fēci, fectum, 3.
finished, perfectus, a, um, *adj.*
fire, ignis, is, *m.*
fire, be on, ardeo, si, sum, 2.
first, *adv.*, primo, primum, *adv.*
first-rate, primārius, a, um, *adj.*
fish, piscis, is, *m.*
fix, fīgo, xi, xum, 3.
flatter, ădŭlor, atus, 1.
flattery, ădŭlātio, ōnis, *f.*
flee, fŭgio, fūgi, fŭgĭtum, 3.
flee to, confŭgio, etc.
fleet, classis, is, *f.*
flesh, căro, carnis, *f.*
flower, flos, ōris, *m.*
follow, sĕquor, secūtus, 3.
follow up, subsĕquor, etc.
folly, stultĭtia, ae, *f.*
foolish, stultus, a, um, *adj.*
foot-soldier, pĕdes, ĭtis, *m.*
for (*prep.*), pro, *prep.* with *abl.*
— (*conj.*), nam, ĕnim, *conj.*
forage, păbŭlor, atus, 1.
forced marches, maxĭma ītinĕra (iter).
forces, cōpiae, arum, *pl. f.*
forehead, frons, tis, *f.*
foresee, prōvĭdeo, vīdi, vīsum, 2.
forget, oblīviscor, lītus, 3, with
form (a plan), Ineo, p. 106. [*gen.*
former, prīstĭnus, a, um, prior, us, *adj.*
formerly, quondam, *adv.*
fortification, munīmentum, i, *n.*; moenia, um, *pl. n.*
fortify, mūnio, īvi, ītum, 4.
fortune, fortūna, ae, *f.*
fortunate, fēlix, īcis, *adj.*
fountain, fons, ntis, *m.*
frame, to, fabrĭco, avi, atum, 1.
free, lĭber, ĕra, ĕrum, *adj.*
freedom, lĭbertas, ātis, *f.*
freely, lĭbĕrē, *adv.*
friend, ămicus, i, *m.*
friendship, ămīcĭtia, ae, *f.*
frighten, terreo, ui, itum, 2.
from, ā (ăb), dĕ, *prep.* with
fruit, fructus, us, *m.* [*abl.*
full, plēnus, a, um, *adj.*
function, mūnus, ĕris, *n.*

HAVE.

funeral, fūnus, ĕris, *n.*
furnish, praebeo, ui, itum, 2.
gain, păro, avi, atum, 1.
game, lūdus, i, *m.*
garden, hortus, i, *m.*
garment, vestis, is, *f.*; vestīmentum, i, *n.*
gate, porta, ae, *f.*
gather, lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, 3.
—— together, contrăho, xi, ctum, 3.
Gaul, Gallia, ae, *f.*
gaze, tueor, ĭtus and tūtus, 2.
general, imperātor, ōris, *m.*
get, gain, păro, avi, atum, 1; ădĭpiscor, eptus, 3.
get back, rĕcŭpĕro, avi, atum, 1.
get together, cōgo, cōēgi, cōactum, 3.
gift, dōnum, i, *n.*
girl, pŭella, ae, *f.*
give, do, dĕdi, dātum, dăre, 1.
glide, lăbor, lapsus, 3.
glory, glōria, ae, *f.*
go, eo, *see* p. 105.
— in, out, etc., *see* comps. of eo, p. 106.
— to see, viso, i, um, 3.
God, Deus, i, *m.*, p. 26.
goddess, dea, ae, *f.*
gods, of the, dīvīnus, a, um, *adj.*
gold, aurum, i, *n.*
golden, aureus, a, um, *adj.*
good, bŏnus, prōbus, a, um,
good, *subs.*, bŏnum, i, *n.* [*adj.*
good, do, prōsum, p. 39.
goods, bŏna, ōrum, *pl. n.*
govern, gŭberno, avi, atum, 1.
grandfather, ăvus, i, *m.*
grass, grāmen, ĭnis, *n.*
great, magnus, a, um, *adj.*
great, how, quantus, a, um, *rel. adj.*
greatly, magnŏpĕrĕ, *adv.*
Greece, Graecia, ae, *f.*
Greek, Grecian, Graecus, a, um, *adj.*
grief, dŏlor, ōris, *m.*
grieves, it, piget, p. 109.
grievously, grăvĭtĕr, *adv.*
ground, hŭmus, i, *f.*
guard, custōdio, īvi, ītum, 4.
guardian, custos, ōdis, *m.*
guilt, scĕlus, ĕris, *n.*
guilty, noxius, a, um, *adj.*
Habit, consuētūdo, ĭnis, *f.*
hails, it, grandĭnat, p. 110.
hand, mănus, us, *f.*
hand down, trādo, prōdo, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3.
handle, tracto, avi, atum, 1.
happen, fio, p. 107.
happy, bĕātus, a, um, *adj.*
happily, bĕātē, *adv.*
harass, vexo, avi, atum, 1.
harbor, portus, us, *m.*
hard, durus, a, um, *adj.*
hardship, lăbor, ōris, *m.*
hare, lĕpus, ŏris, *m.*
hasten, contendo, di, sum and
hatred, ŏdium, ii, *n.* [tum, 3.
have, hăbeo, ui, itum, 2.

HAVE.

have, rather, prefer, } mālo, p. 99.
head, căpŭt, ĭtis, *n.*
——, be at the, praesum, p. 39.
health, sălus, ūtis, *f.*
health, be in, văleo, ui, ĭtum, 2.
heap up, extruo, xi, ctum, 3.
hear, audio, īvi, ītum, 4.
hearing, audītus, us, *m.*
heart, cŏr, dis, *n.*
heat, călor, ōris, *m.*
heaven, coelum, i, *n.*
heavens, belonging to, } coelestis, e, *adj.*
heavily, grăvĭter, *adv.*
heavy, grăvis, e, *adj.*
help, adjŭvo, jūvi, jūtum, 1.
helpless, ĭners, ertis, *adj.*
high, altus, a, um, *adj.*
——, very, praealtus, a, um, *adj.*
highest, summus, a, um, *adj. sup.*
his, hers, sŭus, a, um, *adj. pron.*
hold a levy, dĕlectum hŭbeo, ui, ĭtum, 2.
hold together, contĭneo, ui, entum, 2.
honesty, prŏbĭtas, ātis, *f.*
honor, hŏnor, ōris, *m.*
hope, spĕro, avi, atum, 1.
——, *subs.*, spes, ĕi, *f.*
hoped for, sperātus, a, um, *adj.*
horn, cornu, us, *n.*
horse, ĕquus, i, *m.*
horse-soldier ĕquĕs, ĭtis, *m.*
hostage, obsĕs, ĭdis, *c.*
hour, hōra, ae, *f.*
house, dŏmus, *see* p. 26.
how great, quantus, a, um, *rel. adj.*
how many, quŏt, *indecl. rel. adj.*
human, hūmānus, a, um, *adj.*
hunger, fāmes, is, *f.*
hunt, vēnor, atus, 1. [*dat.*
hurt, harm, nŏceo, ui, ĭtum, 2, with
hurtful, noxius, a, um, *adj.*
hurtful, to be, obsum, p. 39.
husbandman, agrĭcŏla, ae, *m.*
if, sī, *conj.*
if, as, quāsī, *conj.*
ignorance, ignōrātio, ōnis, *f.*
ignorant of (be), ignōro, avi, atum, 1.
ill, *adj.*, mălus, a, um, *adj.*
——, *adv.*, mălĕ, *adv.*
illness, morbus, i, *m.*
ill will, invĭdia, ae, *f.*
ill wishing, malĕvŏlus, a, um, *adj.*
image, imāgo, ĭnis, *f.*
imitate, ĭmĭtor, atus, 1.
immediately, stātim, *adv.*
immense, ingens, tis, *adj.*
immortal, immortālis, e, *adj.*
immortality, immortālĭtas, ātis, *f.*
impair, infringo, frēgi, fractum,
impiety, impious, nĕfas, *indec. subs.* [3.
improve, ēmendo, avi, atum, 1.
imprudence, imprūdentia, ae, *f.*
in, into, in, *prep.* with *acc.* and
indeed, quidem, *conj.* [*abl.*

LAY SIEGE TO.

indolence, ignavia, ae; segnĭties, ēi, *f.*
indulge, indulgeo, si, sum, 2, with *dat.*
industrious, industrius, a, um, *adj.*
infamous, infāmis, e, *adj.*
infamy, infāmia, ae, *f.*
infantry, pĕdĭtātus, us, *m.*
inferior, infĕrior, us, *adj. comp.*
infinite, infīnītus, a, um, *adj.*
infirm, dēbĭlis, e, *adj.*
inhabitant, incŏla, ae, *c.*
injure, obsum, p. 39; nŏceo, ui, ĭtum, 2, with *dat.*
injurious, noxius, a, um, *adj.*
innumerable, innūmĕrus, a, um, *adj.*
inquire, rĕgo, avi, atum, 1; quaero, quaesīvi, quaesītum, 3.
institute, instĭtuo, ui, ūtum, 3.
instrument, instrūmentum, i, *n.*
integrity, prŏbĭtas, ātis, *f.*
intellect, mens, tis, *f.*
intercept, intercĭdo, si, sum, 3.
invent, rĕpĕrio, peri, pertum, 4.
iron, ferrum, i, *n.*
island, insŭla, ae, *f.*
Italy, Ităl̆ia, ae, *f.*
its, sŭus, a, um, *adj. pron.*
Join, jungo, xi, ctum, 3.
join (battle), proelium committo, mī si, missum, 3.
journey, ĭter, ĭtinĕris, *n.*
joy, gaudium, ii, *n.*
joyful, laetus, a, um, *adj.*
judge, judex, icis, *m.*
——, *verb*, jūdico, avi, atum, 1.
judgment, jūdĭcium, ii, *n.*
just, justus, a, um, *adj.*
justly, justĕ, *adv.*
Keen, ācer, cris, cre, *adj.*
keep off, prŏhĭbeo, ui, ĭtum, 2.
keep guard, vĭgĭlo, avi, atum, 1.
kill, interfĭcio, fēci, fectum,
kind, bĕnignus, a, um, *adj.* [3.
kindly, bĕnignĕ, *adv.*
king, rex, rēgis, *m.*
——, be, regno, avi, atum, 1.
kingdom, regnum, i, *n.*
knee, gĕnu, us, *n.*
know, scio, īvi and ii, ītum, 4.
—— not, nescio, etc. [*f.*
knowledge, scientia, prūdentia, ae,
——, without, clam, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*
known, nōtus, a, um, *adj.*
Labor, lăbor, ōris, *m.*
lake, lăcus, us, *m.*
lament over, dēplōro, avi, atum, 1.
land, terra, ae, *f.*; ĭger, gri, [*m.*
language, lingua, ae, *f.*
large, magnus, a, um, *adj.*
last day, suprēmus dies, *m.*
last, at, dŏmum, *adv.*
Latin, Lătīnus, a, um, *adj.*
law, lex, lēgis, *f.*
lay siege to, obsĭdeo, ēdi, essum, 2

LAY WASTE.

lay waste, vasto, avi, atum, 1.
lead, dūco, xi, ctum, 3.
lead across, transdūco, xi, ctum, 3.
lead out, ēdūco, etc., 3.
leader, dux, dŭcis, *c.*
learn, disco, dĭdĭci, —, 3.
—— = ascertain, cognosco, ōvi, ĭtum, 3.
learn in addition, addisco, etc., 3.
learned, doctus, a, um, *adj.*
leave, rĕlinquo, lĭqui, ictum, 3.
leg, crūs, ūris, *n.*
legion, lĕgio, ōnis, *f.*
length, longitūdo, ĭnis, *f.*
lest, nē, p. 130.
lest, and, nĕvĕ.
letter of the alphabet, lĭtĕra, ae, *f.*, p. 157.
letter (an epistle), lĭtĕrae, arum, ĕpistŭla,
letters, literature, lĭtĕrae, arum, *f.* [ae, *f.*
levy, dĭlectus, us, *m.*
liar, lying, mendax, ācis, *adj.*
lictor, lictor, ōris, *m.*
lie (on the ground), jăceo, ui, —, 2.
lie (to speak falsely), mentior, ītus, 4.
lieutenant, lĕgātus, i, *m.*
life, vīta, ae, *f.*
light, *adj.*, lēvis, e, *adj.*
light, *subs.*, lux, lūcis, *f.*
light, it becomes, lūcescit, p. 110.
lightning, fulmen, ĭnis, *n.*
like, sĭmĭlis, e, *adj.*
likely, vērīsĭmĭlis, e, *adj.*
likeness, īmāgo, ĭnis, *f.*
limit, fīnis, *m.*
limit, to, fīnio, īvi, ītum, 4.
line of battle, ăcies, ēi, *f.*
lion, leo, ōnis, *m.*
little, parvus, a, um, *adj.*
live, vīvo, vixi, victum, 3.
live on, vescor, i, 3.
live in exile, exŭlium, ago, ēgi, ac-
Livy, Līvius, ii, *m.* [tum, 3.
load, ŏnus, ĕris, *n.*
lofty, celsus, a, um, *adj.*
long, *adj.*, longus, a, um, *adj.*
long, *adv.*, dlū, *adv.*
look at, specto, avi, atum, 1.
look upon or into, intueor, tuitus and tŭ-
looks, vultus, us, *m.* [tus, 2.
loosen, solvo, solvi, sōlūtum, 3.
lord, dŏminus, i, *m.*
lot, sors, rtis, *f.*
love, ămo, avi, atum, 1; dīlĭ-
love in return, go, lexi, lectum, 3.
lovely, rĕdămo, avi, atum, 1.
low, ămābilis, e, *adj.*
lower, hŭmĭlis, e, *adj.*
luckily, infĕrior, us, *adj. comp.*
lucky, fēlĭcĭtĕr, *adv.*
Macedonian, fēlix, īcis, *adj.*
made, Măcĕdo, ōnis, *m.*
madness, factus, affectus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.*
magistrate, fŭror, ōris, *m.*
magnificent, măgistrātus, us, *m.*
maiden, magnĭfĭcus, a, um, *adj.*
virgo, ĭnis, *f.*

NEXT.

maintain, servo, āvi, ātum, 1.
make, făcio, fēci, factum, 3.
man, hŏmo, *c.*; vir, viri, *m.*
manage, gĕro, gessi, gestum, 3.
manifest, manifestus, a, um, *adj.*
maniple, manĭpŭlus, i, *m.*
manner, mos, mōris, *m.*
many, multus, a, um, *adj.*
many, how, quŏt, *indec. rel. adj.*
many, very, permulti, ae, a, *adj.*
marble, marmor, ŏris, *n.*
market-place, fōrum, i, *n.* [tri, *m.*
master, dŏminus, i, măgister,
measure, to, mĕtior, mensus, 4.
meditate, mĕdĭtor, atus, 1.
meet, ŏbeo, īvi and ii, ĭtum,
mellow, mollis, e, *adj.* [4.
membrane, membrāna, ae, *f.*
memorable, mĕmŏrābilis, e, *adj.*
memory, mĕmŏria, ae, *f.*
metal, mĕtallum, i, *n.*
migrate, migro, avi, atum, 1.
mild, mītis, e, *adj.*
milk, lac, lactis, *n.*
mind, mens, ntis, *f.*
mindful, mĕmor, ŏris, *adj.*
miserable, miser, a, um, *adj.*
mistake, error, ōris, *m.*
——, make a, erro, avi, atum, 1.
mistress, dŏmĭna, ae, *f.*
money, pĕcūnia, ae, *f.*
month, mensis, is, *m.*
monument, mōnŭmentum, i, *n.*
moon, lūna, ae, *f.*
more, plus, plūris, *neut. adj.*, in *pl.* plūres, a.
mortal, mortālis, e, *adj.*
mother, māter, tris, *f.*
mound, agger, ĕris, *m.*
mount, to, conscendo, di, sum, 3.
mountain, mons, ntis, *m.*
mouth, ōs, ōris, *n.*
move, mŏveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2.
much, multus, a, um, *adj.*
multitude, multitūdo, ĭnis, *f.*
my (mine), meus, a, um, *adj. pron.*
name, nōmen, ĭnis, *n.*
narrow, angustus, a, um, *adj.*
native land, patria, ae, *f.*
nature, nātūra, ae, *f.*
naval, nāvālis, e, *adj.*
near to, *prep.*, prŏpe, *acc.*
near, *adj.*, prŏpinquus, a, um, *adj.*
necessary, nĕcessārius, a, um, *adj.*
necessity, nĕcessĭtas, ātis, *f.*
need, ŏpus, *indec. subs.* with *abl.* and *adj.*
needful, nĕcessārius, a, um, *adj.*
needle, ăcus, us, *f.*
neither, neuter, tra, trum, *indef. pron.*
neither, nor, nĕque, nec, *conj.*
nest, nīdus, i, *m.*
net, rēte, is, *n.*
never, nunquam, *adv.*
new, nŏvus, a, um, *adj.* [*sup.*
next, proxĭmus, a, um, *adj.*

NIGHT.

night, nox, ctis, *f.*
nightingale, luscinia, ae, *f.*
no, none, nullus, a, um, *indef.*
noble, nōbilis, e, *adj.* [*pron.*
nobody, no one, nēmo, inis, *c.*
not, nōn, haud, *adv.*
nothing, nihil, *indec. subs.*
nourish, nutrio, īvi, ītum, 4.
now, nunc, jam, *adv.*
number, nŭmĕrus, i, *m.*
nurture, nutrio, īvi, ītum, 4.
Oak, quercus, us, *f.*
oath, jusjūrandum, *see* p. 26.
obey, pāreo, ui, itum, 2; ŏbĕdio īvi, ītum, 4, with *dat.*
object, rĕcūso, avi, atum, 1.
obscure, obscūrus, a, um, *adj.*
observe (carefully), contemplor, atus, 1.
obtain, păro, avi, atum, 1; ădĭpiscor, eptus, 3.
——— possession of, pŏtĭor, ītus, 4.
ocean, ōcĕănus, i, *m.*
often, saepĕ, *adv.*
often, very, saepissimĕ, *adv.*
oftentimes, saepĕnŭmĕro, *adv.*
old, sĕnex, sĕnis (of persons only), vĕtus, ĕris, *adj.*
old age, sĕnectūs, ūtis, *f.*
olden, antīquus, a, um, *adj.*
one, ūnus, a, um, *adj.*
one, of the two, alter, a, um, *indef.*
only, sōlum, *adv.* [*pron.*
onset, impĕtus, us, *m.*
oppose, resisto, stĭti, stĭtum, 3; oppugno, avi, atum, 1, with *dat.*
oracle, ōrācŭlum, i, *n.*
oration, ōrātio, ōnis, *f.*
orator, ōrātor, ōris, *m.*
order, jŭbeo, jussi, jussum, 2.
ornament, ornāmentum, i, *n.*; dĕcus, ŏris, *n.*
other, of two, alter, a, um, *indef. pron.*
overcome, sŭpĕro, āvi, ātum, 1.
owe, ought, dĕbeo, ui, itum, 2.
owing, it is, per(te) stat.
ox, bos, bŏvis.
Pace, passus, us, *m.*
Pain, dŏlor, ōris, *m.*
pains, to take, cūro, avi, atum, 1.
paint, pingo, nxi, ctum, 3.
parent, părens, ntis, *c.*
part, pars, tis, *f.*
partner, sŏcius, ii, *m.* [ītum, 4.
pass by, over, praetĕreo, īvi and ii,
——— away, lăbor, lapsus, 3.
——— through, transeo, p. 106.
——— (come to), fio, factus, fĭĕri, p. 107.
passion, cŭpiditas, ātis, *f.*
past, praetĕritus, a, um, *adj.*
path, via, ae, *f.*
patience, pătientia, ae, *f.*
patiently, pătienter, *adv.*
peace, pax, pācis, *f.*
peacock, pāvo, ōnis, *m.*

PROTECT.

pear, pirum, i, *n.*
pear-tree, pirus, i, *f.*
pearl, margărīta, ae, *f.*
perceive, sentio, si, sum, 4.
perfect, perfectus, a, um, *adj.*
perish, pĕreo, intĕreo, īvi and ii, itum, 4.
persuade, persuādeo, si, sum, with *dat.*
perverse, perversus, a, um, *adj.*
philosopher, philŏsŏphus, i, *m.*
pillage, dīripio, ui, eptum, 3.
pitch a camp, castra pōno, pŏsui, itum, 3.
pity, misereor, ĭtus and rtus, 2; miseret, p. 109.
place, lŏcus, i, *m.* [with *gen.*
place, to, collŏco, avi, atum, 1.
plain, plānities, ēi, *f.*
plan, consĭlium, ii, *n.*
plant, planta, ae, *f.*
play, lūdo, si, sum, 3.
pleasant, jūcundus, a, um, *adj.*
please, plăcĕo, ui, itum, 2, with
please, it, plăcet, p. 109. [*dat.*
pleasing, grātus, a, um, *adj.*
pleasure, vōluptas, ātis, *f.*
plenty, cōpia, ae, *f.*
plum, prūnum, i, *n.*
plum-tree, prūnus, i, *f.*
plunder, *subs.*, praeda, ae, *f.*
——— *verb*, dīripio, ui, eptum, 3.
poem, carmen, inis, *n.*
poet, poēta, ae, *m.*
Pompey, Pompēius, ii, *m.*
poor, paupĕr, ĕris, *adj.*
portrait, imāgo, inis, *f.*
post, stātio, ōnis, *f.*
poverty, paupertas, ātis, *f.*
power, pōtentia, ae, pōtestas, ātis, *f.*
powerful, pōtens, tis, *adj.*
praise, *subs.*, laus, dis, *f.*
———, *verb*, laudo, avi, atum, 1.
precious, cārus, a, um, *adj.*
prefer, praefĕro, p. 104; mālo, p. 99.
prepare, păro, avi, atum, 1.
prepared, părātus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.*
presence of, in, cōram, *prep.* with *abl.*
present, praesens, tis, *adj.*
present, to be, adsum, p. 39.
preserve, servo, conservo, avi, atum, 1. [3.
press, prĕmo, pressi, pressum,
press upon, opprĭmo, pressi, pressum, 3.
pretense, sĭmŭlātio, ōnis, *f.*
prevent, obsto, stĭti, stĭtum, 3.
probable, verīsimilis, e, *adj.*
prohibit, prōhĭbeo, ui, itum, 2.
promise, prōmitto, mīsi, missum, 3; pollĭceor, ĭtus, 2.
properly, prŏbĕ, rectĕ, *adv.*
prostrate, to, affligo, xi, ctum, 3.
protect, tueor, ĭtus and tūtus, 2.

PROVIDE.

provide, prōvĭdeo, ĭdi, īsum, 2.
provisions, commeātus, uum, *m.*
prudence, prūdentia, ae, *f.*
prudent, prudens, tis, *adj.*
public, publĭcus, a, um, *adj.*
punish, pūnio, īvi, ītum, 4.
punishment, poena, ae, *f.*
pupil, discĭpŭlus, i, *m.*
pursuit, stŭdium, ii, *n.*
put end to, fĭnio, īvi, ītum, 4.
put to death, interfĭcio, fēci, fectum,
put to flight, fŭgo, avi, atum, 1. [3.
power of, in the, pĕnes, *prep.* with *acc.*
Quality, good, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
queen, rēgīna, ae, *f.*
quiet, tranquillus, a, um, *adj.*
quit, excēdo, cessi, cessum, 3.
Race, gĕnus, ĕris, *n.*
rainbow, arcus coelestis, *m.*
rains, it, plŭit, p. 110.
raise (forces), compăro, avi, atum, 1.
rapacious, răpax, ācis, *adj.*
rapid, răpĭdus, a, um, *adj.*
rare, rārus, a, um, *adj.*
rashness, tĕmĕrĭtas, ātis, *f.*
rather, have, mālo, p. 99.
read, lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, 3.
read aloud, rĕcito, avi, atum, 1.
read through, perlĕgo, lēgi, lectum, 3.
ready, părātus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.*
reason, rătio, ōnis, *f.*
receive, accĭpio, cēpi, ceptum, 3.
recklessness, tĕmĕrĭtas, ātis, *f.*
recover, rĕcŭpĕro, avi, atum, 1.
refresh, recreo, avi, atum, 1.
refuse, recūso, avi, atum, 1.
reign, regno, avi, atum, 1.
reject, aspernor, atus, 1.
rejoice, gaudeo, *see* p. 108.
relate, narro, avi, atum, 1.
remain, mĭneo, mansi, mansum,
remain, over, sŭpersum, p. 39. [2.
remember, rĕmĭniscor, —, 3.
remembered, to be, mĕmŏrābilis, e, *adj.*
render assistance, auxĭlium fero, tŭli, lātum, ferre, 3 *irr.*
renowned, clārus, a, um, *adj.*
repents, it, poenĭtet, p. 109.
resist, resisto, stĭti, stĭtum, 3, with *dat.*
resolve, constĭtuo, ŭi, ūtum, 3.
respect, to, observo, avi, atum, 1.
rest, the, cēterī, ae, a, *adj.*
restrain, cŏercĕo, ui, itum, 2.
retire, cēdo, concēdo, cessi, cessum, 3.
return, rĕdeo, p. 106; rĕverto, ti, sum; rĕvertor, sus, 3.
reverence, to, vĕnĕror, atus, 1.
reward, praemium, ii, *n.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, i, *m.*
Rhodes, Rhŏdus, i, *f.*
Rhone, Rhŏdănus, i, *m.*
rich, dīves, ĭtis, *adj.*
riches, dīvĭtiae, arum, *pl. f.*
ride, to, vĕhor, vectus, 3.

right, rectus, a, um, *adj.*
rightly, prŏbē, rectē, *adv.*
rise, to, ŏrior, ortus, 4.
river, flŭvius, ii, *m.*; flūmen, ĭnis, *n.*
robber, latro, ōnis, *m.*
rock, rūpes, is, *f.*
Roman, Rōmānus, a, um, *adj.*
Rome, Roma, ae, *f.*
root, rādix, ĭcis, *f.*
rose, rōsa, ae, *f.*
rough, rugged, asper, a, um, *adj.*
round, circum, *prep.* with *acc.*
rule, rĕgo, xi, ctum, 3. [3.
run, curro, cŭcurri, cursum,
rush together, convŏlo, avi, atum, 1.
Sacred, sācer, cra, crum, *adj.*
sacrifice, to, immŏlo, avi, atum, 1.
sad, tristis, e, *adj.*
safe, tūtus, a, um, *adj.*
safety, sălus, ūtis, *f.*
sagacious, prūdens, tis, *adj.*
sailor, nauta, ae, *m.*
sake of, for the, grātiā, causā, *abl.* with
Sallust, Sallustius, ii, *m.* [*gen.*
same, īdem, ĕădem, ĭdem, *adj. pron.*
sanguinary, ātrox, ōcis, *adj.*
save, servo, conservo, avi,
savor of, săpio, ŭi, 3. [atum, 1.
say, dīco, xi, ctum, 3.
scarcely, vix, *adv.*
scent, ŏdor, ōris, *m.*
scholar, discĭpŭlus, i, *m.*
school, schŏla, ae, *f.*
Scythian, Scўtha, ae, *m.*
sea, mărĕ, is, *n.*
—, of the, mărīnus, a, um, *adj.*
seat, sēdes, is, *f.*
second, sĕcundus, a, um; alter, a, um, *adj.*
secretly, clam, *adv.*
see, vĭdeo, ĭdi, īsum, 2; cerno, crēvi, crētum, 3.
see, go to, vīso, i, um, 3.
seeing, vīsus, us, *m.*
seek, quaero, quaesīvi, quaesītum, 3.
seem, vĭdeor, vīsus, 2.
seize, comprehendo, di, sum, 3; răpio, ŭi, tum, 3.
seize on, arrīpio, ui, eptum, 3.
seldom, rāro, *adv.*
senate, sĕnātus, us, *m.*
send, mitto, mīsi, missum, 3.
—— on before, praemitto, etc.
—— together, committo, etc.
sense, sensus, us, *m.*
separate, sēpăro, avi, atum, 1; sēcerno, crēvi, crētum,
servant, minister, tri, *m.* [3.
serviceable, ūtilis, e, *adj.*
——, to be, prōsum, p. 39.
set out, prŏfĭciscor, fectus, 3.
— (an example), praebeo, ui, itum, 2.
severe, sĕvērus, a, um, grăvis, [e, *adj.*
severely, grăvĭter, *adv.*

SEVERELY.

SHAKE.

shake, quăttio, —, quassum, 3.
shames, it, pŭdet, p. 109.
share, to, partior, ītus, 4.
sharp, ăcūtus, a, um, *adj.*
sharpen, ăcuo, ŭi, ūtum, 3.
shield, scūtum, i, *n.*
shine, fulgeo, si, sum, 2.
ship, nāvis, is, *f.*
shore, lītus, ŏris, *n.*
short, brĕvis, e, *adj.*
shortly, mox, *adv.*
shout, clāmo, avi, atum, 1.
shut off, interclūdo, si, sum, 3.
Sicily, Sicĭlia, ae, *f.*
sick, aeger, gra, grum, *adj.*
side with, adsum, p. 39.
side, on this, cis, citrā, *prep.* with
siege, obsĭdio, ōnis, *f.* [*acc.*
sign, signum, i, *n.*
silence, silentium, ii, *n.*
silent, be, tăceo, ui, itum, 2.
silver, argentum, i, *n.*
sing, canto, avi, atum, 1; căno, cĕcĭni, cantum,
sister, sŏror, ōris, *f.* [3.
sit, sĕdeo, ēdi, essum, 2.
skilful, skilled in, perītus, a, um, sŏlers, rtis, *adj.*
skin (of animal), pellis, is, *f.*
slaughter, caedes, is, *f.*
slave, servus, i, *m.*
slavery, servitūs, ūtis, *f.*
slay, interfĭcio, fēci, fectum, occido, cīdi, cisum, 3.
sleep, somnus, i, *m.*
slender, tenuis, e, *adj.*
slothfulness, segnĭtĭes, ēi, *f.*
sluggish, segnis, e; ignāvus, a, um, *adj.*
small, parvus, a, um, *adj.*
smell, ŏdor, ōris, *m.*
snow, nix, nivis, *f.*
snows, it, ningit, p. 110.
so, ĭtă, tam, *adv.*
soft, mollis, e, *adj.*
soften, mollio, ivi, ītum, 4.
soldier, miles, ĭtis, *c.*
some, nonnullus, a, um, *adj.*
some one, some thing, ălĭquis, ălĭquĭd, *indef. pron.*
some time, quondam, *adv.*
sometimes, nonnunquam, *adv.*
son, fĭlius, ii, *m.*; *voc.* fīlī.
son-in-law, gĕner, ĕri, *m.*
song, carmen, ĭnis, *n.*; can-
soon, mox, *adv.* [tus, us, *m.*
soon as, sīmŭl atquĕ (ac), *conj.*
sorrow, dŏlor, ōris, *m.*
soul, ănĭmus, i, *m.*
sound, sŏnĭtus, us, *m.*
sovereignty, dŏmĭnātus, us, *m.*
sow, sĕro, sēvi, sătum, 3.
speak, lŏquor, lŏcūtus, 3.
——, to, allŏquor, etc.
speech, n, ōrātio, ōnis, *f.* [tum, 3.
spend life, aetātem ago, ēgi, ac-
spirited, fĕrox, ōcis, *adj.*

THERE.

splendid, splendĭdus, a, um, *adj.*
spring, vĕr, vĕris, *n.*
sprout, planta, ae, *f.*
spur, calcar, ăris, *n.*
spy out, spĕcŭlor, atus, 1.
stag, cervus, i, *m.*
stand, sto, stĕti, statum, 1.
star, stella, ae, *f.*
state, cīvĭtas, ātis, *f.*
station, stătio, ōnis, *f.*
statue, ĭmāgo, ĭnis, *f.*
steep, arduus, a, um, *adj.*
stern, atrox, ōcis, *adj.*
stone, lăpis, ĭdis, *m.*
stone, of, lăpĭdeus, a, um, *adj.*
storm, tempestas, ātis, *f.*
storm, take by, expugno, avi, atum, 1.
story, fābŭla, ae, *f.*
straight, rectus, a, um, *adj.*
strength, vis, *f.*, *see* p. 26.
strengthen, firmo, avi, atum, 1.
strive, nītor, xus, 3.
—— hard, cĕnītor, etc.
strong, vălĭdus, a, um, *adj.*
——, make, firmo, avi, atum, 1.
study, stŭdium, ii, *n.*
——, to, stŭdeo, ui, —, 2, with
successful, fēlix, ĭcis, *adj.* [*dat.*
sudden, sūbĭtus, a, um, *adj.*
suddenly, sūbĭto, *adv.*
suffer, pătior, passus, 3.
sufficiently, sătis, *adv.*
summer, aestas, ātis, *f.*
sun, sōlis, *m.* [p. 108.
sup, coeno, avi, atum, 1, *see*
supplies, commeātūs, ūum, *m.*
surround, cingo, xi, ctum, 3.
survive, sŭpersum, p. 39. [108.
swear, jūro, avi, atum, 1, *see* p.
sweet, dulcis, suāvis, e, *adj.*
swell, intŭmesco, tŭmŭi, 3.
swift, cĕlĕr, ĕris, re; vŏlūcer, cris, cre, *adj.*
sword, glădĭus, ii, *m.*
Syracuse, Sўrācūsae, arum, *f.*
Table, mensa, ae, *f.*
take, căpio, cēpi, captum, 3.
tall, celsus, a, um, *adj.*
taste, to, gusto, avi, atum, 1.
tax, vectīgal, ălis, *n.*
teach, dŏceo, ui, ctum, 2.
teacher, măgister, tri, *m.*
tell, dīco, xi, ctum, 3.
tempest, tempestas, ātis, *f.*
temple, templum, i, *n.*
tender, tĕnĕr, a, um, *adj.*
tent, tăbernācŭlum, i, *n.*
terrify, terreo, ui, ĭtum, 2.
territories, fīnes, ĭum, *m.*
terror, terror, ōris, *m.*
that, *pron.*, iste, ille, is, p. 43-4.
——, *conj.*, ŭt, p. 130.
—— not, nĕ, quīn, p. 130.
their own, sŭus, a, um, *adj. pron.*
then, tum, *adv.*
then indeed, tum dēmum.
there, ibi, *adv.*

THIN.

thin, tĕnuis, e, *adj.*
thing, res, ei, *f.*
think, pŭto, cōgito, avi, atum,
thither, eō, *adv.* [1.
through, pĕr, *prep.* with *acc.*
throw a bridge over a river, flūmen ponte jungo, junxi, nctum, 3.
thunderbolt, fulmen, inis, *n.*
thunders, it, tŏnăt, p. 110.
thus, ĭtă, *adv.*
tiger, tigris, is and idis, *c.*
time, tempus, ŏris, *n.*
timid, timĭdus, a, um, *adj.*
to, ăd, *prep.* with *acc.*
too, too much, nimis, *adv.*
tongue, lingua, ae, *f.*
torture, crŭcĭlātus, us, *m.*
toward, versus, adversus, *prep.*
tower, turris, is, *f.* [with *acc.*
town, oppĭdum, i, *n.*
train up, ērŭdio, īvi, ītum, 4.
trained, ērŭdītus, a, um, *part.*
tree, arbor, ŏris, *f.* [and *adj.*
triumph, triumpho, avi, atum, 1.
trouble, *verb*, mŏveo, mōvi, mōtum,
——, *subs.*, aerumna, ae, *f.* [2.
troublesome, mŏlestus, a, um, *adj.*
Troy, Trōja, ae, *f.*
true, vērus, a, um, *adj.*
trust, fido, p. 108.
try, expĕrior, rtus, 4.
turn back, rĕverto, ti, sum, and tor,
tyrant, tyrannus, i, *m.* [sus, 3.
Unable, am, nōqueo, īvi and ii, ītum,
unbecoming, it is, dēdĕcĕt, p. 109. [4.
unbounded, infīnītus, a, um, *adj.*
unbreakfasted, impransus, a, um, *adj.*
uncertain, incertus, a, um, *adj.*
under, sŭb, subtĕr, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.* [4.
undergo, sŭbeo, īvi and ii, ītum,
understand, intellĭgo, lexi, lectum, 3.
undertake, suscĭpio, cēpi, ceptum, 3.
undone, infectus, a, um, *adj.*
unfriendly, inimīcus, a, um, *adj.*
unjust, injustus, a, um, *adj.*
unjustly, injustē, *adv.*
unlearned, indoctus, a, um, *adj.*
unless, nisi, *conj.*
unlike, dissīmĭlis, e, *adj.*
unskillful, impĕrītus, a, um, *adj.*
unwilling, to be, nōlo, p. 99.
upper, sŭpĕrior, us, *adj. comp.*
upright, prŏbus, a, um, *adj.*
use, to, ūtor, ūsus, 3, with *abl.*
useful, ūtĭlis, e, *adj.*
utmost, summus, a, um, *adj.*
Valley, vallis, is, *f.* [*sup.*
valor, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
various, vărius, a, um, *adj.*
vehemently, vehĕmentĕr, *adv.*
verse, versus, us, *m.*
vex, vexo, avi, atum, 1.
vexes, it, piget, p. 109.
victim, hostia, victima, ae, *f.*
victory, victōria, ae, *f.*
vigorous, strēnŭus, a, um, *adj.*

WISE.

vigorously, strēnŭē, *adv.*
virtue, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
visit, vīso, i, um, 3.
voice, vox, vōcis, *f.*
vulture, vultur, ŭris, *m.*
Wage, to, gĕro, gessi, gestum, 3.
wake (*intrans.*), vigĭlo, avi, atum, 1.
walk, take a walk, ambŭlo, avi, atum, 1.
wall, mūrus, i, *m.*
wanting, to be, dĕsum, p. 39.
war, bellum, i, *n.*
warlike, bellĭcōsus, a, um, *adj.*
warm, călĭdus, a, um, *adj.*
waste, to lay, vasto, avi, atum, 1.
watch, to, vĭgĭlo, avi, atum, 1.
water, ăqua, ae, *f.*
——, to fetch, aquor, atus, 1.
way, in that, ĭtă, *adv.*
——, to be in the, obsum, p. 39.
weakness, infirmĭtas, ātis, *f.*
wealthy, ŏpŭlentus, a, um, *adj.*
weapon, tēlum, i, *n.*
wearies, it, taedet, p. 109.
weep, fleo, ēvi, ētum, 2.
well, bĕnĕ, *adv.*
——, to be, vălĕo, ui, ĭtum, 2.
well-wishing, bĕnĕvŏlus, a, um, *adj.*
west, occidens, ntis, *m.*
whale, bālaena, ae, *f.*
what, quis, quae, quĭd and quŏd, *inter.* and *indef. pron.*
what sort, of, quālis, e, *rel. adj.*
when, quando, *inter. adv.*; quum, *adv.* and *conj.*
whether, utrum, *conj.*
which of two, ŭter, tra, trum, *adj.*
while, dum, *adv.* [*pron.*
while drinking, etc. inter bĭbendum, etc.
white, albus, a, um, *adj.*
whither, quo, *rel. adv.*
who, quī, quae, quŏd, *rel. pr.*; quis, quae, quĭd or quŏd, *inter. pron.*
whole, tōtus, a, um, *adj.*
why, cur, quārē, *adv.*
wicked, imprŏbus, a, um; nēquam, *indecl. adj.*
wickedness, scĕlus, ĕris, *n.*
wide, lātus, a, um, *adj.*
widely, lātē, *adv.* [*f.*
wife, uxor, ōris, mŭlier, ĕris,
willful, perversus, a, um, *adj.*
willing, to be, vŏlo, p. 99.
——, to be more, mālo, p. 99.
win, ădĭpiscor, eptus, 3; păro, avi, atum, 1.
win upon, blandior, ītus, 4.
wind, ventus, i, *m.*
wine, vīnum, i, *n.*
wing, āla, ae, *f.*
winter, hĭems, ĕmis, *f.*
——, of, hĭbernus, a, um, *adj.*
——, to, hĭĕmo, avi, atum, 1.
—— quarters, hĭberna, ōrum, *n. pl.*
wisdom, săpientia, ae, *f.*
wise, săpiens, ntis, *adj.*

WISH.		ZEALOUS.	
wish, *subs.*,	vŏluntas, ātis, *f.*	write, to,	scrĭbo, psi, ptum, 3.
——, *verb*,	opto, avi, atum, 1; vŏlo, p. 99.	writer,	scriptor, ōris, *m.*
		Year,	annus, i, *m.*
within,	intra, *prep.* with *acc.*	yesterday,	hĕri, *adv.*
woman,	fēmĭna, ae, mŭlier, ĕris,	yield,	cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3.
wonder at,	mīror, ātus, 1. [*f.*	your,	tŭus, a, um; vester, tra, trum, *adj. pron.*
wonderful,	mīrus, mīrābilis, e, *adj.*		
wood,	silva, ae, *f.*	youth,	jŭventus, ūtis, *f.*
work,	ŏpus, ĕris, *n.*	——, (a young man or woman),	jŭvĕnis, *c.*
world,	mundus, i, *m.*		
worship, to,	vĕnĕror, atus, 1.	Zeal,	stŭdium, ii, *n.*
wound,	vulnus, ĕris, *n.*	zealous,	stŭdiōsus, a, um, *adj.*
——, *verb*,	vulnĕro, avi, atum, 1.	zealous, to be,	stŭdeo, ui, 2, with *dat.*
wretched,	miser, a, um, *adj.*		

THE END.